tcolorbox

Manual for version 6.2.0 (2024/01/10)

Thomas F. Sturm
Abstract

tcolorbox provides an environment for colored and framed text boxes with a heading line. Optionally, such a box can be split in an upper and a lower part. The package tcolorbox can be used for the setting of \TeX examples where one part of the box displays the source code and the other part shows the output. Another common use case is the setting of theorems. The package supports saving and reuse of source code and text parts.
10.3 Watermark Option Keys .................................................. 189
10.4 Clip Environments ....................................................... 196
10.5 Border Line Option Keys ................................................ 201
10.6 Shadow Option Keys ..................................................... 206
  10.6.1 Common Shadows and Halos .................................... 206
  10.6.2 Lifted Shadows ...................................................... 211
  10.6.3 Generic Shadows .................................................... 212
  10.6.4 TiKZ Shadows ...................................................... 215
10.7 TiKZ Picture Option Keys ............................................... 216
10.8 Underlay Option Keys ................................................... 219
10.9 Finish Option Keys ...................................................... 221
10.10 Hyper Option Keys ..................................................... 223
10.11 Jigsaw Skin Variants .................................................. 225
10.12 Draft Mode .............................................................. 227

11 Library skins - Catalog of Skins ........................................ 229
  11.1 Skin Family “standard” ................................................. 231
  11.2 Skin Family “enhanced” .............................................. 233
  11.3 Skin Family “bicolor” .................................................. 245
  11.4 Skin Family “tile” ...................................................... 256
  11.5 Skin Family “beamer” .................................................. 260
  11.6 Skin Family “widget” ................................................... 264
  11.7 Skin Family “empty” ................................................... 267
  11.8 Skin “spartan” .......................................................... 277
  11.9 Skin “draft” ............................................................ 278
  11.10 Skin Family “freelance” .............................................. 280

12 Inclusion of Boxed Image Files .......................................... 281
  12.1 Macros ................................................................. 281
  12.2 Option Keys ............................................................ 284

13 TiKZ Auxiliary Macros .................................................... 286
  13.1 Straightening of the Arcs ............................................. 286
  13.2 Extracting Node Dimensions ...................................... 287
  13.3 Hyper Nodes .......................................................... 287

14 Beamer Support ............................................................ 288

15 Library vignette ............................................................. 294
  15.1 Vignette Drawing ...................................................... 294
  15.2 Generic Geometry Settings ........................................ 295
  15.3 Generic Color and Style Settings ................................ 297
  15.4 Generic Fading Settings ............................................. 299
  15.5 Vignette as Underlay ................................................ 302
  15.6 Vignette as Finish .................................................... 304

16 Library raster ............................................................... 307
  16.1 Concept of Rasters ................................................... 307
  16.2 Macros of the Library ................................................ 309
  16.3 Option Keys of the Library ........................................ 313
  16.4 Adding Styles for Specific Boxes ................................. 319
  16.5 Combining Columns or Rows ...................................... 321
  16.6 Rasters inside Rasters ............................................... 324
# Contents

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>16.6.1</td>
<td>Raster Setup</td>
<td>324</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16.6.2</td>
<td>Placing Spaces</td>
<td>325</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17 Libraries</td>
<td>listings, listingsutf8, and minted</td>
<td>329</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17.1</td>
<td>Loading the Libraries</td>
<td>329</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17.1.1</td>
<td>Loading listings</td>
<td>329</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17.1.2</td>
<td>Loading listingsutf8</td>
<td>329</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17.1.3</td>
<td>Loading minted</td>
<td>330</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17.2</td>
<td>Common Macros of the Libraries</td>
<td>330</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17.3</td>
<td>Producing tcblisting Environments</td>
<td>333</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17.4</td>
<td>Producing \tcbinputlisting Commands</td>
<td>337</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17.5</td>
<td>Option Keys of the listings Library</td>
<td>339</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17.6</td>
<td>Option Keys of the listingsutf8 Library</td>
<td>341</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17.7</td>
<td>Option Keys of the minted Library</td>
<td>342</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17.8</td>
<td>Common Option Keys of all Libraries</td>
<td>344</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17.9</td>
<td>Option Keys for Processing and Full Document Examples</td>
<td>354</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17.10</td>
<td>Creation of \LaTeX Tutorials</td>
<td>361</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17.11</td>
<td>Creation of \LaTeX Exercises</td>
<td>368</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17.12</td>
<td>List of Exercises</td>
<td>371</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17.13</td>
<td>Solutions for the given \LaTeX Exercises</td>
<td>372</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18 Libraries</td>
<td>theorems</td>
<td>374</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18.1</td>
<td>Macros of the Library</td>
<td>374</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18.2</td>
<td>Option Keys of the Library</td>
<td>379</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18.3</td>
<td>Examples for Definitions and Theorems</td>
<td>395</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18.4</td>
<td>Using other theorem environments with tcolorbox</td>
<td>400</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19 Libraries</td>
<td>breakable</td>
<td>401</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19.1</td>
<td>Technical Overview</td>
<td>401</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19.2</td>
<td>Limitations and Known Bugs</td>
<td>402</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19.3</td>
<td>Main Option Keys</td>
<td>403</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19.4</td>
<td>Option Keys for the Break Appearance</td>
<td>408</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19.5</td>
<td>Extra Options for Partial Boxes</td>
<td>410</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19.6</td>
<td>Breakable boxes and the multicol package</td>
<td>413</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19.7</td>
<td>Break Point Insertion</td>
<td>416</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19.8</td>
<td>Break Sequence for the Skins</td>
<td>417</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19.9</td>
<td>Break by Hand (Faked Break)</td>
<td>427</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20 Libraries</td>
<td>magazine</td>
<td>428</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.1</td>
<td>Creation and Resetting of Box Arrays</td>
<td>428</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.2</td>
<td>Storing Content</td>
<td>429</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.3</td>
<td>Retrieving Content</td>
<td>431</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.4</td>
<td>Box Dimensions</td>
<td>434</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.5</td>
<td>Leaflet Example</td>
<td>436</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21 Libraries</td>
<td>poster</td>
<td>438</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21.1</td>
<td>Overview</td>
<td>438</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21.2</td>
<td>Main Poster Environment</td>
<td>439</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21.3</td>
<td>Poster Settings</td>
<td>441</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21.4</td>
<td>Coverage</td>
<td>442</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21.5</td>
<td>Common Box Settings</td>
<td>443</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21.6</td>
<td>Font Scaling</td>
<td>443</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
1 Introduction

The package originates from the first edition of my book «\LaTeX – Einführung in das Textsatzsystem» [19] in about 2006. For the \LaTeX examples and tutorials given there, I wanted to have accentuated and colored boxes to display source code and compiled text in combination. Since, in my opinion, this type of boxes is also quite useful to highlight definitions and theorems, I applied them for my lecture notes in mathematics [20–22] as well. With this package, you are invited to apply these boxes for similar projects.

The breaking news for version 2.00 was the support for breakable boxes. This feature allows new applications of the package without affecting the core package too much if you do not need boxes to break automatically. With version 2.20, the often requested “side by side” mode for listings has been added. With version 3.00, boxed titles are introduced together with improved customization options for overlays, underlays, finishes, and own code extensions.

Since the first public release in 2011, I received a lot of feedback from all over the world. I want to thank all who wrote me for supporting this package by sending bug reports and ideas for new or better features.

1.1 Installation

Typically, tcolorbox will be installed as part of a major \LaTeX distribution and there is nothing special to do for a user.

If you intend to make a local installation \textit{by hand}, see the \texttt{README} file of the tcolorbox package for some hints. The short story is: you have to install not only tcolorbox.sty, but also all *.code.tex files in the local \texttt{texmf} tree.

1.2 Loading the Package

The base package tcolorbox loads the packages pgf [23], verbatim [18], etoolbox [7], and environ [17]. tcolorbox itself is loaded in the usual manner in the preamble:

\begin{verbatim}
\usepackage{tcolorbox}
\end{verbatim}

The package takes option keys in the key-value syntax. Alternatively, you may use these keys later in the preamble with \texttt{\tcbuselibrary{P.9}} (see there). For example, the key to typeset listings is:

\begin{verbatim}
\usepackage[listings]{tcolorbox}
\end{verbatim}
1.3 Libraries

The base package `tcolorbox` is extendable by program libraries. This is done by using option keys while loading the package or inside the preamble by applying the following macro with the same set of keys.

\tcbuselibrary{⟨key list⟩}

Loads the libraries given by the ⟨key list⟩.

\tcbuselibrary{listings, theorems}

The following keys are used inside \tcbuselibrary respectively \usepackage without the key tree path /tcb/library/.

/tcb/library/skins

Loads the package `tikz` [23] and provides additional styles (skins) for the appearance of the colored boxes; see Section 10 from page 171.

/tcb/library/vignette

Provides code for more ornamental; see Section 15 from page 294.

/tcb/library/raster

Provides additional macros and options for typesetting multiple boxes arranged in a kind of raster; see Section 16 from page 307.

/tcb/library/listings

Loads the package `listings` [6] and provides additional macros for typesetting listings which are described in Section 17 from page 329.

/tcb/library/listingsutf8

Loads the packages `listings` [6] and `listingsutf8` [10] for UTF-8 support. This is a variant of the library `listings` and is described in Section 17 from page 329.

/tcb/library/minted

Loads the package `minted` [13] to typeset listings with the `Pygments` [15] tool, also see Section 17 on page 329.

/tcb/library/theorems

Provides additional macros for typesetting theorems which are described in Section 18 from page 374.

/tcb/library/breakable

Provides support for automatic box breaking from one page to another; see Section 19 on page 401.

/tcb/library/magazine

Provides support for storing broken box parts to be used later or in interchanged order, Section 20 on page 428.

/tcb/library/poster

Provides support for creating posters, Section 21 on page 438.

/tcb/library/fitting

Provides support for font size adaption of the box content to the box dimensions; see Section 22 from page 452.

/tcb/library/hooks

Extends several option keys to “hookable” keys; see Section 23 from page 466.
/tcb/library/xparse

Loads the package \texttt{xparse} and is considered a legacy library kept for compatibility; see Section 24 from page 479.

/tcb/library/external

Provides externalization support for stand-alone document snippets, see Section 25 on page 480.

/tcb/library/documentation

Provides additional macros for typesetting \LaTeX\ documentations which are described in Section 26 from page 492.

/tcb/library/many

Loads the libraries \texttt{skins}, \texttt{breakable}, \texttt{raster}, \texttt{hooks}, \texttt{theorems}, and \texttt{fitting}. Use this shortcut, if you want to use all features of \texttt{tcolorbox} with exception of typesetting listings and using the specialized \texttt{documentation} library.

/tcb/library/most

Loads all libraries except \texttt{minted}, \texttt{documentation}, and \texttt{xparse}. Use this shortcut, if you want to use all features of \texttt{tcolorbox} with exception of using the \texttt{minted} package and using the specialized \texttt{documentation} library.

/tcb/library/all

 Loads all libraries. Use this shortcut only, if you intend to use the \texttt{documentation} library.

### Package \texttt{tcolorbox}

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Basic Features</th>
<th>Advanced Features</th>
<th>Advanced Listings</th>
<th>Documentation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Base package</td>
<td>\texttt{breakable}</td>
<td>\texttt{listings}</td>
<td>\texttt{documentation}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>\texttt{external}</td>
<td>\texttt{listingsutf8}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>\texttt{fitting}</td>
<td>\texttt{minted}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>\texttt{hooks}</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>\texttt{magazine}</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>\texttt{poster}</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>\texttt{raster}</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>\texttt{skins}</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>\texttt{theorems}</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>\texttt{vignette}</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>\texttt{xparse}</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

10


3 Macros for Box Creation

3.1 Using \texttt{tcolorbox} and \texttt{tcbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[(options)]
  \texttt{(environment content)}
\end{tcolorbox}

This is the main environment to create an accentuated colored text box with rounded corners and, optionally, two parts. The appearance of this box is controlled by numerous options. In the most simple case the source code

\begin{tcolorbox}
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

creates the following compiled text box:

This is a \textcolor{red}{tcolorbox}.

The text content of the box can be divided in an upper and a lower part by the command \texttt{tcblower}. Visually, both parts are separated by a line. For example:

\begin{tcolorbox}
This is another \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\tcblower
Here, you see the lower part of the box.
\end{tcolorbox}

This code gives the following box:

This is another \textcolor{red}{tcolorbox}.

Here, you see the lower part of the box.

The \texttt{(options)} control the appearance and several functions of the boxes, see Section 4 on page 23 for the complete list. A quick example is given here:

\begin{tcolorbox}[colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,title=My nice heading]
This is another \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\tcblower
Here, you see the lower part of the box.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}
My nice heading
\textbf{tcolorbox}
\end{tcolorbox}

\tcblower

Used inside \texttt{tcolorbox} to separate the upper box part from the optional lower box part. The upper and the lower part are treated as separate functional units. If you only want to draw a line, see \texttt{tcbline}. \footnote{P.236}
\texttt{\textbackslash \text{tcbset}\{\texttt{options}\}}

Sets options for every following \texttt{tcolorbox} inside the current \TeX{} group. By default, this does not apply to nested boxes, see Section 4.16 on page 105.

For example, the colors of the boxes may be defined for the whole document by this:

\begin{verbatim}
\texttt{\textbackslash \text{tcbset}\{colback=red!5!white, colframe=red!75!black\}}
\end{verbatim}

\texttt{\textbackslash \text{tcbsetforeverylayer}\{\texttt{options}\}}

Sets options for every following \texttt{tcolorbox} inside the current \TeX{} group. In contrast to \texttt{\textbackslash \text{tcbset}}, this does also apply to nested boxes, see Section 4.16 on page 105. Technically, the \texttt{\textbackslash \text{tcbsetforeverylayer}\{\texttt{options}\}} are appended to the default values for every \texttt{tcolorbox} which are applied by \texttt{\textbackslash \text{tcb/reset}}.

You should not use this macro, if you are not completely sure that you want to have the \texttt{\textbackslash \text{tcbsetforeverylayer}\{\texttt{options}\}} also for boxes in boxes (in boxes in boxes ...).

\begin{verbatim}
\texttt{\textbackslash \text{tcbset}\{colback=green!10!white\}}
\texttt{\textbackslash \text{tcbsetforeverylayer}\{colframe=red!75!black\}}

\begin{tcolorbox}[title=All options for this box]
This is a tcolorbox. \texttt{\par\medskip}
\begin{tcolorbox}[title=Nested box]
Note that this nested box has a red frame but no green background.
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[reset]
Options given with \texttt{\textbackslash \text{tcbsetforeverylayer}} survive a \texttt{\textbackslash \text{reset}}.\texttt{\end{tcolorbox}}
\end{verbatim}
\texttt{\textbackslash tcbox[\textit{options}]} \{\textit{box content}\}

Creates a colored box which is fitted to the width of the given \textit{box content}. In principle, most \textit{options} for a \texttt{tcolorbox} \footnote{P.12} can be used for \texttt{tcbox} with some restrictions. A \texttt{tcbox} cannot have a lower part and cannot be broken.

\begin{verbatim}
\tcset{colframe=blue!50!black,colback=white,colupper=red!50!black,fonttitle=\bfseries,nobeforeafter,center title}

Text \texttt{\tcbox[tcbox raise base]{Hello World}\hfill\%}
\texttt{\tcbox[left=0mm,right=0mm,top=0mm,bottom=0mm,boxsep=0mm,}
\texttt{toptitle=0.5mm,bottomtitle=0.5mm,title=My table]{\%}
\texttt{\arrayrulecolor{blue!50!black}\renewcommand{\arraystretch}{1.2}{\%}
\begin{tabular}{r|c|l}
\hline
One & Two & Three \\
\hline
Men & Mice & Lions \\
\hline
Upper & Middle & Lower
\end{tabular}}\hfill
\%}
\texttt{\tcbox[colback=blue!85!black,}
\texttt{left=0mm,right=0mm,top=0mm,bottom=0mm,boxsep=1mm,arc=0mm,boxrule=0.5pt,}
\texttt{title=My picture}{\%}
\texttt{\includegraphics[width=5cm]{Basilica_5.png}}
\end{verbatim}

\begin{table}[h]
\centering
\begin{tabular}{|c|c|c|}
\hline
One & Two & Three \\
\hline
Men & Mice & Lions \\
\hline
Upper & Middle & Lower
\end{tabular}
\end{table}

\begin{verbatim}
\% \usepackage{tikz}
\tcset{colframe=blue!50!black,colback=white,colupper=red!50!black,}
\texttt{fonttitle=\bfseries,center title}

\% \texttt{Fitted width box}
\begin{tcolorbox}Hello\texttt{World!}\end{tcolorbox}

\% \texttt{Fitted width box (like hbox or makebox)}
\texttt{\tcbox[Hello\texttt{\textbackslash World!}]}

\% \texttt{Fitted width box (using a TikZ node)}
\texttt{\tcbox[tikznode]{Hello\texttt{\textbackslash World!}}}
\end{verbatim}
3.2 Producing \texttt{tcolorbox} Environments and Commands

\begin{verbatim}
\newtcolorbox{⟨init options⟩}{⟨name⟩}{⟨number⟩}{⟨default⟩}{⟨options⟩}
\end{verbatim}

Creates a new environment \langle name\rangle based on \texttt{tcolorbox} \cite{tcolorbox}. Basically, \texttt{\newtcolorbox} operates like \texttt{\newenvironment}. This means, the new environment \langle name\rangle optionally takes \langle number\rangle arguments, where \langle default\rangle is the default value for the optional first argument. The \langle options\rangle are given to the underlying \texttt{tcolorbox}. Note that \texttt{/tcb/savedelimiter} \cite{savedelimiter} is set to the given \langle name\rangle automatically. The \langle init options\rangle allow setting up automatic numbering, see Section 5 from page 127.

\begin{verbatim}
\newtcolorbox{mybox}{colback=red!5!white, colframe=red!75!black}
\begin{mybox}
This is my own box.
\end{mybox}
\end{verbatim}

This is my own box.

\begin{verbatim}
\newtcolorbox{mybox}[1]{colback=red!5!white, colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries, title={#1}}
\begin{mybox}{Hello there}
This is my own box with a mandatory title.
\end{mybox}
\end{verbatim}

Hello there

This is my own box with a mandatory title.

\begin{verbatim}
\newtcolorbox{mybox}[2][]{colback=red!5!white, colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries, colbacktitle=red!85!black,enhanced, attach boxed title to top center={yshift=-2mm}, title={#2},#1}
\begin{mybox}[colback=yellow]{Hello there}
This is my own box with a mandatory title and options.
\end{mybox}
\end{verbatim}

Hello there

This is my own box with a mandatory title and options.

\begin{verbatim}
Definition in the preamble:
\newtcolorbox[auto counter,number within=section]{pabox}[2][]{\%
colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries,
title=Examp.-\thetcbcounter: #2,#1}
\begin{pabox}{colback=yellow}{Hello there}
This is my own box with a mandatory numbered title and options.
\end{pabox}
\end{verbatim}

Examp. 3.1: Hello there

This is my own box with a mandatory numbered title and options.

\begin{verbatim}
\renewtcolorbox{⟨init options⟩}{⟨name⟩}{⟨number⟩}{⟨default⟩}{⟨options⟩}
\end{verbatim}

Operates like \texttt{\newtcolorbox}, but based on \texttt{\renewenvironment} instead of \texttt{\newenvironment}. An existing environment is redefined.
\NewTColorBox{\init options}\{\name\}\{\specification\}\{\options\}

Creates a new environment \(\name\) based on \texttt{tcolorbox}\textsuperscript{-p.12}. Basically, \texttt{\NewTColorBox} operates like \texttt{\NewDocumentEnvironment}. This means, the new environment \(\name\) is constructed with the given argument \(\specification\). An error is issued if an environment with \(\name\) has already been defined. The \(\options\) are given to the underlying \texttt{tcolorbox}\textsuperscript{-p.12}. Note that \texttt{/tcb/savedelimiter}\textsuperscript{-p.32} is set to the given \(\name\) automatically. The \(\init options\) allow setting up automatic numbering, see Section 5 from page 127.

\begin{Verbatim}
% counter from previous example
\NewTColorBox[use counter from=pabox]{mybox}{ 0{red} m d"" !0{ } }
  {enhanced, colframe=#1!75!black, colback=#1!15!white, 
   fonttitle=\textbf, title={\thetcbcounter~#2}, 
   IfValueT={#3}{watermark text={#3},#4}
\begin{mybox}{My title}
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{mybox}
\begin{mybox}{blue}{My title}
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{mybox}
\begin{mybox}{green}{My title}"My Watermark"
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{mybox}
\begin{mybox}{yellow}{My title}[colbacktitle=yellow!50!white, coltitle=black]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{mybox}
\begin{mybox}{purple}{My title}"All together"[coltitle=yellow]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{mybox}
\end{Verbatim}

3.2 My title

This is a tcolorbox.

3.3 My title

This is a tcolorbox.

3.4 My title

This is a tcolorbox. \hspace{3cm} My Watermark

3.5 My title

This is a tcolorbox.

3.6 My title

This is a tcolorbox. \hspace{3cm} All together
\RenewTColorBox{\langle init options\rangle}{\langle name\rangle}{\langle specification\rangle}{\langle options\rangle}

Operates like \NewTColorBox from P.16, but based on \RenewDocumentEnvironment instead of \NewDocumentEnvironment. An existing environment is redefined.

\ProvideTColorBox{\langle init options\rangle}{\langle name\rangle}{\langle specification\rangle}{\langle options\rangle}

Operates like \NewTColorBox from P.16, but based on \ProvideDocumentEnvironment instead of \NewDocumentEnvironment. The environment \langle name\rangle is only created if it is not already defined.

\DeclareTColorBox{\langle init options\rangle}{\langle name\rangle}{\langle specification\rangle}{\langle options\rangle}

Operates like \NewTColorBox from P.16, but based on \DeclareDocumentEnvironment instead of \NewDocumentEnvironment. The new environment is always created, irrespective of an already existing environment with the same name.
\texttt{\textbackslash NewTotalTColorBox}\[\texttt{(init options)}\]{\texttt{\{name\}}}{\texttt{\{specification\}}}{\texttt{\{options\}}}{\texttt{\{content\}}}

Creates a new command \texttt{\{name\}} based on \texttt{tcolorbox} \textsuperscript{P.12}. In contrast to \texttt{\textbackslash NewTColorBox} \textsuperscript{P.16}, also the \texttt{\{content\}} of the \texttt{tcolorbox} is specified. Basically, \texttt{\textbackslash NewTotalTColorBox} operates like \texttt{\textbackslash NewDocumentCommand}. This means, the new command \texttt{\{name\}} is constructed with the given argument \texttt{\{specification\}}. An error is issued if \texttt{\{name\}} has already been defined. The \texttt{\{options\}} are given to the underlying \texttt{tcolorbox} \textsuperscript{P.12} which is filled with the specified \texttt{\{content\}}.

Note that \texttt{/tcb/savedelimiter} \textsuperscript{P.32} is set to the given \texttt{\{name\}} automatically. Also note that \texttt{/tcb/saveto} \textsuperscript{P.28}, \texttt{/tcb/savelowerto} \textsuperscript{P.30}, and \texttt{/tcb/redirectlowerto} \textsuperscript{P.30} cannot be used with \texttt{\textbackslash NewTotalTColorBox} and friends.

The \texttt{\{init options\}} allow setting up automatic numbering, see Section 5 from page 127.

\begin{verbatim}
\texttt{\textbackslash NewTotalTColorBox}{\texttt{\{diabox\}}}{0}{\texttt{\{bicolor,nobeforeafter,equal height group=diabox,width=5.7cm,fonttitle=\texttt{\textbackslash bfseries\textbackslash ctfamily},adjusted title=\texttt{\{#2\}},center title, colframe=blue!20!black,leftupper=0mm,rightupper=0mm,colback=black!75!white,\#1\}}}{\texttt{\{\tikz\textbackslash path\{fill zoom image=\{#2\}\}} (0,0) rectangle (\texttt{\textbackslash linewidth},4cm);\% \texttt{\textbackslash tcblower}#3\}}
\end{verbatim}

\texttt{\textbackslash diabox}{\texttt{\{blueshade.png\}}}{\texttt{\{Created with GIMP. http://www.gimp.org\}}}
\texttt{\textbackslash diabox}{\texttt{\{goldshade.png\}}}{\texttt{\{Created with GIMP. http://www.gimp.org\}}}

\texttt{\textbackslash RenewTotalTColorBox}\[\texttt{(init options)}\]{\texttt{\{name\}}}{\texttt{\{specification\}}}{\texttt{\{options\}}}{\texttt{\{content\}}}

Operates like \texttt{\textbackslash NewTotalTColorBox}, but based on \texttt{\textbackslash RenewDocumentCommand} instead of \texttt{\textbackslash NewDocumentCommand}. An existing command is redefined.

\texttt{\textbackslash ProvideTotalTColorBox}\[\texttt{(init options)}\]{\texttt{\{name\}}}{\texttt{\{specification\}}}{\texttt{\{options\}}}{\texttt{\{content\}}}

Operates like \texttt{\textbackslash NewTotalTColorBox}, but based on \texttt{\textbackslash ProvideDocumentCommand} instead of \texttt{\textbackslash NewDocumentCommand}. The command \texttt{\{name\}} is only created if it is not already defined.

\texttt{\textbackslash DeclareTotalTColorBox}\[\texttt{(init options)}\]{\texttt{\{name\}}}{\texttt{\{specification\}}}{\texttt{\{options\}}}{\texttt{\{content\}}}

Operates like \texttt{\textbackslash NewTotalTColorBox}, but based on \texttt{\textbackslash DeclareDocumentCommand} instead of \texttt{\textbackslash NewDocumentCommand}. The new command is always created, irrespective of an already existing command with the same name.
3.3 Producing `\tcbox` Commands

```latex
\newtcbox[⟨init options⟩]{⟨name⟩}{⟨number⟩}{⟨default⟩}{⟨options⟩}
```

Creates a new macro `⟨name⟩` based on `\tcbox` \textsuperscript{P.14}. Basically, `\newtcbox` operates like `\newcommand`. The new macro `⟨name⟩` optionally takes `(⟨number⟩)+1` arguments, where `⟨default⟩` is the default value for the optional first argument. The `⟨options⟩` are given to the underlying `tcbox`. The `⟨init options⟩` allow setting up automatic numbering, see Section 5 from page 127.

```
\newtcbox{\mybox}{colback=red!5!white, 
colframe=red!75!black}
\mybox{This is my own box.}
```

```
\newtcbox{\mybox}{[1]}{colback=red!5!white, 
colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\textbf, 
title=Hello there}
\mybox{Hello there}{This is my own box.}
```

```
\newtcbox{\mybox}{[2]}{colback=red!5!white, 
colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\textbf, 
title=Hello there,⟨default⟩}
\mybox[⟨colback=yellow⟩]{Hello there}{This is my own box.}
```

```
\newtcbox{\mybox}{[use counter from=pabox][2]}{colback=red!5!white, 
colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\textbf, 
title=(\thetcbcounter) Hello there}
\pbbox[⟨colback=yellow⟩]{Hello there}{This is my own box.}
```

```
\newtcbox{\mybox}{[1][red]}{on line, 
arc=0pt,outer arc=0pt,colback=#1!10!white,colframe=#1!50!black, 
boxsep=0pt,left=1pt,right=1pt,top=2pt,bottom=2pt, 
boxrule=0pt,bottomrule=1pt,toprule=1pt}
```

```
\newtcbox{\xmybox}{[1][red]}{on line, 
arc=7pt,colback=#1!10!white,colframe=#1!50!black, 
before upper=\textbar[−3pt]{0pt}{10pt},boxrule=1pt, 
boxsep=0pt,left=6pt,right=6pt,top=2pt,bottom=2pt}
```

The `\mybox[green]` `\textbf{quick} brown `\mybox[blue]` `\textbf{jumps}` over the `\mybox[green]` `\textbf{lazy} `\mybox[dog]`. \textbf{par}
The `\mybox[green]` `\textbf{quick} brown `\mybox[fox]` `\textbf{jumps}` over the `\mybox[green]` `\textbf{lazy} `\mybox[dog]`. 

The `\textbf{quick} brown `\box{fox}` `\textbf{jumps}` over the `\the\myboxcounter` `\box{dog}`.
\renewtcbox\[\langle\text{init options}\rangle\]{\langle\text{name}\rangle}{\langle\text{number}\rangle}{\langle\text{default}\rangle}{\langle\text{options}\rangle}

Operates like \texttt{\newtcbox} → P.19, but based on \texttt{\renewcommand} instead of \texttt{\newcommand}. An existing macro is redefined.

\texttt{\NewTCBox}\[\langle\text{init options}\rangle\]{\langle\text{name}\rangle}{\langle\text{specification}\rangle}{\langle\text{options}\rangle}

Creates a new command \texttt{\langle\text{name}\rangle} based on \texttt{\tcbox} → P.14. Basically, \texttt{\NewTCBox} operates like \texttt{\NewDocumentCommand}. This means, the new command \texttt{\langle\text{name}\rangle} is constructed with the given argument \texttt{\langle\text{specification}\rangle}. An error is issued if \texttt{\langle\text{name}\rangle} has already been defined. The \texttt{\langle\text{options}\rangle} are given to the underlying \texttt{\tcbox} → P.14.
Note that \texttt{/tcb/savedelimiter} → P.32 is set to the given \texttt{\langle\text{name}\rangle} automatically.
The \texttt{\langle\text{options}\rangle} allow setting up automatic numbering, see Section 5 from page 127.

\% counter from previous example
\NewTCBox[use counter from=pabox]\{\texttt{mybox}\}{ s m s }  
\{ nobeforeafter,colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,  
\hspace{2pt} title={\#2 (Box \tcbcounter)},fonttitle=\bfseries,  
\hspace{2pt} IfBooleanT={\#1}{enhanced,drop shadow},  
\hspace{2pt} IfBooleanT={\#3}{colbacktitle=red!50!white} \}

\texttt{\mybox} (Bird)\{This is my first box.\}
\texttt{\hfill} \texttt{\mybox} (Tree)\{This is my second box.\}
\texttt{\par} \texttt{\bigskip}  
\texttt{\mybox} (Bike)*\{This is my third box.\} \texttt{\hfill} \texttt{\mybox} (City)*\{This is my fourth box.\}

\texttt{\RenewTCBox}\[\langle\text{init options}\rangle\]{\langle\text{name}\rangle}{\langle\text{specification}\rangle}{\langle\text{options}\rangle}

Operates like \texttt{\NewTCBox}, but based on \texttt{\RenewDocumentCommand} instead of \texttt{\NewDocumentCommand}. An existing command is redefined.

\texttt{\ProvideTCBox}\[\langle\text{init options}\rangle\]{\langle\text{name}\rangle}{\langle\text{specification}\rangle}{\langle\text{options}\rangle}

Operates like \texttt{\NewTCBox}, but based on \texttt{\ProvideDocumentCommand} instead of \texttt{\NewDocumentCommand}. The command \texttt{\langle\text{name}\rangle} is only created if it is not already defined.

\texttt{\DeclareTCBox}\[\langle\text{init options}\rangle\]{\langle\text{name}\rangle}{\langle\text{specification}\rangle}{\langle\text{options}\rangle}

Operates like \texttt{\NewTCBox}, but based on \texttt{\DeclareDocumentCommand} instead of \texttt{\NewDocumentCommand}. The new command is always created, irrespective of an already existing command with the same name.
\NewTotalTCBox\{\langle\text{init options}\rangle\}\{\langle\text{name}\rangle\}\{\langle\text{specification}\rangle\}\{\langle\text{options}\rangle\}\{\langle\text{content}\rangle\}

Creates a new command \texttt{\langle\text{name}\rangle} based on \texttt{\tcbox} \textsuperscript{P.14}. In contrast to \texttt{\NewTCBox} \textsuperscript{P.20}, also the \langle\text{content}\rangle of the \tcbox is specified. Basically, \texttt{\NewTotalTCBox} operates like \texttt{\NewDocumentCommand}. This means, the new command \texttt{\langle\text{name}\rangle} is constructed with the given argument \langle\text{specification}\rangle. An error is issued if \texttt{\langle\text{name}\rangle} has already been defined. The \langle\text{options}\rangle are given to the underlying \texttt{\tcbox} \textsuperscript{P.14} which is filled with the specified \langle\text{content}\rangle.

Note that \texttt{/tcb/savedelimiter} \textsuperscript{P.32} is set to the given \langle\text{name}\rangle automatically. The \langle\text{init options}\rangle allow setting up automatic numbering, see Section 5 from page 127.

\NewTotalTCBox\{\myverb\{0\{\red\verb !\{0\}\}\}\{\fontupper=\ttfamily,nobeforeafter,tcbox raise base,arc=0pt,outer arc=0pt, top=0pt,bottom=0pt,left=0mm,right=0mm, leftrule=0pt, rightrule=0pt, toprule=0pt, bottomrule=0pt, boxsep=0.3mm, colback=#1!10!white,colframe=#1!50!black,#3\}\{\langle\text{content}\rangle\}

To set a word \textit{bold} in \myverb{\LaTeX}, use \myverb{\textbf{bold}}. Alternatively, write \myverb{\{\bfseries bold\}}.

In \myverb{\LaTeX} \textsuperscript{enhanced,fuzzy halo}, other font settings are done in the same way, e.g. \myverb{\textit}, \myverb{\itshape} or \myverb{\ttfamily}.

The next example uses \texttt{\lstinline} from the \texttt{listings} package to typeset the verbatim content.

\NewTotalTCBox\{\commandbox\{s v\}\{verbatim,colupper=white,colback=black!75!white,colframe=black\}\{\IfBooleanT{#1}{\textcolor{red}{\ttfamily\bfseries > }}\}\{\IfBooleanT{#1}{\lstinline[language=command.com,keywordstyle=\color{blue!35!white}\bfseries]}\}\{\langle\text{content}\rangle\}

\commandbox*{cd "My Documents"} changes to directory \commandbox{My Documents}.

\commandbox*{dir /A} lists the directory content.

\commandbox*{copy example.txt d:\target} copies \commandbox{example.txt} to \commandbox{d:\target}.

% \usepackage{listings} or \tcbuselibrary{listings}
\NewTotalTCBox\{\commandbox\{s v\}\{verbatim,colupper=white,colback=black!75!white,colframe=black\}\{\IfBooleanT{#1}{\textcolor{red}{\ttfamily\bfseries > }}\}\{\IfBooleanT{#1}{\lstinline[language=command.com,keywordstyle=\color{blue!35!white}\bfseries]}\}\{\langle\text{content}\rangle\}

\commandbox*{cd "My Documents"} changes to directory \commandbox{My Documents}.

\commandbox*{dir /A} lists the directory content.

\commandbox*{copy example.txt d:\target} copies \commandbox{example.txt} to \commandbox{d:\target}.

\texttt{\textbf{bold}} in \LaTeX. Alternatively, write \{\bfseries bold\}. In \LaTeX, other font settings are done in the same way, e.g. \textit, \itshape or \texttt, \ttfamily.
\RenewTotalTCBox[(init options)]{(name)}{(specification)}{(options)}{(content)}

Operates like \NewTotalTCBox\textsuperscript{P.\,21}, but based on \RenewDocumentCommand instead of \NewDocumentCommand. An existing command is redefined.

\ProvideTotalTCBox[(init options)]{(name)}{(specification)}{(options)}{(content)}

Operates like \NewTotalTCBox\textsuperscript{P.\,21}, but based on \ProvideDocumentCommand instead of \NewDocumentCommand. The command \langle name \rangle is only created if it is not already defined.

\DeclareTotalTCBox[(init options)]{(name)}{(specification)}{(options)}{(content)}

Operates like \NewTotalTCBox\textsuperscript{P.\,21}, but based on \DeclareDocumentCommand instead of \NewDocumentCommand. The new command is always created, irrespective of an already existing command with the same name.

\tcboxverb[(options)]{(verbatim box content)}

Creates a colored box based on \tcbox\textsuperscript{P.\,14} which is fitted to the width of the given \langle verbatim box content \rangle. The underlying \tcbox\textsuperscript{P.\,14} is styled with /tcb/verbatim\textsuperscript{P.\,111} plus the given \langle options \rangle. The difference to \tcbox\textsuperscript{P.\,14} is that the \langle verbatim box content \rangle is interpreted verbatim. Therefore, \tcboxverb acts similar to \verb.

\tcboxverb{\LaTeX}, \tcboxverb[colback=blue!10!white,colupper=blue]{\LaTeX}, \tcboxverb[blank,fuzzy halo]{\LaTeX}, \tcboxverb[beamer]{\LaTeX}, \tcboxverb[enhanced,skin=enhancedmiddle jigsaw,colframe=red]{\LaTeX}.

\tcolorboxenvironment{(name)}{(options)}

An existing environment \langle name \rangle is redefined to be boxed inside a \tcolorbox with the given \langle options \rangle.

Some text.\begin{myitemize}
\item Alpha
\item Beta
\item Gamma
\end{myitemize}More text.

See further examples in Section 18.4 on page 400.
4 Option Keys

For the \textit{options} in \texttt{tcolorbox} \textsuperscript{P.12} respectively \texttt{\textbackslash tcbset} \textsuperscript{P.13} the following \texttt{pgf} keys can be applied\textsuperscript{2}. The key tree path /tcb/ is not to be used inside these macros. It is easy to add your own style keys using the syntax for \texttt{pgf} keys, see \cite{19,23} or the examples starting from page 361.

4.1 Title

\texttt{/tcb/title=⟨text⟩} \hfill (no default, initially empty)

Creates a heading line with \textit{⟨text⟩} as content.

\begin{tcolorbox}[title=My heading line]
This is a \texttt{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

\texttt{/tcb/notitle} \hfill (no value, initially set)

Removes the title line if set before.

\texttt{/tcb/adjust title=⟨text⟩} \hfill (style, no default, initially unset)

Creates a heading line with \textit{⟨text⟩} as content. The minimal height of this line is adjusted to fit the text given by \texttt{/tcb/adjust text}. This option makes sense for single line headings if boxes are set side by side with equal height. Note that it is very easy to trick this adjustment.

\begin{verbatim}
\tcbset{colback=White,arc=0mm,width=(\linewidth-4pt)/4,}
equal height group=AT,before=,after=\hfill,fonttitle=\bfseries}

The following titles are not adjusted:\:\
\foreach \n in {xxx,ggg,AAA,"Ägypten}\
{\begin{tcolorbox}[title=\n,colframe=red!75!black]
Some content.\end{tcolorbox}}
Now, we try again with adjusted titles:\:\
\foreach \n in {xxx,ggg,AAA,"Ägypten}\
{\begin{tcolorbox}[adjusted title=\n,colframe=blue!75!black]
Some content.\end{tcolorbox}}
\end{verbatim}

\begin{tabular}{|c|c|c|c|}
\hline
xxx & ggg & AAA & Ägypten \\
\hline
Some content. & Some content. & Some content. & Some content. \\
\hline
\end{tabular}

\texttt{/tcb/adjust text=⟨text⟩} \hfill (no default, initially Äpgjy)

This sets the reference text for \texttt{/tcb/adjusted title}. If your texts never exceed “Äpgjy” in depth and height you don’t need to care about this option.

\textsuperscript{2}Strictly speaking, they are \texttt{pgfkeys} keys. The \texttt{pgfkeys} package is auto-loaded by \texttt{pgf} and is documented in \cite[Part VII]{23}.
/tcb/squeezed title=⟨text⟩ (style, no default, initially unset)

Creates a single heading line with ⟨text⟩ as content. If the ⟨text⟩ is longer than the available space, the text is squeezed to fit into the available space.

```
\begin{tcbitemize}[raster columns=3,raster equal height,
colframe=red!75!black,colback=red!5!white,fonttitle=\bfseries]
  \tcbitem[squeezed title={Short title}] First box
  \tcbitem[squeezed title={This is a very very long title}] Second box
  \tcbitem[squeezed title={This title is clearly too long for this application}] Third box
\end{tcbitemize}
```

/tcb/squeezed title*=⟨text⟩ (style, no default, initially unset)

This is a combination of /tcb/adjusted title→P.23 and /tcb/squeezed title.

```
\begin{tcbitemize}[raster columns=3,raster equal height,
colframe=red!75!black,colback=red!5!white,fonttitle=\bfseries]
  \tcbitem[squeezed title*={Short title}] First box
  \tcbitem[squeezed title*={This is a very very long title}] Second box
  \tcbitem[squeezed title*={This title is clearly too long for this application}] Third box
\end{tcbitemize}
```

/tcb/titlebox=⟨mode⟩ (no default, initially visible)

Controls the treatment of the title part of the box. Feasible values for ⟨mode⟩ are:

- **visible**: usual type setting of the title box,
- **invisible**: empty space instead of the title contents.

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[title=My invisible title,
titlebox=invisible]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

This is a **tcolorbox**.
Detaches the title from its normal position. The text of the title is stored into \texttt{tcbtitletext} and the formatted title is available by \texttt{tcbtitle}. The main application is to move the title from its usual place to another one.

\begin{mybox}{My title}
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{mybox}
\begin{mybox}[detach title,before upper={	cbtitle\quad}]{My title}
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{mybox}
\begin{mybox}[detach title,after upper={\par\hfill\tcbtitle}]{My title}
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{mybox}

Attaches the title to the begin of the upper part of the box content. The optional \langle \textit{text} \rangle is set between the formatted title and the box content.

\begin{mybox}[attach title to upper={---}]{My title}
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{mybox}
\begin{mybox}[attach title to upper,:]{My title}
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{mybox}

More title options are documented in Section 4.11 on page 70 and Section 10.2 on page 178.


4.2 Subtitle

Inside the box content, one or more subtitles can be added. In general, a subtitle is a further `tcolorbox` which inherits some color and geometry options from the enclosing box. It may be customized just like any other `tcolorbox`.

\textbf{\texttt{\textbackslash tcbsubtitle\{\texttt{(options)\}\{\texttt{(text)\}}}}

Used inside a `tcolorbox` to add a subtitle box with the given `(text)`. This is an independent `tcolorbox` which is formatted by several inherited properties of the enclosing box, by further settings from `/tcb/subtitle style`, and by the given `(options)`.

\begin{tcolorbox}[title=My title,
colback=red!5!white,
colframe=red!75!black,
fonttitle=\bfseries]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\tcbsubtitle[before skip=\baselineskip]{My subtitle}
Further text.
\end{tcolorbox}

My title
This is a tcolorbox.
My subtitle
Further text.

\begin{tcolorbox}[title=My title,
colback=red!5!white,
colframe=red!75!black,
colbacktitle=yellow!50!red,
coltitle=red!25!black,
fonttitle=\bfseries]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\tcbsubtitle[before skip=\baselineskip]{My subtitle}
Further text.
\end{tcolorbox}

My title
This is a tcolorbox.
My subtitle
Further text.

\textbf{\texttt{\textbackslash tcb\textbackslash subtitle\ style\{\texttt{(options)\}}}}

(no default, initially empty)

Adds `tcolorbox` `(options)` to the settings for `\tcbsubtitle`.

\begin{tcolorbox}[title=My title,
colback=red!5!white,
colframe=red!75!black,
colbacktitle=yellow!50!red,
coltitle=red!25!black,
fonttitle=\bfseries,
subtitle style={boxrule=0.4pt, 
colback=yellow!50!red!25!white, 
colupper=red!75!gray} ]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\tcbsubtitle\{My subtitle\}
Further text.
\tcbsubtitle\{Second subtitle\}
Further text.
\end{tcolorbox}

My title
This is a tcolorbox.
My subtitle
Further text.
Second subtitle
Further text.
4.3 Upper Part

The text content of a \texttt{tcolorbox} \textsuperscript{P.12} may be parted into a mandatory \textit{upper part} and an optional \textit{lower part}. These parts are separated by \texttt{tcblower} \textsuperscript{P.12}. If there is no \texttt{tcblower} \textsuperscript{P.12} present, there is no \textit{lower part} and the \textit{upper part} forms the complete text content.

\verb*/tcb/upperbox=⟨mode⟩* (no default, initially \texttt{visible})

Controls the treatment of the upper part of the box. If there is no lower part, this is the complete text content. Feasible values for \texttt{⟨mode⟩} are:

- \texttt{visible}: usual type setting of the upper part,
- \texttt{invisible}: empty space instead of the upper part contents.

\begin{tcolorbox}[upperbox=invisible,colback=white]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox} (but invisible).
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}
\texttt{tcblower}
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}

\verb*/tcb/visible* (style, no value)

Shortcut for setting \texttt{/tcb/upperbox, /tcb/lowerbox} \textsuperscript{P.29}, and \texttt{/tcb/titlebox} \textsuperscript{P.24} to be \texttt{visible}.

\verb*/tcb/invisible* (style, no value)

Shortcut for setting \texttt{/tcb/upperbox, /tcb/lowerbox} \textsuperscript{P.29}, and \texttt{/tcb/titlebox} \textsuperscript{P.24} to be \texttt{invisible}.

\begin{tcolorbox}[invisible]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox} (but invisible).
\end{tcolorbox}
\texttt{/tcb/saveto=\langle file name \rangle}  
(no default, initially empty)

Saves the content of the box into a file for an optional later usage. This is the counterpart of \texttt{/tcb/savelowerto \textsuperscript{P.30}}, but it saves not only the upper part but the whole content. If a lower part is present, it is also saved including \texttt{\tcbower \textsuperscript{P.12}}. An empty \texttt{(file name)} deactivates \texttt{/tcb/saveto}.

\begin{tcolorbox}[invisible,saveto=\jobname_mysave1.tex,colback=white]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox} which seems to be empty.
The content is saved for later usage.
\end{tcolorbox}

Now, we load the saved text:\
\input{\jobname_mysave1.tex}

Now, we load the saved text:  
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox} which seems to be empty. The content is saved for later usage.

\begin{tcolorbox}[saveto=\jobname_mysave2.tex]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\tcbower
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}

Now, we load the saved text:  
\begin{tcolorbox}[colframe=red,colback=red!10,
            coltitle=black,colbacktitle=red!20,sidebyside,
            title=Here we see the saved content including the lower part]
\input{\jobname_mysave2.tex}
\end{tcolorbox}

This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.

This is the lower part.

Now, we load the saved text:  
Here we see the saved content including the lower part
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.  
This is the lower part.
4.4 Lower Part

\texttt{/tcb/lowerbox\{mode\}}

(no default, initially \texttt{visible})

Controls the treatment of the lower part of the box. Feasible values for \texttt{\{mode\}} are:

- \texttt{visible}: usual type setting of the lower part,
- \texttt{invisible}: empty space instead of the lower part contents,
- \texttt{ignored}: the lower part is not used (here).

The last two values are usually applied in connection with \texttt{savelowerto}.

\begin{tcolorbox}[lowerbox=invisible,colback=white]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\tcblower
This is the lower part (but invisible).
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[lowerbox=ignored,colback=white]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\tcblower
This is the lower part (but ignored).
\end{tcolorbox}

This is a \texttt{tcolorbox}.

This is a \texttt{tcolorbox}.

The lower part is always typeset into a box which is used or dropped accordingly. The only exception is applying \texttt{/tcb/redirectlowerto} \textsuperscript{p.30}.
/tcb/savelowerto=(file name)
(no default, initially empty)

Saves the content of the lower part into a file for an optional later usage. An empty (file name) deactivates /tcb/savelowerto.

This option cannot be combined with /tcb/saveto → P.28.

\begin{tcolorbox}
\textbf{tcolorbox}.
\tcblower
This is the lower part which may be quite complex:
\begin{equation*}
f(x) = \frac{1+x^2}{1-x^2}.
\end{equation*}
\end{tcolorbox}

Now, we load the saved text:
\input{\jobname_bspsave.tex}

This is a tcolorbox.

Now, we load the saved text:
This is the lower part which may be quite complex: $f(x) = \frac{1 + x^2}{1 - x^2}$.

/tcb/redirectlowerto=(file name)
(no default, initially empty)

This is a combination of /tcb/savelowerto and /tcb/lowerbox → P.29 = ignored and additionally avoids typesetting the content of the lower part. This can be useful, if the lower part contains counters or similar. An empty (file name) deactivates the saving, but the /tcb/lowerbox → P.29 setting will still be ignored.

This option cannot be combined with /tcb/saveto → P.28.

\setcounter{enumi}{1}
Test counter: \theenumi
\begin{tcolorbox}
\textbf{tcolorbox}.
\tcblower
This is the lower part.\stepcounter{enumi}
New value of test counter: \theenumi.
\end{tcolorbox}

Now, we load the saved text:
\input{\jobname_bspsave2.tex}

Test counter: 1
This is a tcolorbox.

Now, we load the saved text:
This is the lower part. New value of test counter: 2.
If set to `true`, the lower part is visually separated from the upper part. It depends on the chosen skin how the visualization of the separation is done.

\begin{tcbraster}
\begin{tcolorbox}[title=Lower separated]
This is the upper part.

This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[title=Lower not separated,lower separated=false]
This is the upper part.

This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[sidebyside,title=Lower separated]
This is the upper part.

This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[sidebyside,title=Lower not separated,lower separated=false]
This is the upper part.

This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[beamer,title=Lower separated]
This is the upper part.

This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[beamer,title=Lower not separated,lower separated=false]
This is the upper part.

This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{tcbraster}
/tcb/savedelimiter=(name) (no default, initially tcolorbox)

Used in connection with new environment definitions which extend tcolorbox and use or allow the option /tcb/savelowerto*P.30 or /tcb/redirectlowerto*P.30. To catch the end of the new box environment ⟨name⟩ has to be the name of this environment. Additionally, the environment definition has to use \tcolorbox instead of \begin{tcolorbox} and \end{tcolorbox} instead of \end{tcolorbox}.

```
\newenvironment{mybox}[1]{%
  \tcolorbox[savedelimiter=mybox, 
  savelowerto=jobname_bspsave3.tex,lowerbox=ignored, 
  colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries, 
  title={#1}]% 
}{% 
\endtcolorbox}
\begin{mybox}{My Example}
Upper part.
\tcblower
Saved lower part!
\end{mybox}

Now, the saved part is used:
\begin{tcolorbox}[colback=green!5]
\input{jobname_bspsave3.tex}
\end{tcolorbox}

My Example
Upper part.
\tcblower
Saved lower part!
```

The savedelimiter is used implicitly with \newtcolorbox*P.15 which allows a more convenient usage:

```
\newtcolorbox{mybox}[1]{% 
  savelowerto=jobname_bspsave4.tex,lowerbox=ignored, 
  colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries, 
  title={#1}]% 
\begin{mybox}{My Example}
Upper part.
\tcblower
Saved lower part!
\end{mybox}

Now, the saved part is used:
\begin{tcolorbox}[colback=green!5]
\input{jobname_bspsave4.tex}
\end{tcolorbox}

My Example
Upper part.
\tcblower
Saved lower part!
```
4.5 Colors and Fonts

\texttt{/tcb/colframe\{\(\text{color}\)\}}
(no default, initially \texttt{black!75!white})

Sets the frame \(\text{color}\) of the box.

\begin{tcolorbox}[colframe=red!50!white]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

\texttt{/tcb/colback\{\(\text{color}\)\}}
(no default, initially \texttt{black!5!white})

Sets the background \(\text{color}\) of the box.

\begin{tcolorbox}[colback=red!50!white]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

Also see \texttt{/tcb/colbacklower} \(\rightarrow\) P.247 of the \texttt{skins} library.

\texttt{/tcb/title filled=true|false}
(default \texttt{true}, initially \texttt{false})

Switches the drawing of the title background according to the given value. This option is set to \texttt{true} automatically by \texttt{/tcb/colbacktitle}, \texttt{/tcb/opacitybacktitle} \(\rightarrow\) P.57, and \texttt{/tcb/title style} \(\rightarrow\) P.174, and \texttt{/tcb/title code} \(\rightarrow\) P.162.

\begin{tcolorbox}[title=My title,title filled=true]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[title=My title,title filled=false]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

\texttt{/tcb/colbacktitle\{\(\text{color}\)\}}
(no default, initially \texttt{black!50!white})

Sets the background \(\text{color}\) of the title area of the box.

\begin{tcolorbox}[colbacktitle=red!50!white,title=My title,coltitle=black,fonttitle=\textbf{series}]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
/tcb/colupper=⟨color⟩  (no default, initially black)
Sets the text ⟨color⟩ of the upper part.

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[colupper=red!75!black]
  This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
  \tcblower
  This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

/tcb/colower=⟨color⟩  (no default, initially black)
Sets the text ⟨color⟩ of the lower part.

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[collower=red!75!black]
  This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
  \tcblower
  This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

/tcb/coltext=⟨color⟩  (style, no default, initially black)
Sets the text ⟨color⟩ of the box. This is an abbreviation for setting colupper and collower to the same value.

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[coltext=red!75!black]
  This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
  \tcblower
  This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

/tcb/coltitle=⟨color⟩  (no default, initially white)
Sets the title text ⟨color⟩ of the box.

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[coltitle=red!75!black, colbacktitle=black!10!white,title=Test]
  This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
```
/tcb/fontupper=(text)  
(no default, initially empty)
Sets ⟨text⟩ before the content of the upper part (e.g. font settings).

\begin{tcolorbox}[fontupper=Hello!-\sffamily]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

Hello! This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.

/tcb/fontlower=(text)  
(no default, initially empty)
Sets ⟨text⟩ before the content of the lower part (e.g. font settings).

\begin{tcolorbox}[fontlower=sffamily\bfseries]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\tcblower
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}

This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
This is the lower part.

/tcb/fonttitle=(text)  
(no default, initially empty)
Sets ⟨text⟩ before the content of the title text (e.g. font settings).

\begin{tcolorbox}[fonttitle=sffamily\bfseries\large,title=Hello]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

Hello

This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.

More color options are provided by using skins documented in Section 10 from page 17.
4.6 Text Alignment

If there is no lower part, \texttt{halign} determines the horizontal \texttt{(alignment)} of the text content. Otherwise, \texttt{halign} determines the horizontal \texttt{(alignment)} of the upper part of the box only. The feasible values for \texttt{(alignment)} are more or less identical to the corresponding \texttt{/tikz/align} settings, even if the implementation differs.

- \texttt{justify}: usual left and right justified type setting.
- \texttt{left}: left border justification in analogy to plain \LaTeX.
- \texttt{flush left}: left border justification with \texttt{\raggedright} of \LaTeX.
- \texttt{right}: right border justification in analogy to plain \LaTeX.
- \texttt{flush right}: right border justification with \texttt{\raggedleft} of \LaTeX.
- \texttt{center}: centering in analogy to plain \LaTeX.
- \texttt{flush center}: centering with \texttt{\centering} of \LaTeX.

The differences between the flush and non-flush version are explained in detail in the TikZ manual [23]. The short story is that the non-flush versions will often look more balanced but with more hyphenations. \texttt{/tcb/halign upper} is an alias for \texttt{/tcb/halign}.

\begin{tcolorbox}
\[\text{flush center}\]
This is a demonstration text for showing how line breaking works.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}
\[\text{flush left}\]
This is a demonstration text for showing how line breaking works.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}
\[\text{flush right}\]
This is a demonstration text for showing how line breaking works.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}
\[\text{center}\]
This is a demonstration text for showing how line breaking works.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}
\[\text{left}\]
This is a demonstration text for showing how line breaking works.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}
\[\text{right}\]
This is a demonstration text for showing how line breaking works.
\end{tcolorbox}
If `/tcb/halign` resp. `/tcb/halign upper` is not flexible enough, `/tcb/halign code` resp. `/tcb/halign upper code` allows to set arbitrary ⟨code⟩ to configure the horizontal alignment of the text content, e.g. using alignments from specialized packages.

If `/tcb/halign lower` is not flexible enough, `/tcb/halign lower code` allows to set arbitrary ⟨alignment⟩ to configure the horizontal alignment of the lower part of the box. The feasible values for ⟨alignment⟩ are the same as for `/tcb/halign`.

```
\begin{tcbraster}[raster columns=3,fonttitle=\bfseries, colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black]
\begin{tcolorbox}[adjusted title=flush center,halign lower=flush center]
  Upper part. \tcblower Lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[adjusted title=flush left,halign lower=flush left]
  Upper part. \tcblower Lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[adjusted title=flush right,halign lower=flush right]
  Upper part. \tcblower Lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[adjusted title=center,halign lower=center]
  Upper part. \tcblower Lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[adjusted title=left,halign lower=left]
  Upper part. \tcblower Lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[adjusted title=right,halign lower=right]
  Upper part. \tcblower Lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{tcbraster}
```
```
\begin{tcbraster}[raster columns=3,fonttitle=\bfseries, colback=red！5！white,colframe=red！75！black]
\begin{tcolorbox}[adjusted title=flush center,halign title=flush center]
  This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[halign title=flush left]
  This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[halign title=flush right]
  This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[adjusted title=center,halign title=center]
  This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[adjusted title=left,halign title=left]
  This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[adjusted title=right,halign title=right]
  This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{tcbraster}
```

flush center

This is a tcolorbox.

flush left

This is a tcolorbox.

flush right

This is a tcolorbox.

center

This is a tcolorbox.

left

This is a tcolorbox.

right

This is a tcolorbox.

If /tcb/halign title is not flexible enough, /tcb/halign title code allows to set arbitrary (code) to configure the horizontal alignment of the title of the box.

Shortcut for setting /tcb/halign upper to flush left.

Shortcut for setting /tcb/halign upper to flush center.

Shortcut for setting /tcb/halign upper to flush right.

Shortcut for setting /tcb/halign lower to flush left.

Shortcut for setting /tcb/halign lower to flush center.

Shortcut for setting /tcb/halign lower to flush right.
Shortcut for setting /tcb/halign title\textsuperscript{\textminus{}P.38} to flush left.

Shortcut for setting /tcb/halign title\textsuperscript{\textminus{}P.38} to flush center.

Shortcut for setting /tcb/halign title\textsuperscript{\textminus{}P.38} to flush right.

The vertical alignment settings are only relevant for boxes which are larger than their natural height, see Section 4.10 on page 59.

If the height of a tcolorbox is not the natural height, \texttt{valign} determines the vertical \texttt{<alignment>} of the upper part. Feasible values are
- \texttt{top}: Anchor text at top.
- \texttt{center}: Anchor text at center.
- \texttt{bottom}: Anchor text at bottom.
- \texttt{scale}: Scale text vertically to fit into the available space. This is brutal and may not look very good. Consider Section 22 on page 452 alternatively.
- \texttt{scale*}: Like \texttt{scale}, but scaling is bounded by /tcb/valign scale limit.

For a box with natural height, these settings are meaningless.

\begin{tcolorbox}
\begin{Verbatim}
\tcbset{width=(\linewidth-2mm)/4,before=,after=\hfill, colframe=blue!75!black,colback=white,height=2cm}

\foreach \myalign in {top,center,bottom,scale}
{\begin{tcolorbox}[valign=\myalign]
  This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}}

This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}. This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}. This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}. This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{Verbatim}
\end{tcolorbox}

Alias for /tcb/valign. 

This key has the same meaning for the lower part as \texttt{valign} for the upper part, i.e., it determines the vertical \texttt{<alignment>} of the lower part with feasible values \texttt{top}, \texttt{center}, \texttt{bottom}, \texttt{scale}, and \texttt{scale*}.

Sets an upper scale limit for the \texttt{scale*} setting in /tcb/valign and /tcb/valign lower. Note that this value is not reset by /tcb/reset\textsuperscript{\textminus{}P.122}. So, changes also apply to embedded boxes.

Also see /tcb/sidebyside align\textsuperscript{\textminus{}P.138} for alignment settings when upper part and lower part are set side-by-side.
4.7 Geometry

4.7.1 Width

\[ /tcb/width = \langle \text{length} \rangle \]

(no default, initially \linewidth)

Sets the total width of the colored box to \( \langle \text{length} \rangle \). See also /tcb/height \[P.59\].

\begin{tcolorbox}
\[ \text{\textbf{tcolorbox}} \]
\end{tcolorbox}

This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.

\tcbset{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black}
\begin{tcolorbox}[width=\linewidth/2]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

\tcbset{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black}
\begin{tcolorbox}[text width=4cm]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox} where the text has a width of 4cm.
\end{tcolorbox}

\tcbset{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black}
\begin{tcolorbox}[add to width=1cm]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

\tcbset{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black}
\begin{tcolorbox}
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

\tcbset{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black}
\begin{tcolorbox}
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

\tcbset{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black}
\begin{tcolorbox}
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

\tcbset{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black}
\begin{tcolorbox}[text width=4cm]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox} where the text has a width of 4cm.
\end{tcolorbox}

\tcbset{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black}
\begin{tcolorbox}[width=\linewidth/2]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

\tcbset{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black}
\begin{tcolorbox}[text width=4cm]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox} where the text has a width of 4cm.
\end{tcolorbox}

\tcbset{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black}
\begin{tcolorbox}[add to width=1cm]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

\tcbset{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black}
\begin{tcolorbox}
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

\tcbset{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black}
\begin{tcolorbox}
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

\tcbset{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black}
\begin{tcolorbox}[text width=4cm]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox} where the text has a width of 4cm.
\end{tcolorbox}

\tcbset{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black}
\begin{tcolorbox}[width=\linewidth/2]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

\tcbset{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black}
\begin{tcolorbox}[text width=4cm]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox} where the text has a width of 4cm.
\end{tcolorbox}

\tcbset{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black}
\begin{tcolorbox}[add to width=1cm]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

\tcbset{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black}
\begin{tcolorbox}
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

\tcbset{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black}
\begin{tcolorbox}
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

\tcbset{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black}
\begin{tcolorbox}[text width=4cm]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox} where the text has a width of 4cm.
\end{tcolorbox}

\tcbset{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black}
\begin{tcolorbox}[width=\linewidth/2]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

\tcbset{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black}
\begin{tcolorbox}[text width=4cm]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox} where the text has a width of 4cm.
\end{tcolorbox}

\tcbset{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black}
\begin{tcolorbox}[add to width=1cm]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

\tcbset{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black}
\begin{tcolorbox}
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

\tcbset{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black}
\begin{tcolorbox}
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

\tcbset{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black}
\begin{tcolorbox}[text width=4cm]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox} where the text has a width of 4cm.
\end{tcolorbox}

\tcbset{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black}
\begin{tcolorbox}[width=\linewidth/2]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

\tcbset{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black}
\begin{tcolorbox}[text width=4cm]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox} where the text has a width of 4cm.
\end{tcolorbox}

\tcbset{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black}
\begin{tcolorbox}[add to width=1cm]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

\tcbset{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black}
\begin{tcolorbox}
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

\tcbset{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black}
\begin{tcolorbox}
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

\tcbset{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black}
\begin{tcolorbox}[text width=4cm]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox} where the text has a width of 4cm.
\end{tcolorbox}

\tcbset{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black}
\begin{tcolorbox}[width=\linewidth/2]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

\tcbset{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black}
\begin{tcolorbox}[text width=4cm]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox} where the text has a width of 4cm.
\end{tcolorbox}

\tcbset{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black}
\begin{tcolorbox}[add to width=1cm]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

\tcbset{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black}
\begin{tcolorbox}
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

\tcbset{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black}
\begin{tcolorbox}
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

\tcbset{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black}
\begin{tcolorbox}[text width=4cm]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox} where the text has a width of 4cm.
\end{tcolorbox}

See Section 4.10 on page 59 for setting fixed height values.
4.7.2 Rules

\(/\texttt{tcb/toprule}{\langle length\rangle}\) (no default, initially 0.5mm)

Sets the line width of the top rule to \(\langle length\rangle\).

\begin{verbatim}
\texttt{\textbackslash tcbset\{colback=red!5!white, colframe=red!75!black\}}
\begin{tcolorbox}[toprule=3mm]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{verbatim}

This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.

\(/\texttt{tcb/bottomrule}{\langle length\rangle}\) (no default, initially 0.5mm)

Sets the line width of the bottom rule to \(\langle length\rangle\).

\begin{verbatim}
\texttt{\textbackslash tcbset\{colback=red!5!white, colframe=red!75!black\}}
\begin{tcolorbox}[bottomrule=3mm]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{verbatim}

This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.

\(/\texttt{tcb/leftrule}{\langle length\rangle}\) (no default, initially 0.5mm)

Sets the line width of the left rule to \(\langle length\rangle\).

\begin{verbatim}
\texttt{\textbackslash tcbset\{colback=red!5!white, colframe=red!75!black\}}
\begin{tcolorbox}[leftrule=3mm]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{verbatim}

This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.

\(/\texttt{tcb/rightrule}{\langle length\rangle}\) (no default, initially 0.5mm)

Sets the line width of the right rule to \(\langle length\rangle\).

\begin{verbatim}
\texttt{\textbackslash tcbset\{colback=red!5!white, colframe=red!75!black\}}
\begin{tcolorbox}[rightrule=3mm]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{verbatim}

This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
/tcb/titlerule=⟨length⟩ (no default, initially 0.5mm)
Sets the line width of the rule below the title to ⟨length⟩.

\begin{tcolorbox}[titlerule=3mm,title=This is the title]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}
This is the title
\end{tcolorbox}

This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.

/tcb/boxrule=⟨length⟩ (style, no default, initially 0.5mm)
Sets all rules of the frame to ⟨length⟩, i.e. \texttt{/tcb/toprule} \texttt{→ P.41},
\texttt{/tcb/bottomrule} \texttt{→ P.41}, \texttt{/tcb/leftrule} \texttt{→ P.41}, \texttt{/tcb/rightrule} \texttt{→ P.41}, and \texttt{/tcb/titlerule}.

\begin{tcolorbox}[boxrule=3mm]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[arc=0mm]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

More options for drawing a \texttt{/tcb/borderline} \texttt{→ P.201} are provided by using skins documentated in Section 10 from page 171.

4.7.3 Arcs
/tcb/arc=⟨length⟩ (no default, initially 1mm)
Sets the inner radius of the four frame arcs to ⟨length⟩.

\begin{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[arc=0mm]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[arc=3mm]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{tcolorbox}

This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.

This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.

42
Sets \texttt{tcb/arc} to match the half of the inner width of the colored box. If width and height of the box are identical, this gives a circle.

\begin{tcolorbox}[width=3cm, colback=red!5!white, colframe=red!75!black, halign=center, valign=center, square, circular arc]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

If the height of the box is smaller than the width, the result will look quite ugly.

This only works for a fixed \texttt{tcb/height}. Also, \texttt{tcb/bean arc} must be used after width and height are set by option keys.

\texttt{tcbset}{size=fbox, boxrule=0.5mm, colback=red!5!white, colframe=red!75!black, halign=center, valign=center}
\begin{tcolorbox}[width=3cm, height=2cm, bean arc]
Box A
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[width=2cm, height=3cm, bean arc]
Box B
\end{tcolorbox}

Sets \texttt{tcb/arc} to match \(\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}+\sqrt{2}}\) of the inner width of the colored box. If width and height of the box are identical, the interior is a regular octogon.

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced, size=minimal, auto outer arc, width=2.1cm, octogon arc, colback=red, colframe=white, colupper=white, fontupper=\texttt{\fontsize{7mm}{7mm}\selectfont\bfseries\sffamily}, halign=center, valign=center, square, arc is angular, borderline={0.2mm}{-1mm}{red} ]
STOP
\end{tcolorbox}
/tcb/arc is angular \hspace{2cm} (no value, initially unset)

Using this options applies a patch which straightens the corners arcs of the boxes. The little arcs are replaced by little straight lines.

\begin{tcolorbox}[arc is angular]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[arc is curved]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

This patch is considered as an experimental feature. It changes some of the original TikZ code. This change may break with future updates of TikZ.

/tcb/arc is curved \hspace{2cm} (no value, initially set)

This option resets the patch from /tcb/arc is angular. The original TikZ code is activated.

/tcb/outer arc=⟨length⟩ \hspace{2cm} (no default, initially unset)

Sets the outer radius of the four frame arcs to ⟨length⟩.

\begin{tcolorbox}[arc=4mm,outer arc=1mm]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

/tcb/auto outer arc \hspace{2cm} (no value, initially set)

Sets the outer radius of the four frame arcs automatically in dependency of the inner radius given by /tcb/arc \textsuperscript{P. 42}. 

\begin{tcolorbox}
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
4.7.4 Spacing

/tcb/boxsep=⟨length⟩
(no default, initially 1mm)
Sets a common padding of ⟨length⟩ between the text content and the frame of the box. This value is added to the key values of left, right, top, bottom, and middle at the appropriate places.

\tcbset{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,width=(\linewidth-4mm)/2,
before=,after=\hfill}
\begin{tcolorbox}[boxsep=5mm]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[boxsep=5mm,draft]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.

/tcb/left=⟨length⟩
(style, no default, initially 4mm)
Sets the left space between all text parts and frame (additional to boxsep). This is an abbreviation for setting lefttitle, leftupper, and leftlower to the same value.

\tcbset{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black}
\begin{tcolorbox}[left=0mm]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.

\tcbset{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black}
\begin{tcolorbox}[left*=0mm,
\end{tcolorbox}
This is some text.
\begin{tcolorbox}[grow to left by=5mm,left**=0mm,
\end{tcolorbox}
This is some text.
/tcb/lefttitle=(length)  (no default, initially 4mm)
Sets the left space between title text and frame (additional to boxsep).

```
\tcbset{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black}
\begin{tcolorbox}[lefttitle=3cm,title=My Title]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

My Title

This is a tcolorbox.

/tcb/leftupper=(length)  (no default, initially 4mm)
Sets the left space between upper text and frame (additional to boxsep).

```
\tcbset{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black}
\begin{tcolorbox}[leftupper=3cm,title=My Title]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

My Title

This is a tcolorbox.

/tcb/leftlower=(length)  (no default, initially 4mm)
Sets the left space between lower text and frame (additional to boxsep).

```
\tcbset{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black}
\begin{tcolorbox}[leftlower=3cm]
\tcblower
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

This is a tcolorbox.

This is the lower part.

/tcb/right=(length)  (style, no default, initially 4mm)
Sets the right space between all text parts and frame (additional to boxsep). This is an abbreviation for setting righttitle, rightupper, and rightlower to the same value.

```
\tcbset{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black}
\begin{tcolorbox}[width=5cm,right=2cm]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

This is a tcolorbox.
Sets \texttt{/tcb/right*=<length>} such that \emph{<length>} is the distance between the right bounding box and the text parts.

\begin{tcolorbox}[grow to right by=5mm,right*=0mm, halign=right,enhanced,show bounding box] This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

\texttt{/tcb/righttitle=<length>} \quad \text{(no default, initially 4mm)}

Sets the right space between title text and frame (additional to boxsep).

\begin{tcolorbox}[width=5cm,righttitle=2cm,title=My very long title text] This is a \textbf{tcolorbox} with standard upper box dimensions. \end{tcolorbox}

\texttt{/tcb/rightupper=<length>} \quad \text{(no default, initially 4mm)}

Sets the right space between upper text and frame (additional to boxsep).

\begin{tcolorbox}[width=5cm,rightupper=2cm,title=My very long title text] This is a \textbf{tcolorbox} with compressed upper box dimensions. \end{tcolorbox}
\texttt{/tcb/rightlower=(length)} \hspace{1cm} (no default, initially 4\text{mm})

Sets the right space between lower text and frame (additional to \texttt{boxsep}).

\begin{tcolorbox}[width=5\text{cm},rightlower=2\text{cm}]
This is a \texttt{tcolorbox} with standard upper box dimensions.
\tcblower
This is the lower part with large space at right.
\end{tcolorbox}

\texttt{/tcb/top=(length)} \hspace{1cm} (no default, initially 2\text{mm})

Sets the top space between text and frame (additional to \texttt{boxsep}).

\begin{tcolorbox}[top=0\text{mm}]
This is a \texttt{tcolorbox}.
\tcblower
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}

\texttt{/tcb/toptitle=(length)} \hspace{1cm} (no default, initially 0\text{mm})

Sets the top space between title and frame (additional to \texttt{boxsep}).

\begin{tcolorbox}[toptitle=3\text{mm},title=My title]
This is a \texttt{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
/tcb/bottom=⟨length⟩ (no default, initially \(2\text{mm}\))
Sets the bottom space between text and frame (additional to \(\text{boxsep}\)).

\begin{tcolorbox}
[tcbset={colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black}]
\begin{tcolorbox}[bottom=0mm]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\tcblower
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}

/tcb/bottomtitle=⟨length⟩ (no default, initially \(0\text{mm}\))
Sets the bottom space between title and frame (additional to \(\text{boxsep}\)).

\begin{tcolorbox}
[tcbset={colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black}]
\begin{tcolorbox}[bottomtitle=3mm,title=My title]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
My title
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

/tcb/middle=⟨length⟩ (no default, initially \(2\text{mm}\))
Sets the space between upper and lower text to the separation line (additional to \(\text{boxsep}\)).

\begin{tcolorbox}
[tcbset={colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black}]
\begin{tcolorbox}[middle=0mm,boxsep=0mm]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\tcblower
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}
4.7.5 Size Shortcuts

\texttt{/tcb/size=}⟨\textit{name}⟩

(no default, initially normal)

Sets all geometry keys with exception of /tcb/width to predefined length values. For ⟨\textit{name}⟩, the following values are feasible:

- \textbf{normal}: normal sized boxes e.g. of width \texttt{\textbackslash linewidth}.
- \textbf{title}: title line sized boxes.
- \textbf{small}: small boxes e.g. for keyword highlighting.
- \textbf{fbox}: identical to the standard \texttt{\textbackslash fbox}.
- \textbf{tight}: no padding space at all.
- \textbf{minimal}: no padding space, no box rules.

\begin{verbatim}
\tcbset{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black}
\foreach \s in {normal,title,small,fbox,tight,minimal} {
  \tcbox[size=\s,on line]{\s} }
\foreach \s in {normal,title,small,fbox,tight,minimal} {
  \tcbox[size=\s,on line,title=Test]{\s} }
\foreach \s in {normal,title,small,fbox,tight,minimal} {
  \begin{tcolorbox}[size=\s,on line,title=Test,width=2.2cm]
    \s
tcboxlower
  \end{tcolorbox} }
\end{verbatim}

\begin{table}
\centering
\begin{tabular}{|c|c|c|c|c|c|c|}
\hline
\textbf{Predefined values} & \textbf{normal} & \textbf{title} & \textbf{small} & \textbf{fbox} & \textbf{tight} & \textbf{minimal} \\
\hline
\texttt{boxrule} & 0.5mm & 0.4mm & 0.3mm & 0.4pt & 0.4pt & 0.0pt \\
\texttt{boxsep} & 1.0mm & 1.0mm & 1.0mm & 3.0pt & 0.0pt & 0.0pt \\
\texttt{left} & 4.0mm & 2.0mm & 1.0mm & 0.0pt & 0.0pt & 0.0pt \\
\texttt{right} & 4.0mm & 2.0mm & 1.0mm & 0.0pt & 0.0pt & 0.0pt \\
\texttt{top} & 2.0mm & 0.25mm & 0.0mm & 0.0pt & 0.0pt & 0.0pt \\
\texttt{bottom} & 2.0mm & 0.25mm & 0.0mm & 0.0pt & 0.0pt & 0.0pt \\
\texttt{toptitle} & 0.0mm & 0.0mm & 0.0mm & 0.0pt & 0.0pt & 0.0pt \\
\texttt{bottomtitle} & 0.0mm & 0.0mm & 0.0mm & 0.0pt & 0.0pt & 0.0pt \\
\texttt{middle} & 2.0mm & 0.75mm & 0.5mm & 1.0pt & 0.2pt & 0.0pt \\
\texttt{arc} & 1.0mm & 0.75mm & 0.5mm & 1.0pt & 0.0pt & 0.0pt \\
\texttt{outer arc} & auto & auto & auto & auto & 0.0pt & 0.0pt \\
\hline
\end{tabular}
\end{table}
Sets the text width of the upper part to the current line width plus an optional \textit{length}. This is achieved by changing the keys \textit{/tcb/width} \textit{+P.40} /tcb/enlarge left by \textit{+P.97}, and \textit{/tcb/enlarge right by \textit{+P.97}} appropriately. The resulting box is overlapping into the left and right margin of the page. Note that this style option has to be given \textit{after} all other geometry keys! Also see /tcb/grow sidewards \textit{by \textit{+P.99}} and /tcb/spread sidewards \textit{+P.102}. 

\texttt{\begin{tcolorbox}\[oversize,title=Oversized box\]\lipsum[2]\end{tcolorbox}}

\texttt{\begin{tcolorbox}\[title=Normal box\]\lipsum[2]\end{tcolorbox}}

\texttt{\textit{Normal text for comparison:}\}

4.7.6 Toggle Left and Right

According to the \(\texttt{toggle preset}\), the left and the right settings of the \texttt{tcolorbox} are switched or not. Feasible values are:

- \texttt{none}: no switching.
- \texttt{forced}: the values of the left and right rules, spaces, and corners are switched.
- \texttt{evenpage}: if the page is an even page, the values of the left and right rules, spaces, and corners are switched. This value also sets \texttt{/tcb/check odd page}\textsuperscript{P.117} to \texttt{true}.

(\texttt{default evenpage, initially none})

Horizontal bounding box enlargements are not toggled by this option. They can be toggled independently by \texttt{/tcb/toggle enlargement}\textsuperscript{P.100}. For example, \texttt{/tcb/oversize}\textsuperscript{P.51} changes the bounding box.

This example switches a 1cm thick rule from the left to the right side depending on the page number. Thereby, the rule is always on the outer side of the double-sided paper. Additionally, a ball is drawn on the outer side with help of an overlay.

\begin{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcblower}
\begin{tcbclipframe}
\begin{tcbclipframe}
\coordinate (X) at ([xshift=-5mm]frame.east);
\coordinate (Y) at ([xshift=5mm]frame.west);
\fill[shading=ball,ball color=blue!50!white,opacity=0.5] (X) circle (4mm);
\end{tcbclipframe}
\end{tcbclipframe}
\end{tcblower}
\end{tcolorbox}

% \usepackage{lipsum}
% \usetikzlibrary{patterns}
% \tcbuselibrary{skins,breakable}
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,breakable, toggle left and right,sharp corners, boxrule=0mm,top=0mm,bottom=0mm,left=1mm,right=1mm, rightrule=1cm,colupper=blue!25!black, interior style={fill overzoom image=lichtspiel.jpg,fill image opacity=0.25}, frame style={pattern=crosshatch dots light steel blue}, overlay={% \begin{tcbclipframe}
\begin{tcbclipframe}
\coordinate (X) at ([xshift=-5mm]frame.east);
\coordinate (Y) at ([xshift=5mm]frame.west);
\fill[shading=ball,ball color=blue!50!white,opacity=0.5] (X) circle (4mm);
\end{tcbclipframe}
\end{tcbclipframe}}\]
\lipsum[1-6]
\end{tcolorbox}


Nulla malesuada porttitor diam. Donec felis erat, congue non, volutpat at, tinci-

4.8 Corners

The four corners of any \texttt{tcolorbox} can be set individually as \texttt{/tcb/sharp corners} or as \texttt{/tcb/rounded corners} \textsuperscript{P.55}. These settings are also reflected in the behavior of \texttt{/tcb/borderline} \textsuperscript{P.201} and \texttt{/tcb/shadow} \textsuperscript{P.212} as one would expect.

By default, all four corners are \textit{rounded}. So, only the \texttt{/tcb/sharp corners} option will be necessary for most use cases. The \texttt{/tcb/rounded corners} \textsuperscript{P.55} option can be used to revert a \texttt{/tcb/sharp corners} setting.

\begin{tcolorbox}[colback=red!5!white, colframe=red!75!black, sharp corners=northwest ]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[colback=red!5!white, colframe=red!75!black, sharp corners ]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

\texttt{/tcb/sharp corners=\{position\}} (default \texttt{all}, initially unset)

The \texttt{\{position\}} denotes one or more of the four box corners to be set as \texttt{sharp corners}. The not assigned corners will retain their mode. Feasible values for \texttt{\{position\}} are:

- \texttt{northwest}
- \texttt{northeast}
- \texttt{southwest}
- \texttt{southeast}
- \texttt{north}
- \texttt{south}
- \texttt{east}
- \texttt{west}
- \texttt{downhill}
- \texttt{uphill}
- \texttt{all}
The `/tcb/rounded corners` can be used to revert a `/tcb/sharp corners` setting. The `<position>` denotes one or more of the four box corners to be set as rounded corners. The not assigned corners will retain their mode. Feasible values for `<position>` are:

- northwest
- northeast
- southwest
- southeast
- north
- south
- east
- west
- downhill
- uphill
- all

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[colback=red!5!white, colframe=red!75!black, sharp corners, rounded corners=northwest ]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

This is a `tcolorbox`.

The `/tcb/sharpish corners` (style, no value) shortcut for setting `/tcb/arc` and `/tcb/outer arc` to 0pt. With this setting, rounded corners will appear as quasi-sharp, but e.g. the shadow will be somewhat rounder than the shadow of really sharp corners.

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[colback=red!5!white, colframe=red!75!black, sharpish corners]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

This is a `tcolorbox`.

Corners are still of type `rounded` with this option, but appear `sharp`. To switch back to rounded corners, one has to adapt `/tcb/arc` and `/tcb/outer arc`.

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[colback=red!5!white, colframe=red!75!black, sharpish corners ]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

This is a `tcolorbox`.

---

3The graphical examples assume that the boxes where set to have sharp corners before.
The following examples will show the differences between \texttt{tcb/rounded corners} \textsuperscript{P.55}, \texttt{tcb/sharpish corners} \textsuperscript{P.55}, and \texttt{tcb/sharp corners} \textsuperscript{P.54}. The later two give the same core box, but \texttt{tcb/borderline} \textsuperscript{P.201} and \texttt{tcb/shadow} \textsuperscript{P.212} settings are slightly different. The following examples use \texttt{tcb/drop fuzzy shadow} \textsuperscript{P.206}. 

My title
This is a \texttt{tcolorbox}.

\textbf{rounded corners}

My title
This is a \texttt{tcolorbox}.

\textbf{sharpish corners}

My title
This is a \texttt{tcolorbox}.

\textbf{sharp corners}
4.9 Transparency

Transparency effects are likely to be used in conjunction with jigsaw skin variants, see Section 10.11 on page 225.

/tcb/opacityframe=⟨fraction⟩

(no default, initially 1.0)
Sets the frame opacity of the box to the given ⟨fraction⟩.

/tcb/opacityback=⟨fraction⟩

(no default, initially 1.0)
Sets the background opacity of the box to the given ⟨fraction⟩.

/tcb/opacitybacktitle=⟨fraction⟩

(no default, initially 1.0)
Sets the title background opacity of the box to the given ⟨fraction⟩.

/tcb/opacityfill=⟨fraction⟩

(style, no default, initially 1.0)
Sets the fill opacity for frame, interior and optionally the title background to the given ⟨fraction⟩.
/tcb/opacityupper=⟨fraction⟩ (no default, initially 1.0)
Sets the text opacity of the upper box part to the given ⟨fraction⟩.

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,opacityupper=0.5, interior]
\begin{Verbatim}
\textbf{This is a tcolorbox.}
\end{Verbatim}
\end{tcolorbox}

/tcb/opacitylower=⟨fraction⟩ (no default, initially 1.0)
Sets the text opacity of the lower box part to the given ⟨fraction⟩.

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,opacitylower=0.5, interior]
\begin{Verbatim}
\textbf{This is a tcolorbox.}
\end{Verbatim}
\end{tcolorbox}

tcblower
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}

/tcb/opacitytext=⟨fraction⟩ (no default, initially 1.0)
Sets the text opacity of the upper and the lower box part to the given ⟨fraction⟩.

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,opacitytext=0.5, interior]
\begin{Verbatim}
\textbf{This is a tcolorbox.}
\end{Verbatim}
\end{tcolorbox}

/tcb/opacitytitle=⟨fraction⟩ (no default, initially 1.0)
Sets the text opacity of the box title to the given ⟨fraction⟩.

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,opacitytitle=0.7, coltitle=black, fonttitle=\textbf{series},title=This is a title, title]
\begin{Verbatim}
\textbf{This is a tcolorbox.}
\end{Verbatim}
\end{tcolorbox}
4.10 Height Control

In a typical usage scenario, the height of a \texttt{tcolorbox} is computed automatically to fit the content. Nevertheless, the height can be set to a fixed value or to fit commonly for several boxes, e.g. if boxes are set side by side.

\begin{itemize}
\item The height control keys are only applicable to unbreakable boxes. If a box is set to be \texttt{/tcb/breakable} \cite{p403}, the height is always computed according to the \textit{natural height}.
\end{itemize}

\texttt{/tcb/natural height} (no value, initially set)

Sets the total height of the colored box to its natural height depending on the box content.

\texttt{/tcb/height=\langle length \rangle} (no default)

Sets the total height of the colored box to \langle length \rangle independent of the box content. \langle length \rangle is the minimum height of the box, if \texttt{/tcb/height plus} is larger than zero.

\begin{Verbatim}
\tcbset{width=(\linewidth-2mm)/3,before=,after=,hfill, colframe=blue!75!black, colback=white}
\begin{tcolorbox}[height=1cm,valign=center]
This box has a height of 1cm.
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[height=2cm,valign=center]
This box has a height of 2cm.
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[height=3cm,split=0.5,valign=center,valign lower=center]
This box has a height of 3cm.
\tcblower
Lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{Verbatim}

\texttt{/tcb/height plus=\langle length \rangle} (no default, initially 0pt)

The box may extend a given fixed \texttt{/tcb/height} up to the given \langle length \rangle.

\begin{Verbatim}
\tcbset{colback=red!5!white, colframe=red!75!black, left=1mm, top=1mm, bottom=1mm, right=1mm, boxsep=0mm, width=3cm, nobeforeafter}
\begin{tcolorbox}[height=1cm]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[height=1cm, height plus=1cm]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[height=1cm, height plus=1cm]
This is a tcolorbox. This is a tcolorbox. This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{Verbatim}
Sets the box height to a dimension between \textit{\texttt{\textlangle min\textrangle}} and \textit{\texttt{\textrangle max\textrangle}}.

\begin{mybox}
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{mybox}
\begin{mybox}
This is a tcolorbox. This is a tcolorbox. This is a tcolorbox.
\end{mybox}
\begin{mybox}
\lipsum[2]
\end{mybox}

\begin{tcolorbox}\[\text{\textit{\texttt{\textlangle text height\textrangle}}=\langle length\rangle\}  \textit{\texttt{\textrangle}}\texttt{(style, no default)}\]
Sets the text height to \textit{\texttt{\textlangle length\textrangle}}. This is the length from the top of the upper part to the bottom of the optional lower part. See also \texttt{/tcb/text width \textrightarrow P.40}.
\end{tcolorbox}

\tcbset{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black}
\begin{tcolorbox}[\text height=2cm]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox} where the text area has a height of 2cm.
\end{tcolorbox}
/tcb/add to height=(length)  

Adds \(\text{length}\) to the current height of the colored box. /tcb/height\(^{\text*P.59}\) has to be set before this key is used! If this option is used several times, then the /tcb/height\(^{\text*P.59}\) is also increased several times.

\begin{tcolorbox}
\text{This box has a height of 2cm.}
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[add to height=1cm]
\text{This box has a height of 3cm.}
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}
\text{This box has a height of 2cm.}
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}
\text{This box has a height of 3cm.}
\end{tcolorbox}

/tcb/add to natural height=(\text{\textbackslash length})  

The application of this option generates a box with natural height plus the given \text{\textbackslash length}. If this option is used several times, then the last setting of \text{\textbackslash length} wins. The resulting box is not considered a fixed height box and the implementation is quite different to /tcb/add to height.

\begin{tcolorbox}
\text{This box has natural height.}
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[add to natural height=1cm]
\text{This box has natural height plus 1 cm.}
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}
\text{This box has natural height.}
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}
\text{This box has natural height plus 1 cm.}
\end{tcolorbox}
If set to `true`, the height of the `tcolorbox` is set to the rest of the available vertical space of the current page. If set to `maximum`, the page is compressed as much as possible. Note that the `tcolorbox` is always set as its own paragraph using this option. Also see `/tcb/text fill` → P.75.

Note that the library `breakable` has to be loaded to use this key!

This height control key is only applicable to unbreakable boxes, but it uses code from the library `breakable`. The counterpart for breakable boxes is `/tcb/height fixed` → P.409.

This option can and should not be used for boxes in boxes, but it can be used for boxes inside a `tcbraster` → P.309.

If this option is used for a tcolorbox which is embedded inside another (outer) tcolorbox and if this outer tcolorbox has a fixed height, then the given (fraction) of the available text height of the outer tcolorbox is used as /tcb/height for the current tcolorbox. Otherwise, /tcb/natural height is applied for the current tcolorbox.
Sets \texttt{/ tcb/height} to match the width of the colored box.

\begin{tcolorbox}
\[width=3\text{cm},
colback=red!5\text{!white},
colframe=red!75\text{!black},
halign=center,\textnormal{valign=center},
square\]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

\texttt{/ tcb/space}=(\textit{fraction})

If the height of a \texttt{tcolorbox} is not the natural height, the space difference between the forced and the natural size is distributed between the upper and the lower part of the box. This space could also be negative. \textit{(fraction)} with a value between 0 and 1 is the amount of space which is added to the upper part, the rest is added to the lower part. If there is no lower part, then all of the space is added to the upper part always.

\begin{tcbset}
width=(\texttt{\linewidth-2mm})/3,before=,after=\hfill,
colframe=blue!75\text{!black},colback=white,height=3\text{cm}\
\end{tcbset}
\foreach \f in \{0.2,0.4,0.7\}
{\begin{tcolorbox}[\texttt{space}=\f]
\texttt{This is the upper part.}\\
\texttt{This is the lower part.}\\
\end{tcolorbox}}

\texttt{/ tcb/space to upper} \quad \text{(style)}

This is an abbreviation for \texttt{space=1}, i.e. all extra space is added to the upper part.

\texttt{/ tcb/space to lower} \quad \text{(style, initially set)}

This is an abbreviation for \texttt{space=0}, i.e. all extra space is added to the lower part (if there is any).
This is an abbreviation for \texttt{space=0.5}, i.e. the extra space equally distributed between the upper and the lower part.

\begin{tcolorbox}[width=(\linewidth-2mm)/3,before=,after=\texttt{hfill},
colframe=blue!75!black,colback=white,height=3cm]
\foreach \myspace in {space to upper,space to both,space to lower}
{\begin{tcolorbox}[\myspace]
This is the upper part.
\tcblower
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}}
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}
[\texttt{colframe=blue!75!black,colback=white,height=3cm},
\texttt{space to=\myspace}]
This is my box of height 3cm. The space is filled with a picture:\\[2mm\]
\includegraphics[width=\linewidth,height=\myspace]{goldshade.png}\\[1mm]
This is some other text.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[width=（macro）]
This is the upper part.
This is the upper part.
This is the upper part.
This is the lower part.
This is the lower part.
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}

$\texttt{tcb/space to both}$ (style)

$\texttt{tcb/space to}=（macro）$ (no default, initially unset)

If the height of a \texttt{tcolorbox} is not the natural height, the space difference between the forced and the natural size is saved into the given local \texttt{（macro）。} This \texttt{（macro）} can and should be used inside the box content to add content which is vertically sized to match \texttt{（macro）}.

- The actual length saved into \texttt{（macro）} is adapted dynamically during several compilations – at least two, but maybe more.
- Due to the adapation algorithm, objects can be sized with \texttt{（macro）} plus any offset length.
- Never ever use \texttt{（macro）} multiplied with a factor. The only exception to this rule is that the space can be split into parts which sum to \texttt{（macro）}.
- Never use this in combination with \texttt{/tcb/fit}$^*$P.457.

$\texttt{begin{tcolorbox}}[\texttt{colframe=blue!75!black,colback=white,height=3cm},$
\texttt{space to=\myspace}]$
This is my box of height 3cm. The space is filled with a picture:\\[2mm\]
\includegraphics[width=\texttt{linewidth},height=\texttt{myspace}]\{goldshade.png}\[1mm$
This is some other text.$\texttt{end{tcolorbox}}$

This is my box of height 3cm. The space is filled with a picture:

This is some other text.
If the height of a \texttt{tcolorbox} is not the natural height, the \textit{(fraction)} with a value between 0 and 1 determines the positioning of the segmentation between the upper and the lower part. Here, 0 stands for top and 1 for bottom. Note that the box is split regardless of the actual dimensions of the text parts!
Boxes which are members of an equal height group will all get the same height, i.e. the maximum of all their natural heights. The \( id \) serves to distinguish between different height groups. Note that you have to compile twice to see changes and that height groups are global definitions.

\begin{tcolorbox}
\[equal \text{ height group}=A,\text{adjusted title}={}\text{One}\]
My smallest box.
\end{tcolorbox}

This box is also small.
\begin{tcolorbox}
\[equal \text{ height group}=A,\text{adjusted title}={}\text{Two}\]
But with a lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}

This box contains a lot of text just to fill the space with word flowing and flowing and flowing until the box is filled with all of it.
\begin{tcolorbox}
\[equal \text{ height group}=B\]
Now, we use another equal height group.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{equation*}
\int_{0}^{1} x^2 = \frac{1}{3}.
\end{equation*}

See Section 16 on page 307 for more equal height options.
Plants a \langle length \rangle into the equal height group with the given \langle id \rangle. This ensures that the height will not drop below \langle length \rangle. Note that you cannot reduce a computed height value by using this key with a small value. The difference to applying /tcb/height \rightarrow P.59 directly is that the boxes are never too small for their content.

\tcbset{colframe=blue!75!black,colback=white,arc=0mm, before=,after=\hfill,fonttitle=\bfseries,left=2mm,right=2mm, width=3.5cm, equal height group=C, minimum for equal height group=C:3.5cm}

\begin{tcolorbox}
My first box. All boxes will get 3.5cm times 3.5cm if the content height is not too large.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}
My second box.
\tcblower
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}{title={Fourth box}}
My final box.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcblisting}{raster equal height,colframe=blue!75!black,colback=white,
 raster every box/.style={minimum for current equal height group=2cm}]
\tcbitem A
\tcbitem B
\end{tcblisting}

\tcbset{colframe=blue!75!black,colback=white,arc=0mm, before=,after=\hfill,fonttitle=\bfseries,left=2mm,right=2mm, width=3.5cm, equal height group=C, minimum for equal height group=C:3.5cm}

\begin{tcolorbox}
My first box. All boxes will get 3.5cm times 3.5cm if the content height is not too large.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}
My second box.
\tcblower
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}{title={Fourth box}}
My final box.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcblisting}{raster equal height,colframe=blue!75!black,colback=white,
 raster every box/.style={minimum for current equal height group=2cm}]
\tcbitem A
\tcbitem B
\end{tcblisting}

\tcbset{colframe=blue!75!black,colback=white,arc=0mm, before=,after=\hfill,fonttitle=\bfseries,left=2mm,right=2mm, width=3.5cm, equal height group=C, minimum for equal height group=C:3.5cm}

\begin{tcolorbox}
My first box. All boxes will get 3.5cm times 3.5cm if the content height is not too large.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}
My second box.
\tcblower
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}{title={Fourth box}}
My final box.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcblisting}{raster equal height,colframe=blue!75!black,colback=white,
 raster every box/.style={minimum for current equal height group=2cm}]
\tcbitem A
\tcbitem B
\end{tcblisting}

\tcbset{colframe=blue!75!black,colback=white,arc=0mm, before=,after=\hfill,fonttitle=\bfseries,left=2mm,right=2mm, width=3.5cm, equal height group=C, minimum for equal height group=C:3.5cm}

\begin{tcolorbox}
My first box. All boxes will get 3.5cm times 3.5cm if the content height is not too large.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}
My second box.
\tcblower
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}{title={Fourth box}}
My final box.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcblisting}{raster equal height,colframe=blue!75!black,colback=white,
 raster every box/.style={minimum for current equal height group=2cm}]
\tcbitem A
\tcbitem B
\end{tcblisting}

\tcbset{colframe=blue!75!black,colback=white,arc=0mm, before=,after=\hfill,fonttitle=\bfseries,left=2mm,right=2mm, width=3.5cm, equal height group=C, minimum for equal height group=C:3.5cm}

\begin{tcolorbox}
My first box. All boxes will get 3.5cm times 3.5cm if the content height is not too large.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}
My second box.
\tcblower
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}{title={Fourth box}}
My final box.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcblisting}{raster equal height,colframe=blue!75!black,colback=white,
 raster every box/.style={minimum for current equal height group=2cm}]
\tcbitem A
\tcbitem B
\end{tcblisting}
/tcb/use height from group=⟨id⟩ (style, default current group)

Sets the current box to a fixed /tcb/height\(^\text{P.59}\) which is copied from an equal height group with the given \(⟨id⟩\). If this height is not available during the current compilation, no fixed height setting is used. If \(⟨id⟩\) is omitted, the current equal height group is used which has to be set before by /tcb/equal height group\(^\text{P.67}\). Note that the natural height of the current box is not considered for computation of the group height. The main application for /tcb/use height from group is that the height can be adapted further by /tcb/add to height\(^\text{P.61}\).

\begin{tcolorbox}
\[use height from group=C, add to height=-2\text{cm},\]
\[colframe=\text{blue!75!black}, colback=\text{white}\]
Height from group ‘C’ of the previous example, but reduced by 2cm.
\end{tcolorbox}

% /tcbuselibrary{raster}
Every line is inside an equal height group:
\begin{tcbraster}
\[raster equal height=\text{rows},\]
\[title=\text{Box } \text{etcbrasternum},\]
\[\text{enhanced}, \text{size=small}, \text{colframe=red!50!black}, \text{colback=red!10!white}\]
\begin{tcolorbox}First line\second line\end{tcolorbox}
The height of this box rules.
\end{tcbraster}

\begin{tcolorbox}Test\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}
\[use height from group\]
First line\second line\end{tcolorbox}
The height of this box rules.

\begin{tcolorbox}[use height from group=⟨macro⟩]{⟨id⟩}
Saves the height from an equal height group with the given \(⟨id⟩\) to a \(⟨macro⟩\). If this height is not available during the current compilation, \(⟨macro⟩\) is set to 0pt.
4.11 Box Content Additions

The following options introduce some arbitrary \(\text{code}\) to the content of a \texttt{tcolorbox}. These additions can be given at the beginning or at the ending of the title, the upper part, or the lower part.

\textbf{U 2023-01-27} \texttt{/tcb/before title} = \texttt{(code)} \hspace{1cm} \text{(no default, initially unset)}

The given \(\text{code}\) is placed \textit{after} the color and font settings and \textit{before} the content of the title. The \(\text{code}\) is appended by a final \texttt{\ignorespaces}.

\begin{verbatim}
\tcbset{before title={\textcolor{yellow}{{\large Important:}~},
    colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries}

\begin{tcolorbox}[title=My title]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{verbatim}

\begin{tcolorbox}
\textbf{Important: My title}

This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

\textbf{N 2023-01-27} \texttt{/tcb/before title*} = \texttt{(code)} \hspace{1cm} \text{(no default, initially unset)}

The given \(\text{code}\) is placed \textit{after} the color and font settings and \textit{before} the content of the title. In contrast to \texttt{/tcb/before title}, no \texttt{\ignorespaces} is appended.

\begin{verbatim}
\tcbset{before title={\textcolor{yellow}{{\large Important:}~},
    colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries}

\begin{tcolorbox}[title=My title]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{verbatim}

\begin{tcolorbox}
\textbf{Important: My title}

This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

\textbf{U 2023-01-27} \texttt{/tcb/after title} = \texttt{(code)} \hspace{1cm} \text{(no default, initially unset)}

The given \(\text{code}\) is placed \textit{after} the content of the title. The \(\text{code}\) is prepended by a leading \texttt{\unskip}.

\begin{verbatim}
\tcbset{after title={\hfill\colorbox{Navy}{approved}},
    colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries}

\begin{tcolorbox}[title=My title]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{verbatim}

\begin{tcolorbox}
\textbf{My title}

This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

\textbf{N 2023-01-27} \texttt{/tcb/after title*} = \texttt{(code)} \hspace{1cm} \text{(no default, initially unset)}

The given \(\text{code}\) is placed \textit{after} the content of the title. In contrast to \texttt{/tcb/after title}, no \texttt{\unskip} is prepended.
The given \textit{code} is placed after the color and font settings and before the content of the upper part. The \textit{code} is appended by a final \texttt{\ignorespaces}.

\begin{tcolorbox}[title=My title]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[size=small,tile, colback=yellow!20,colbacktitle=yellow!70!black, title=My table,hbox,center,center title, before upper*=\begin{tabular}{cc}, after upper*=\end{tabular}, ]
\multicolumn{2}{c}{Title}\\
one & two \\three & four\\
\end{tcolorbox}
The given \texttt{code} is placed \textit{after} the content of the upper part. The \texttt{code} is prepended by a leading \texttt{unskip}.

\begin{tcolorbox}[title=My title]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

My title
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.

\begin{tcolorbox}[before upper=\texttt{\textbackslash flqq},after upper=\texttt{\textbackslash frqq},
colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

«This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.»

\begin{tcolorbox}[after upper=\texttt{\textbackslash par\textbackslash hfill\textit{Read more next week}},
colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\textbf{series}]
\begin{tcolorbox}[title=My title]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

My title
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.

Read more next week

\begin{tcolorbox}[before upper=\texttt{\textbackslash flqq},after upper=\texttt{\textbackslash frqq},
colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

From version 3.80 to 3.94, this option prepended an \texttt{unskip} to the given \texttt{code}.
From version 3.95 to 4.15, this option was deprecated.
From version 4.20, this option is re-established with changed semantic (no \texttt{unskip}!)

From version 3.80 to 3.94, this option prepended an \texttt{unskip} to the given \texttt{code}.
From version 3.95 to 4.15, this option was deprecated.
From version 4.20, this option is re-established with changed semantic (no \texttt{unskip}!)
/tcb/before lower=⟨code⟩
(no default, initially empty)

The given ⟨code⟩ is placed after the color and font settings and before the content of the lower part. The ⟨code⟩ is appended by a final \ignorespaces.

\tcbset{before lower={\textit{Behold:-}},colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black}
\begin{tcolorbox}
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\tcblower
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}

This is a tcolorbox.
Behold: This is the lower part.

\tcb/before lower*=⟨code⟩
(no default, initially unset)

The given ⟨code⟩ is placed after the color and font settings and before the content of the lower part. In contrast to /tcb/before lower, no \ignorespaces is appended. Use this for situations where \ignorespaces is not needed or causes harm.

\begin{tcolorbox}[size=small,bicolor,sidebyside,center lower,  
colback=yellow!30,colbacklower=yellow!20,colframe=yellow!80!black,  
before lower*=\begin{tabular}{cc},  
after lower*=\end{tabular},  
]
My table
\tcblower
\multicolumn{2}{c}{Title}\\
one & two \\
three & four\\
\end{tcolorbox}

My table

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Title</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>one</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>two</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>three</td>
<td>four</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The given \langle code \rangle is placed after the content of the lower part. The \langle code \rangle is prepended by a leading \unskip.

\begin{tcolorbox}[after lower=\textit{This is the end.},
colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black]
This is a \textit{tcolorbox}.
\tcblower
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}

This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.

\begin{tcolorbox}[before lower=\sin^2(x)+\cos^2(x)=1,after lower=\sin^2(x) + \cos^2(x) = 1,]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\tcblower
\sin^2(x)+\cos^2(x)=1.
\end{tcolorbox}

From version 3.80 to 3.94, this option prepended a \unskip to the given \langle code \rangle. From version 3.95 to 4.15, this option was deprecated. From version 4.20, this option is re-established with changed semantic (no \unskip!)
If \texttt{tcb/text fill} is used, one cannot have a lower part and the box is unbreakable.

\begin{tcolorbox}[colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries, height=8cm,text fill, title=My filled box]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\par\vfill
\begin{center}
My middle text.
\end{center}
\par\vfill
This is the end of my box.
\end{tcolorbox}

My filled box

This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.

My middle text.

This is the end of my box.
This style sets \texttt{/tcb/before upper} → P.71 and \texttt{/tcb/after upper} → P.72 and several geometry keys to support a \texttt{tabular*} with the given \texttt{⟨preamble⟩}. The packages \texttt{array} and \texttt{colortbl} have to be loaded separately.

\begin{verbatim}
% \usepackage{array}
% \usepackage{colortbl} - or - \usepackage[table]{xcolor}
\tcbset{enhanced,fonttitle=\bfseries\large,fontupper=\normalsize\sffamily,
    colback=yellow!10!white,colframe=red!50!black,colbacktitle=Salmon!30!white,
coltitle=black,center title}
\begin{tcolorbox}
\[\texttt{tabulars}={\extracolsep{\fill}\hspace{5mm}}lrrrrr\hspace{5mm}],
boxrule=0.5pt,title=My table\]
\begin{tabular}{llllll}
Group & One & Two & Three & Four & Sum \\
\hline
Red & 1000.00 & 2000.00 & 3000.00 & 4000.00 & 10000.00 \\
\hline
Green & 2000.00 & 3000.00 & 4000.00 & 5000.00 & 14000.00 \\
\hline
Blue & 3000.00 & 4000.00 & 5000.00 & 6000.00 & 18000.00 \\
\hline
Sum & 6000.00 & 9000.00 & 12000.00 & 15000.00 & 42000.00
\end{tabular}
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{verbatim}

\begin{verbatim}
% \usepackage{array}
% \usepackage{colortbl} - or - \usepackage[table]{xcolor}
\tcbset{enhanced,fonttitle=\bfseries\large,fontupper=\normalsize\sffamily,
    colback=yellow!10!white,colframe=red!50!black,colbacktitle=Salmon!30!white,
coltitle=black,center title}
\begin{tcolorbox}
\[\texttt{tabulars*}={\arrayrulewidth0.5mm\renewcommand\arraystretch{1.4}}\]
\begin{tabular}{llllll}
\extracolsep{\fill}\hspace{5mm}
Group & One & Two & Three & Four & Sum \\
\hline
Red & 1000.00 & 2000.00 & 3000.00 & 4000.00 & 10000.00 \\
\hline
Green & 2000.00 & 3000.00 & 4000.00 & 5000.00 & 14000.00 \\
\hline
Blue & 3000.00 & 4000.00 & 5000.00 & 6000.00 & 18000.00 \\
\hline
Sum & 6000.00 & 9000.00 & 12000.00 & 15000.00 & 42000.00
\end{tabular}
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{verbatim}

This is a variant of \texttt{/tcb/tabulars} which adds some \texttt{⟨code⟩} before the table starts.
If \texttt{tcb/tabularx} or \texttt{tcb/tabularx*} are used, one cannot have a lower part.

\texttt{tcb/tabularx}=(\texttt{preamble}) (style)

This style sets \texttt{tcb/before upper} \textsuperscript{P.71} and \texttt{tcb/after upper} \textsuperscript{P.72} and several geometry keys to support a \texttt{tabularx} with the given (\texttt{preamble}). The packages \texttt{tabularx} \textsuperscript{4}, \texttt{array}, and \texttt{colortbl} have to be loaded separately.

\begin{tcolorbox}[tabularx={X||Y|Y|Y|Y||Y},title=My table]
\hline
Group & One & Two & Three & Four & Sum \\
\hline
Red & 1000.00 & 2000.00 & 3000.00 & 4000.00 & 10000.00 \\
Green & 2000.00 & 3000.00 & 4000.00 & 5000.00 & 14000.00 \\
Blue & 3000.00 & 4000.00 & 5000.00 & 6000.00 & 18000.00 \\
\hline
Sum & 6000.00 & 9000.00 & 12000.00 & 15000.00 & 42000.00
\end{tcolorbox}

\texttt{tcb/tabularx*}=(\texttt{code})\{\texttt{preamble}\} (style)

This is a variant of \texttt{tcb/tabularx} which adds some (\texttt{code}) before the table starts.

\begin{tcolorbox}[tabularx*={\arrayrulewidth0.5mm}{X|X|X},title=My table]
One & Two & Three & Four \\
\hline
1000.00 & 2000.00 & 3000.00 & 4000.00 \\
2000.00 & 3000.00 & 4000.00
\end{tcolorbox}
This style adds a centered `tikzpicture` environment to the start and end of the upper part. The `{options}` may be given as TikZ picture options.

\begin{tcolorbox}[tikz upper,fonttitle=\bfseries,colback=white,colframe=black, title={tikzname\ drawing}]
\path[fill=yellow,draw=yellow!75!red] (0,0) circle (1cm);
\fill[red] (45:5mm) circle (1mm);
\fill[red] (135:5mm) circle (1mm);
\draw[line width=1mm,red] (215:5mm) arc (215:325:5mm);
\end{tcolorbox}

This style adds a centered `tikzpicture` environment to the start and end of the lower part. The `{options}` may be given as TikZ picture options.

\begin{tcblisting}{tikz lower,listing side text,fonttitle=\bfseries, biCOLOR,colback=LightBlue!50!white,colbacklower=white,colframe=black, righthand width=3cm,title={tikzname\ drawing}}
\path[fill=yellow,draw=yellow!75!red]
(0,0) circle (1cm);
\fill[red] (45:5mm) circle (1mm);
\fill[red] (135:5mm) circle (1mm);
\draw[line width=1mm,red]
(215:5mm) arc (215:325:5mm);
\end{tcblisting}
/tcb/tikznode upper=(options) (style)
This style places the upper part content into a centered TikZ node. The (options) may be given as TikZ node options. This style is especially useful for boxes with multiline texts which are fitted to the text width.

% \usepackage{tikz}
\newtcbbox{\headline}[1][]{enhanced,center,
  ignore nobreak,fontupper=\Large\bfseries,
  colframe=red!50!black,colback=red!10!white,
  drop fuzzy shadow=yellow,tikznode upper,#1}
\headline{Important\\Headline}

Important Headline

/tcb/tikznode lower=(options) (style)
This style places the lower part content into a centered TikZ node. The (options) may be given as TikZ node options.

% \usepackage{tikz}
\begin{tcolorbox}[bicolor,colback=LightBlue!50!white,colbacklower=white,
  colframe=black,tikznode lower={inner sep=2pt,draw=red,fill=yellow}]
Upper part.
\tcblower
Lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}

Upper part.

Lower part.

/tcb/tikznode=(options) (style)
Shortcut for setting /tcb/tikznode upper and /tcb/tikznode lower the same time.

/tcb/varwidth upper=(length) (style, default /tcb/width → P.40)
This style places the upper part content into a varwidth environment. This style needs the varwidth package [1] to be loaded manually. The resulting box has a maximal width of (length). This option is only senseful for a \tcbox → P.14.

% \usepackage{varwidth}
\newtcbbox{\varbox}[]{colframe=red!50!black,
  colback=red!10!white,varwidth upper}
\varbox{Short text.}
\varbox{This box contains is a longer text which is broken.}
This shortcut style sets \tcb/before upper\* \textsuperscript{P.71} to \begin\{name\} and \tcb/after upper\* \textsuperscript{P.72} to \end\{name\}, i.e. the upper part is enclosed by the environment \langle name \rangle.

The second variant also places \langle code \rangle after \begin\{name\}.

\begin{tcolorbox}
\[\text{colback=yellow!30, colframe=yellow!80!black, environment upper=itemize}\]
\item one
\item two
\end{tcolorbox}

• one
• two

Note that you may need additional brackets around \langle code \rangle, if \langle code \rangle contains some parameter(s) for the environment \langle name \rangle.

\begin{tcolorbox}
\[\text{center upper, colback=yellow!30, colframe=yellow!80!black, environment upper args={tabular}{cc}}\]
\begin{tabular}{cc}
one & two \\
three & four
\end{tabular}
\end{tcolorbox}

one two
three four

\begin{tcolorbox}
\[\text{colback=yellow!30, colframe=yellow!80!black, environment upper args = {list}{\setlength\itemsep{0pt}\setlength\parsep{0pt}}},\]
\item Blue is red
\item Red is green
\end{tcolorbox}

Fact: Blue is red
Fact: Red is green

\tcb/environment upper and friends (following) cannot be used to wrap another tcolorbox-based environment, i.e. never use \tcb/environment upper=tcolorbox or \tcb/environment upper=etc-derived-from-tcolorbox.
This shortcut style sets \( \texttt{/tcb/before lower} \to \texttt{\begin{(name)}} \) and \( \texttt{/tcb/after lower} \to \texttt{\end{(name)}} \), i.e. the lower part is enclosed by the environment \( \langle \text{name} \rangle \). The second variant also places \( \langle \text{code} \rangle \) after \( \texttt{\begin{(name)}} \). Note that you may need additional brackets around \( \langle \text{code} \rangle \), if \( \langle \text{code} \rangle \) contains some parameter(s) for the environment \( \langle \text{name} \rangle \).

See \( \texttt{/tcb/environment upper} \to \texttt{P.80} \) for analog examples.

This shortcut style sets \( \texttt{/tcb/before title} \to \texttt{\begin{(name)}} \) and \( \texttt{/tcb/after title} \to \texttt{\end{(name)}} \), i.e. the title text is enclosed by the environment \( \langle \text{name} \rangle \). The second variant also places \( \langle \text{code} \rangle \) after \( \texttt{\begin{(name)}} \). Note that you may need additional brackets around \( \langle \text{code} \rangle \), if \( \langle \text{code} \rangle \) contains some parameter(s) for the environment \( \langle \text{name} \rangle \).

See \( \texttt{/tcb/environment upper} \to \texttt{P.80} \) for analog examples.
4.12 Overlays

With an overlay, arbitrary \textit{graphical code} can be added to a \texttt{tcolorbox}. This code is executed \textit{after} the frame and interior are drawn and \textit{before} the text content is drawn. Therefore, you can decorate the \texttt{tcolorbox} with your own extensions. Common special cases are \textit{watermarks} which are implemented using overlays. See Subsection 10.3 from page 189 if you want to add \textit{watermarks}.

If you use the core package only, the \textit{graphical code} has to be \texttt{pgf} code and there is not much assistance for positioning. Therefore, the usage of the \texttt{/tcb/enhanced} \textsuperscript{P.233} mode from the library \texttt{skins} is recommended which allows \texttt{tikz} code and gives access to \texttt{/tcb/geometry nodes} \textsuperscript{P.159} for positioning.

\begin{tcolorbox}
\textbf{My title}
This is a \texttt{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}
\textbf{My title}
This is a \texttt{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
/tcb/no overlay (style, no default, initially set)

Removes the overlay if set before.

/tcb/overlay broken=(graphical code) (no default, initially unset)

If the box is set to be /tcb/breakable → P.403 and is broken actually, then the (graphical code) is added to the box drawing process. /tcb/overlay → P.82 overwrites this key.

/tcb/overlay unbroken=(graphical code) (no default, initially unset)

If the box is set to be /tcb/breakable → P.403 but is not broken actually or if the box is set to be /tcb/unbreakable → P.404, then the (graphical code) is added to the box drawing process. /tcb/overlay → P.82 overwrites this key.

/tcb/overlay first=(graphical code) (no default, initially unset)

If the box is set to be /tcb/breakable → P.403 and is broken actually, then the (graphical code) is added to the box drawing process for the first part of the break sequence. /tcb/overlay → P.82 overwrites this key.

/tcb/overlay middle=(graphical code) (no default, initially unset)

If the box is set to be /tcb/breakable → P.403 and is broken actually, then the (graphical code) is added to the box drawing process for the middle parts (if any) of the break sequence. /tcb/overlay → P.82 overwrites this key.

/tcb/overlay last=(graphical code) (no default, initially unset)

If the box is set to be /tcb/breakable → P.403 and is broken actually, then the (graphical code) is added to the box drawing process for the last part of the break sequence. /tcb/overlay → P.82 overwrites this key.

/tcb/overlay unbroken and first=(graphical code) (no default, initially unset)

This is an optimized abbreviation for setting /tcb/overlay unbroken and /tcb/overlay first together. /tcb/overlay → P.82 overwrites this key.

/tcb/overlay middle and last=(graphical code) (no default, initially unset)

This is an optimized abbreviation for setting /tcb/overlay middle and /tcb/overlay last together. /tcb/overlay → P.82 overwrites this key.

/tcb/overlay unbroken and last=(graphical code) (no default, initially unset)

This is an optimized abbreviation for setting /tcb/overlay unbroken and /tcb/overlay last together. /tcb/overlay → P.82 overwrites this key.

/tcb/overlay first and middle=(graphical code) (no default, initially unset)

This is an optimized abbreviation for setting /tcb/overlay first and /tcb/overlay middle together. /tcb/overlay → P.82 overwrites this key.

This example demonstrates the application of break sequence specific overlay options. Here, we define an environment myexample based on tcolorbox where the visible drawing is done totally by overlay keys.

Here, the first application of myexample produces an unbroken tcolorbox. The frame is drawn by the code given with /tcb/overlay unbroken.

The second application of myexample is broken into several parts which are drawn by the codes given with /tcb/overlay first, /tcb/overlay middle, and /tcb/overlay last.

% Preamble:
\usepackage{tikz,lipsum}
\tcbuselibrary{skins,breakable}
\newcounter{example}
Example 1

Example 2


Suspendisse vitae elit. Aliquam arcu neque, ornare in, ullamcorper quis, commodo eu, libero.


4.13 Floating Objects

/\texttt{tcb/floatplacement}=\langle values\rangle \quad \text{(no default, initially \texttt{htb})}

Sets \langle values\rangle as default values for the usage of /\texttt{tcb/float} and /\texttt{tcb/float*}. Feasible are the usual parameters for floating objects.

\begin{tcolorbox}
[\texttt{floatplacement=t, float},
\texttt{title=Floating box from |floatplacement|},
\texttt{watermark text={I am floating}}]
\end{tcolorbox}

/\texttt{tcb/float}=\langle values\rangle \quad \text{(default from floatplacement)}

Turns the box to a floating object where \langle values\rangle are the usual parameters for such floating objects. If they are not used, the placement uses the default values given by floatplacement.

\begin{tcolorbox}
[\texttt{float, title=Floating box from |float|},
\texttt{enhanced, watermark text={I’m also floating}}]
\end{tcolorbox}

/\texttt{tcb/float*=\langle values\rangle} \quad \text{(default from floatplacement)}

Identical to /\texttt{tcb/float}, but for wide boxes spanning the whole page width of two column documents or in conjunction with the packages \texttt{multicol} or \texttt{paracol}. Note that you have to set \texttt{width=\textwidth} additionally, if the box should span the whole page width in these cases!

\begin{tcolorbox}
[\texttt{float=b, title=Floating box from |float*|, width=\textwidth,}
\texttt{enhanced, watermark text={I’m also floating}}]
\end{tcolorbox}

/\texttt{tcb/nofloat} \quad \text{(style, initially set)}

Turns the floating behavior off.

\begin{tcolorbox}
In this single column document, you will see no difference to \texttt{float}.
\end{tcolorbox}
For floating objects, the \texttt{/tcb/before} \textsuperscript{P.89} and \texttt{/tcb/after} \textsuperscript{P.89} settings are ignored. Instead, \texttt{/tcb/before float} and \texttt{/tcb/after float} can be used. Further, with \texttt{/tcb/every float}, the given \texttt{(code)} is inserted before a floating box. If the box is \texttt{/tcb/breakable} \textsuperscript{P.403}, the given \texttt{(code)} is inserted before every part of the break sequence. The most common use case is \texttt{every float=\centering}.

\begin{tcbbox}[float=htb,title={Floating box},every float=\centering, colback=blue!50!black,colframe=blue!50!white,colbacktitle=blue!10!white, coltitle=black,center title]{\includegraphics[height=6cm]{lichtspiel.jpg}}

Floating box

For floating objects, the \texttt{/tcb/before} \textsuperscript{P.89} and \texttt{/tcb/after} \textsuperscript{P.89} settings are ignored. Code can be inserted after the begin of the float environment and before \texttt{/tcb/every float} with \texttt{/tcb/before float} and between the end of the box and the end of the float environment with \texttt{/tcb/after float}.

These options are not compatible with \texttt{/tcb/breakable} \textsuperscript{P.403} floating objects and are ignored, if the box is set to be breakable.
4.14 Embedding into the Surroundings

Typically, but not necessarily, a tcolorbox is put inside a separate paragraph and has some vertical space before and after it. This behavior is controlled by the keys /tcb/before and /tcb/after.

Before version 4.40, the default setting for /tcb/before and /tcb/after was given by /tcb/autoparskip P.93. Starting with version 4.40, the default setting is given by /tcb/before skip balanced P.90 and /tcb/after skip balanced P.90.

Note that old documents may need adaptations of page breaks. Alternatively, the old default setting can be restored by using

\tcbsetforeverylayer{autoparskip}

inside the document preamble.

/tcb/before=(code) (no default, initially see /tcb/before skip balanced P.90)
Sets the (code) which is executed before the colored box. It is not used for floating boxes. Also, it is not used, if the box follows a heading immediately and /tcb/ignore nobreak P.95 is set to false.

/tcb/after=(code) (no default, initially see /tcb/after skip balanced P.90)
Sets the (code) which is executed after the colored box. It is not used for floating boxes.

/tcb/nobeforeafter (style, no value)
Abbreviation for clearing the keys before and after. The colored box is not put into a paragraph and there is no space before or after the box.

/tcb/force nobeforeafter (style, no value)
Forces the setting of /tcb/nobeforeafter even if /tcb/before and /tcb/after are set to other values later. Do not use this option globally unless you really know what you do. Note that embedded boxes do not inherit this forced clearance.
Inserts some vertical space before the colored box. This style sets \( \text{tcb/before} \rightarrow \text{P.89} \).

If the depth of the preceding \( \text{TeX} \) box is between 0pt and 0.3\( \text{baselineskip} \), the distance between the baseline of the preceding \( \text{TeX} \) box and the tcolorbox is set to \langle \text{glue} \rangle + 0.3\text{baselineskip}.

If the depth is larger, the distance of the preceeding \( \text{TeX} \) box and the tcolorbox is set to \langle \text{glue} \rangle.

Alternatively, see \( \text{tcb/before skip} \rightarrow \text{P.91} \) which ignores the baseline.

\begin{tcolorbox}[before skip balanced=1cm, colframe=red!50!white]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

Inserts some vertical space of the given \langle \text{glue} \rangle after the colored box. This style sets \( \text{tcb/after} \rightarrow \text{P.89} \). Additionally, \texttt{\textbackslash{prevdepth}} is set to 0.3\text{baselineskip}. The following \( \text{TeX} \) box may enlarge the space by further glue to adjust its baseline. Alternatively, see \( \text{tcb/after skip} \rightarrow \text{P.91} \) which ignores the baseline.

\begin{tcolorbox}[after skip balanced=1cm, colframe=red!50!white]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

Inserts some vertical space of the given \langle \text{glue} \rangle before and after the colored box. This style sets \( \text{tcb/before skip balanced} \) and \( \text{tcb/after skip balanced} \).

\begin{tcolorbox}[beforeafter skip balanced=0pt, height=1.8\text{baselineskip}, enlarge top by=.1\text{baselineskip}, enlarge bottom by=.1\text{baselineskip}, colframe=blue!20, colback=blue!5, size=small, valign upper=center, #1 ]
\end{tcolorbox}
/tcb/before skip=(glue)  (style, no default)

Inserts some vertical space of the given \(\langle\text{glue}\rangle\) before the colored box. This style sets \(\text{/tcb/before}\ \rightarrow \text{P.89}\). In contrast to \(\text{/tcb/before skip balanced}\ \rightarrow \text{P.90}\), this \(\langle\text{glue}\rangle\) is relative to the lower edge of the preceding box and not to the baseline.

\begin{tcolorbox}
[before skip=1cm, colframe=red!50!white]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

Some text.

This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.

/tcb/after skip=(glue)  (style, no default)

Inserts some vertical space of the given \(\langle\text{glue}\rangle\) after the colored box. This style sets \(\text{/tcb/after}\ \rightarrow \text{P.89}\). In contrast to \(\text{/tcb/after skip balanced}\ \rightarrow \text{P.90}\), this \(\langle\text{glue}\rangle\) is relative to the upper edge of the following box and not to the baseline.

\begin{tcolorbox}
[after skip=1cm, colframe=red!50!white]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

Some text.

\begin{tcolorbox}
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

/text before

\begin{tcolorbox}

This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

Second box.

\begin{tcolorbox}

This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

Second box.

\begin{tcolorbox}

This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

/text after

/tcb/beforeafter skip=(glue)  (style, no default)

Inserts some vertical space of the given \(\langle\text{glue}\rangle\) before and after the colored box. This style sets \(\text{/tcb/before skip}\) and \(\text{/tcb/after skip}\).

\begin{tcolorbox}
[tcbset{beforeafter skip=0pt, colframe=red!50!white}]

text before

\begin{tcolorbox}

This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}

This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

Second box.

\begin{tcolorbox}

This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

Second box.

\begin{tcolorbox}

This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

text after
/tcb/left skip=(length)  (style, no default, initially 0mm)
Inserts some horizontal space of the given \langle length \rangle before the colored box. This style sets /tcb/grow to left by \(^{-P.98}\) with the negated \langle length \rangle, i.e. the bounding box and box width are changed.

\noindent rule{\linewidth}{2pt}
\begin{tcolorbox}[left skip=1cm, colframe=red!50!white]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
This is a \texttt{tcolorbox}.

/tcb/right skip=(length)  (style, no default, initially 0mm)
Inserts some horizontal space of the given \langle length \rangle after the colored box. This style sets /tcb/grow to right by \(^{-P.98}\) with the negated \langle length \rangle, i.e. the bounding box and box width are changed.

\noindent rule{\linewidth}{2pt}
\begin{tcolorbox}[right skip=1cm, colframe=red!50!white]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
This is a \texttt{tcolorbox}.

/tcb/leftright skip=(length)  (style, no default)
Inserts some horizontal space of the given \langle length \rangle before and after the colored box. This style changes the bounding box and the box width.

\noindent rule{\linewidth}{2pt}
\begin{tcolorbox}[leftright skip=1cm, colframe=red!50!white]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
This is a \texttt{tcolorbox}.
This options is considered to be superseded by `/tcb/before skip balanced` and `/tcb/after skip balanced` (see note on page 89). Sets the keys `before` and `after` to values which are recommended, if the package `parskip` is used and there is no better idea for `before` and `after`. This is similar to:

```
\tcbset{parskip/.style={before={\par\pagebreak[0]\parindent=0pt},
after={\par}}}
```

This options is considered to be superseded by `/tcb/before skip balanced` and `/tcb/after skip balanced` (see note on page 89). Sets the keys `before` and `after` to values which are recommended, if the package `parskip` is not used and there is no better idea for `before` and `after`. This is similar to:

```
\tcbset{noparskip/.style={before={\par\pagebreak[0]\smallskip\parindent=0pt},
after={\par\smallskip}}}
```

This options is considered to be superseded by `/tcb/before skip balanced` and `/tcb/after skip balanced` (see note on page 89). Tries to detect the usage of the package `parskip` and sets the keys `before` and `after` accordingly. Actually, the following is done:

- If the length of \parskip is greater than 0pt at the beginning of the document, \tcb/parskip is executed. Here, the usage of package `parskip` is assumed.
- Otherwise, if the length of \parskip is not greater than 0pt at the beginning of the document, \tcb/noparskip is executed. Here, the absence of package `parskip` is assumed.
/tcb/baseline=⟨length⟩
(no default, initially 0pt)

Used to set the \pgfsetbaseline value of the resulting tcolorbox.

\tcbset{colframe=red!50!white,width=4cm,nobeforeafter}
\begin{tcolorbox}[baseline=3mm]
One line.
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[baseline=3mm]
First line.\Second line.
\end{tcolorbox}

Some text.................................

First line.
Second line.


/tcb/box align=⟨alignment⟩
(style, no default, initially bottom)

Used to set the /tcb/baseline value of the resulting tcolorbox. Feasible values for ⟨alignment⟩ are:
• bottom: alignment with the box bottom,
• top: alignment with the box top,
• center: alignment with the box center,
• base: alignment with the box content base. This option is not applicable for a \tcolorbox \textit{→} P.12 but for a \tcbox \textit{→} P.14 only. It is an alias for /tcb/tcbox raise base "P.111."

\tcbset{colframe=red!50!white,width=4cm,nobeforeafter}
\begin{tcolorbox}[box align=bottom]
One line.
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[box align=bottom]
First line.\Second line.
\end{tcolorbox}

Some text.................................

First line.
Second line.

\tcbset{colframe=red!50!white,width=4cm,nobeforeafter}
\begin{tcolorbox}[box align=top]
One line.
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[box align=top]
First line.\Second line.
\end{tcolorbox}

Some text.................................

First line.
Second line.
After a heading, \LaTeX{} tries to avoid a break by setting a `nobreak` boolean value. Starting from version 3.33, the `/tcb/before` \textsuperscript{P.89} respectively `/tcb/before skip` \textsuperscript{P.91} settings are not used after a heading if `/tcb/ignore nobreak` is set to `false`. For an unbreakable box, `/tcb/before nobreak` is used instead. Further, a `/tcb/breakable` \textsuperscript{P.403} box will also try to avoid a break between a heading and a directly following first part of a break sequence. Set `/tcb/ignore nobreak` to `true`, if `nobreak` should be ignored as prior to version 3.33. Also, such a setting may be used locally to enforce the `/tcb/before` \textsuperscript{P.89} setting.

Sets the \langle `code` \rangle which is executed before the colored box if it is unbreakable, if `/tcb/ignore nobreak` is not set, and if the box follows a heading.

If this option is set to be `true`, the minimum value of \texttt{parfillskip} is tested at specific spots, if it is greater than \texttt{opt}. If so, \texttt{parfillskip} is restored to \texttt{@flushglue} which happens to be the default value.

These tests are executed for `/tcb/parskip` \textsuperscript{P.93}, `/tcb/noparskip` \textsuperscript{P.93}, `/tcb/after skip` \textsuperscript{P.91}, `/tcb/breakable` \textsuperscript{P.403}, and `tcbraster` \textsuperscript{P.309}.

This option was created to automatically avoid overfull box warnings with \texttt{parfillskip} changing packages.
4.15 Bounding Box

Normally, every \texttt{tcolorbox} has a bounding box which fits exactly to the dimensions of the outer frame. Therefore, \LaTeX{} reserves exactly the space needed for the box. If the bounding box is enlarged, the \texttt{tcolorbox} will get some clearance around it. If the bounding box is shrunk, i.e. enlarged with negative values, the \texttt{tcolorbox} will overlap to other parts of the page. For example, the \texttt{tcolorbox} could be stretched into the page margin.

The following examples use \texttt{/tcb/show bounding box} \(\rightarrow\) P.203 to display the actual bounding box. For this, the library \texttt{skins} has to be included and \texttt{/tcb/enhanced} \(\rightarrow\) P.233 has to be set.

### 4.15.1 Shifting Bounding Box Borders

\texttt{/tcb/enlarge top initially by}=⟨\texttt{length}⟩

(no default, initially 0mm)

Enlarges the bounding box distance to the top of the box by \(⟨\texttt{length}⟩\). If the box is breakable, only the first box of the break sequence gets enlarged. \texttt{/tcb/enlarge top by} \(\rightarrow\) P.97 overwrites this key.

\begin{tcolorbox}
\tcbset{colframe=blue!75!black,colback=white}

\begin{tcolorbox}[enlarge top initially by=-5mm]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[enlarge top initially by=5mm,enhanced,show bounding box]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.

This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

\texttt{/tcb/enlarge bottom finally by}=⟨\texttt{length}⟩

(no default, initially 0mm)

Enlarges the bounding box distance to the bottom of the box by \(⟨\texttt{length}⟩\). If the box is breakable, only the last box of the break sequence gets enlarged. \texttt{/tcb/enlarge bottom by} \(\rightarrow\) P.97 overwrites this key.

\begin{tcolorbox}
\tcbset{colframe=blue!75!black,colback=white}

\begin{tcolorbox}[enlarge bottom finally by=5mm]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[enlarge bottom finally by=-5mm,enhanced,show bounding box]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.

This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
\tcbset{colframe=blue!75!black,colback=white}
\begin{tcolorbox}[enlarge left by=2cm,width=5cm,enhanced,show bounding box]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[enlarge left by=-2cm,width=\linewidth+2cm,enhanced,show bounding box]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.

\tcbset{colframe=blue!75!black,colback=white}
\begin{tcolorbox}[enlarge right by=-2cm,width=\linewidth+2cm,enhanced,show bounding box]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[enlarge right by=2cm,width=\linewidth-2cm,enhanced,show bounding box]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
/tcb/enlarge by=(length)  
(no default, initially 0mm)

Enlarges the bounding box distance to all sides of the box by \( \langle \text{length} \rangle \).

\begin{tcolorbox}
\tcbsset{colframe=blue!75!black, colback=white, width=5cm, nobeforeafter}
\begin{tcolorbox}
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}
\[\text{enlarge by}=5\text{mm, enhanced, show bounding box}\]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

This is a tcolorbox.

\begin{tcolorbox}
\tcbsset{colframe=blue!75!black, colback=white, width=5cm, nobeforeafter}
\begin{tcolorbox}
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}
\tcbsset{colframe=blue!75!black, colback=white}
\begin{tcolorbox}
[enlarge by=5mm, enhanced, show bounding box]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

/tcb/grow to left by=(length)  
(no default, initially 0mm)

Enlarges the current box width by \( \langle \text{length} \rangle \) and enlarges (shrinks) the bounding box distance to the left side of the box by \(-\langle \text{length} \rangle \). Also see /tcb/left skip \( \rightarrow \) P.92.

\begin{tcolorbox}
\tcbsset{colframe=blue!75!black, colback=white}
\begin{tcolorbox}[width=5cm, grow to left by=2cm, enhanced, show bounding box]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox} with a width of 7cm.
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{tcolorbox}

This is a tcolorbox with a width of 7cm.

\begin{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[grow to right by=2cm, enhanced, show bounding box]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[grow to right by=2cm, grow to left by=1cm, enhanced, show bounding box]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{tcolorbox}

This is a tcolorbox.

\begin{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[grow to right by=2cm, grow to left by=1cm, enhanced, show bounding box]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{tcolorbox}

This is a tcolorbox.

\begin{tcolorbox}
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[grow to right by=2cm, grow to left by=1cm, enhanced, show bounding box]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{tcolorbox}

This is a tcolorbox.

\begin{tcolorbox}
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
/tcb/grow sidewards by=(length) (no default, initially 0mm)
Shortcut for setting /tcb/grow to left by → P.98 and /tcb/grow to right by → P.98 to (length). Also see /tcb/oversize → P.51 and /tcb/spread sidewards → P.102.

\begin{tcolorbox}[grow sidewards by=2cm,enhanced,show bounding box]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

This is a \texttt{tcolorbox}.

4.15.2 Box Alignment

/tcb/flush left (style, no value)
Enlarges the bounding box to the right side to fill the line completely.

\begin{tcolorbox}[flush left,width=5cm,enhanced,show bounding box]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

This is a \texttt{tcolorbox}.

/tcb/flush right (style, no value)
Enlarges the bounding box to the left side to fill the line completely.

\begin{tcolorbox}[flush right,width=5cm,enhanced,show bounding box]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

This is a \texttt{tcolorbox}.

/tcb/center (style, no value)
Enlarges the bounding box equally to both sides to fill the line completely.

\begin{tcolorbox}[center,width=5cm,enhanced,show bounding box]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

This is a \texttt{tcolorbox}.
4.15.3 Toggle Enlargements

\texttt{/tcb/toggle enlargement=(toggle preset)} \hspace{1cm} (default evenpage, initially none)

According to the \texttt{(toggle preset)}, the left and the right enlargements of the bounding box are switched or not. Feasible values are:

- \texttt{none}: no switching.
- \texttt{forced}: the values of the left and right enlargement are switched.
- \texttt{evenpage}: if the page is an even page, the values of the left and right enlargement are switched. This value also sets \texttt{/tcb/check odd page} \textsuperscript{P.117} to true.

\textbf{See} \texttt{/tcb/toggle left and right} \textsuperscript{P.52} to toggle geometry settings.

```latex
\tcbset{colframe=blue!75!black,colback=white,
grow to left by=20mm,grow to right by=-5mm}
\begin{tcolorbox}[toggle enlargement=none,enhanced,show bounding box]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[toggle enlargement=forced]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[toggle enlargement=evenpage]
This is an \texttt{tcbifoddpage}(odd){even} page. Therefore, the left and right enlargements \texttt{tcbifoddpage}{are not}{are} toggled.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

This page is an even page. Therefore, the left and right enlargements are toggled.

```latex
\begin{tcolorbox}[colframe=red!60!black,colback=red!15!white,
fonttitle=\textbfseries,title=Floating box from \texttt{toggle enlargement},
width=\textwidth,grow to right by=2cm,toggle enlargement,float=t]
This page is an \texttt{tcbifoddpage}(odd){even} page. Therefore, the left and right enlargements \texttt{tcbifoddpage}{are not}{are} toggled. This box stretches to the right margin on odd pages and to the left margin on even pages. The current document is one-sided -- this feature makes sense for two-sided documents only.
\end{tcolorbox}
```
4.15.4 Spread Box to Page Borders

The following border options are not applicable to nested boxes, boxes inside tables, etc. For boxes inside lists, the options may work, but not necessarily. Also, boxes should be set with \noindent and full width.

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,spread inwards, colframe=blue!75!black, colback=white, show bounding box]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,spread outwards, colframe=blue!75!black, colback=white, show bounding box]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,fill downwards, colframe=blue!75!black, colback=white, show bounding box]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
This is an example for “spread upwards”.

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,spread upwards,sharp corners=north,height=3cm, colframe=blue!75!black,interior style={top color=blue!50,bottom color=white}]
This is an example for \enquote{spread upwards}.
\end{tcolorbox}

This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,spread sidewards,colframe=blue!75!black,colback=white,show bounding box]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

This is an example for “spread downwards”.

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,spread downwards,sharp corners=south, colframe=red!75!black,interior style={top color=white,bottom color=red!50}]
This is an example for \enquote{spread downwards}.
\end{tcolorbox}
The following keys should not be used with breakable boxes.

/tcb/shrink tight

The total colored box is shrunk to the dimensions of the upper part. There should be no lower part and no title. This style sets the /tcb/boxsep*P.45 to 0pt and other geometry keys to fitting values. This option is likely to be used with the following extrusion keys.

\begin{tcolorbox}
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

Lorem \tcbox{ipsum} dolor sit amet, consectetuer adipiscing elit.

/tcb/extrude left by=(length)

The colored box is extruded by the given (length) to the left side. The inner width and the bounding box is kept unchanged and the operation is additive!

\begin{tcolorbox}
\[\text{extrude left by}=1\text{cm}\]
Curabitur dictum gravida mauris.
Nam arcu libero, nonummy eget, consectetuer id, vulputate a, magna.
\end{tcolorbox}

/tcb/extrude right by=(length)

The colored box is extruded by the given (length) to the right side. The inner width and the bounding box is kept unchanged and the operation is additive!

\begin{tcolorbox}
\[\text{extrude right by}=1\text{cm}\]
Curabitur dictum gravida mauris.
Nam arcu libero, nonummy eget, consectetuer id, vulputate a, magna.
\end{tcolorbox}
/tcb/extrude top by=(length) (style, no default, initially unset)

The colored box is extruded by the given \(\text{length}\) to the top side. The inner width and the bounding box is kept unchanged and the operation is additive!

```latex
\tcset{enhanced, colframe=red, colback=yellow!25!white, frame style={opacity=0.25}, interior style={opacity=0.5}, nobeforeafter, tcbox raise base, shrink tight, extrude by=2mm}

Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetuer adipiscing elit. Ut purus elit, vestibulum ut, placerat ac, adipiscing vitae, felis. \tc[extrude top by=1cm]{Curabitur} dictum gravida mauris. Nam arcu libero, nonummy eget, consectetuer id, vulputate a, magna.
```

/tcb/extrude bottom by=(length) (style, no default, initially unset)

The colored box is extruded by the given \(\text{length}\) to the bottom side. The inner width and the bounding box is kept unchanged and the operation is additive!

```latex
\tcset{enhanced, colframe=red, colback=yellow!25!white, frame style={opacity=0.25}, interior style={opacity=0.5}, nobeforeafter, tcbox raise base, shrink tight, extrude by=2mm}

Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetuer adipiscing elit. Ut purus elit, vestibulum ut, placerat ac, adipiscing vitae, felis. \tc[extrude bottom by=1cm]{Curabitur} dictum gravida mauris. Nam arcu libero, nonummy eget, consectetuer id, vulputate a, magna.
```

/tcb/extrude by=(length) (style, no default, initially unset)

The colored box is extruded by the given \(\text{length}\) to all sides. The inner width and the bounding box is kept unchanged and the operation is additive!

```latex
\tcset{enhanced, colframe=red, colback=yellow!25!white, frame style={opacity=0.25}, interior style={opacity=0.5}, nobeforeafter, tcbox raise base, shrink tight, extrude by=2mm}

Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetuer adipiscing elit. Ut purus elit, vestibulum ut, placerat ac, adipiscing vitae, felis. \tc[extrude by=1cm]{Curabitur} dictum gravida mauris. Nam arcu libero, nonummy eget, consectetuer id, vulputate a, magna. Donec vehicula augue eu neque. Pellentesque habitant morbi tristique senectus et netus et malesuada fames ac turpis egestas. \tc[Mauris ut leo.]
```
4.16 Layered Boxes and Every Box Settings

A \texttt{tcolorbox} may contain another \texttt{tcolorbox} and so on. The package takes track of the nesting level using a counter \texttt{tcblayer}. Counter values may be used for doing some fancy things, but you should never change the counter value yourself.

The package takes special care for the first four layers or nesting levels, called managed layers. Here, footnote texts are administrated to find their intended place and specific layer dependent options may be set by changing \texttt{/tcb/every box on layer n} \text{\textsuperscript{P.106}}. If needed, the number of managed layers can be increased by setting \texttt{\tcbsetmanagedlayers} \text{\textsuperscript{P.106}} to a higher value than 4.

The following styles have a considerable influence on how layered boxes are processed. Note especially that nested boxes are getting a \texttt{/tcb/reset} \text{\textsuperscript{P.122}} by default. You can change this, but be prepared for surprises if you do.

If the defaults are \textit{not changed}, a \texttt{tcolorbox} gets its options in the following order. Following options overwrite preceding options.

1. On package load, all options are set to default values.
2. Every \texttt{\tcbset} \text{\textsuperscript{P.13}} command adds or changes options for the following boxes inside the current \TeX{} group.
3. While entering a \texttt{tcolorbox}, a \texttt{/tcb/every box on layer n} \text{\textsuperscript{P.106}} or \texttt{/tcb/every box on higher layers} \text{\textsuperscript{P.106}} option list is applied. With default settings this means:
   - For layer 1 (lowest layer), the \texttt{/tcb/every box} option list is applied. Not overwritten options given by a preceding \texttt{\tcbset} survive.
   - For layer 2 and above (nested boxes), a \texttt{/tcb/reset} followed by \texttt{/tcb/every box} option list is applied. Every resettable options given by a preceding \texttt{\tcbset} and by the surrounding box(es) are reset.
4. The \textit{\texttt{\langle options \rangle}} given to the \texttt{tcolorbox} are applied. Or, if the box was generated by \texttt{\newtcolorbox} \text{\textsuperscript{P.15}} or friends, the \textit{\texttt{\langle options \rangle}} given there are applied.
5. If the box was generated by \texttt{\newtcolorbox} or friends, some automated options are applied.

\texttt{/tcb/every box} \text{(style)}

By default, this style is empty.

\begin{quote}
\hspace{1em} % default setting:
\texttt{\tcbset{every box/.style={}}}
\end{quote}

It may be changed by redefining this style.

\begin{quote}
\hspace{1em} % setting all boxes to be enhanced:
\texttt{\tcbset{every box/.style={enhanced}}}
\end{quote}

The alternative for setting something for every box (on every layer) is

\texttt{\tcbsetforeverylayer} \text{\textsuperscript{P.13}}:

\begin{quote}
\hspace{1em} % setting all boxes to be enhanced:
\texttt{\tcbsetforeverylayer{enhanced}}
\end{quote}
/tcb/every box on layer n

Here, \( n \) has to be replaced by a number ranging from 1 to the highest managed layer number (4 by default).

\[
\text{% default settings:}
\text{\texttt{\tcbset{}}}
\text{\hspace{0.5em} every box on layer 1/.style={every box},}
\text{\hspace{0.5em} every box on layer 2/.style={reset,every box},}
\text{\hspace{0.5em} every box on layer 3/.style={reset,every box},}
\text{\hspace{0.5em} every box on layer 4/.style={reset,every box},}
\]

/tcb/every box on higher layers

Higher layers are layers above the highest managed layer number (4 by default).

\[
\text{% default setting:}
\text{\texttt{\tcbset{}}}
\text{\hspace{0.5em} every box on higher layers/.style={reset,every box}}
\]

/tcbsetmanagedlayers{⟨number⟩}

Replaces the highest managed layer number by \( ⟨\text{number}⟩ \) where 4 is the default. This macro can only be used inside the preamble. Using a \( ⟨\text{number}⟩ \) lower than 4 typically makes no sense, but is not forbidden.

\[
\text{% \texttt{\usepackage{lipsum} \tcbuselibrary{skins,breakable}}}
\text{\texttt{\tcbset{colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries,}}}
\text{\hspace{0.5em} colback=red!5!white,}
\text{\hspace{0.5em} every box/.style={enhanced,watermark text=\texttt{\the\tcb@layer},}
\text{\hspace{0.5em} before=\texttt{\par\smallskip},after=\texttt{\par\smallskip}},}
\text{\hspace{0.5em} every box on layer 2/.append style={colback=yellow!10!white,drop fuzzy shadow}}\}
\text{\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced jigsaw,breakable,title=Layer 1 Box]}
\text{Here comes a footnote\footnote{Footnote from layer 1 box}.}
\text{\lipsum[2]}
\text{\begin{tcolorbox}[title=Layer 2 Box]}
\text{abc\footnote{The footnote of abc}}
\text{\end{tcolorbox}}
\text{\begin{tcolorbox}[title=Another Box,ams equation]}
\text{\texttt{\tcbhighmath}\{\sum\limits_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n}\} = \infty.}
\text{\end{tcolorbox}}
\text{Some text\footnote{Footnote from some text}.}
\text{\begin{tcolorbox}[title=Yet Another Box]}
\text{\tcboxfit[height=2cm]{\texttt{\lipsum[1]}}}
\text{My text.}
\text{\begin{tcolorbox}}
\text{Another \texttt{\lipsum} text\footnote{A \texttt{\lipsum} text}. \texttt{\lipsum[3]}}
\text{\begin{tcolorbox}[title=Layer 4,colframe=blue,colback=white]}
\text{Layer 4\footnote{Layer 4 footnote}}
\text{\end{tcolorbox}}
\text{The End\footnote{Last footnote}.}
\text{\end{tcolorbox}}
\text{\end{tcolorbox}}
\]

Layer 1 Box

Here comes a footnote\footnote{Footnote from layer 1 box}. Nam dui ligula, fringilla a, euismod sodales, sollicitudin vel, wisi. Morbi auctor lorem non justo. Nam laecus libero, pretium at, lobortis vitae, ultricies et, tellus. Donec aliquet, tortor sed accumsan bibendum, erat ligula aliquet magna, vitae

\[ \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n} = \infty. \] (1)


The End.

Footnote from some text

Footnote from layer 1 box

Footnote from layer 4 box

Footnote from layer 4

Footnote from abc

Footnote from other Box

Footnote from Yet Another Box

Footnote from My text
4.17 Capture Mode

\texttt{/tcb/capture=\langle mode \rangle} (no default, initially \texttt{minipage})

The capture \langle mode \rangle defines how the box content is processed. Feasible values for \langle mode \rangle are:

- \texttt{minipage}:
  This is the default \langle mode \rangle for \texttt{tcolorbox} \textsuperscript{P.12}. The content may have an upper and a lower part. Optionally, the box can be \texttt{/tcb/breakable} \textsuperscript{P.403}. The box content is put into a minipage or into something similar to a minipage.

- \texttt{hbox}:
  This is the default \langle mode \rangle for \texttt{tcbox} \textsuperscript{P.14}. The content cannot have a lower part and cannot be broken. The colored box is sized according to the dimensions of the content. A shortcut to set this mode is \texttt{/tcb/hbox}.

- \texttt{fitbox}: (needs the \texttt{fitting} library)
  This is the default \langle mode \rangle for \texttt{tcboxfit} \textsuperscript{P.452}. The content cannot have a lower part and cannot be broken. The content is sized according to the dimensions of the colored box. A shortcut to set this mode is \texttt{/tcb/fit} \textsuperscript{P.457}.

\begin{tcolorbox}
\texttt{\tcbset\{colframe=blue!75!black, colback=white\}}
\begin{tcolorbox}[capture=minipage] This is a tcolorbox. \end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[capture=hbox] This is a tcolorbox. \end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[capture=fitbox,height=9mm] % needs the `fitting` library This is a tcolorbox. \end{tcolorbox}
\end{tcolorbox}

\texttt{/tcb/hbox} (style, no default)
Shortcut for capture=\texttt{hbox}.

\begin{tcolorbox}
\texttt{\tcbset\{colframe=blue!75!black, colback=white\}}
\begin{tcolorbox}[hbox] This is a tcolorbox. \end{tcolorbox}
\end{tcolorbox}

\texttt{/tcb/minipage} (style, no default)
Shortcut for capture=\texttt{minipage}.
The text inside a `tcolorbox` is formatted using a LaTeX `minipage` if the box is unbreakable. If breakable, the box tries a mimicry of a `minipage`. In a `minipage` or `parbox`, paragraphs are formatted slightly different as the main text. If the key value is set to `false`, the normal main text behavior is restored. In some situations, this has some unwanted side effects. It is recommended that you use this experimental setting only where you really want to have this feature.

```latex
\begin{tcolorbox}[parbox,adjusted title={parbox=true (normal)}]
\lipsum[1-2]
\end{tcolorbox} \hfill
\begin{tcolorbox}[parbox=false,adjusted title={parbox=false}]
\lipsum[1-2]
\end{tcolorbox}
```

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>parbox=true (normal)</th>
<th>parbox=false</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
Long words at the beginning of paragraphs in very narrow boxes will not be hyphenated using `pdflatex`. This problem is circumvented by applying the `hyphenationfix` option.

\begin{tcolorbox}
Rechnungsadjunktentochter.
Statthaltereikonzipist.
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[hyphenationfix]
Rechnungsadjunktentochter.
Statthaltereikonzipist.
\end{tcolorbox}

\textbf{parbox=false} and \textbf{hyphenationfix} should not be used together. They are targeting different box types and they do not blend very well.

### 4.19 Files

\begin{tcolorbox}
\texttt{/tcb/tempfile=⟨file name⟩}  \hspace{2cm} (no default, initially \texttt{/jobname.tcbtemp})
\end{tcolorbox}

Sets \texttt{(file name)} as name for the temporary file which is used inside \texttt{tcbwritetemp}°P.147 and \texttt{tcbsetemp}°P.147 implicitly.
4.20 \texttt{tcbox} Specials

The following options are applicable for  \texttt{tcbox}→P.14 and \texttt{tcboxmath}→P.377 only.

\texttt{/tcbox/tcbox raise=}|(\textit{length})| \textit{(no default, initially 0pt)}

Raising the \texttt{tcbox}→P.14 by the given \textit{\langle length\rangle}.

\begin{verbatim}
\tcbset{colframe=blue!50!black,colback=white,colupper=red!50!black,        
\hspace{1cm}fonttitle=\bfseries,nobeforeafter,center title}

Test\dotfill \texttt{tcbox}\hspace{1cm}\dotfill \texttt{tcbox}\hspace{1cm}\texttt{tcbox}
\vspace{2cm}
\vspace{2cm}
\vspace{2cm}
\vspace{2cm}

\end{verbatim}

\texttt{/tcbox/tcbox raise base} \hspace{1cm}(\textit{style, no value, initially unset})

Raising the \texttt{tcbox}→P.14 such that the base of its content matches the base of the environmental line; see example above.

\texttt{/tcbox/on line} \hspace{1cm}(\textit{style, no value, initially unset})

Combines \texttt{/tcbox/tcbox raise base} with \texttt{/tcbox/nobeforeafter}→P.89. The resulting box behaves analogue to \texttt{\fbox}.

\texttt{/tcbox/verbatim} \hspace{1cm}(\textit{style, no value})

Sets options for a \textit{verbatim} style \texttt{tcbox}→P.14. Since the indented boxes may contain only very few words, the dimensions are made smaller and \texttt{/tcbox/nobeforeafter}→P.89 and \texttt{/tcbox/tcbox raise base} are set.

\begin{verbatim}
\DeclareTotalTCBox{\myverb}{ v }{verbatim, 
\hspace{1cm}colframe=red!75!black,colupper=blue}{#1}
\myverb\textbf is a \myverb{\LaTeX} command.

\end{verbatim}
/tcbox width={mode}  \noindent \texttt{(no default, initially auto)}

Controls how \texttt{\tcbox} \texttt{\rightarrow P.14} respects a \texttt{/tcbox/width \rightarrow P.40} setting. Feasible values for \texttt{(mode)} are:

- \texttt{auto} \texttt{(initial setting)}: ignore \texttt{/tcbox/width \rightarrow P.40} and set box width according to its content.
- \texttt{auto limited}: Set box width according to its content, if it is smaller than \texttt{/tcbox/width \rightarrow P.40}. Otherwise, the content is set like in a \texttt{tcolorbox \rightarrow P.12} with line breaks.
- \texttt{forced center}: Set box width according to \texttt{/tcbox/width \rightarrow P.40}. The content is centered and may overlap the box borders.
- \texttt{forced left}: Set box width according to \texttt{/tcbox/width \rightarrow P.40}. The content is left aligned and may overlap the box borders.
- \texttt{forced right}: Set box width according to \texttt{/tcbox/width \rightarrow P.40}. The content is right aligned and may overlap the box borders.
- \texttt{minimum center}: Set box width according to \texttt{/tcbox/width \rightarrow P.40}, if the content fits into. The content is centered and the box width may grow beyond \texttt{/tcbox/width \rightarrow P.40}.
- \texttt{minimum left}: Set box width according to \texttt{/tcbox/width \rightarrow P.40}, if the content fits into. The content is left aligned and the box width may grow beyond \texttt{/tcbox/width \rightarrow P.40}.
- \texttt{minimum right}: Set box width according to \texttt{/tcbox/width \rightarrow P.40}, if the content fits into. The content is right aligned and the box width may grow beyond \texttt{/tcbox/width \rightarrow P.40}.  

\texttt{\tcset\{size=small, on line, before upper=\strut, colframe=blue!75!black, colback=blue!5!white, fontupper=\normalsize, width=4cm\}}

\texttt{\tcbox[tcbox width=auto]{auto}\quad qaquad}
\texttt{\tcbox[tcbox width=auto limited]{auto limited}\quad qaquad}
\texttt{\tcbox[tcbox width=auto limited]{auto limited with long text}\\}
\texttt{\tcbox[tcbox width=forced center]{forced center}\quad qaquad}
\texttt{\tcbox[tcbox width=forced center]{forced center with long text}\\}
\texttt{\tcbox[tcbox width=forced left]{forced left}\quad qaquad}
\texttt{\tcbox[tcbox width=forced left]{forced left with long text}\\}
\texttt{\tcbox[tcbox width=forced right]{forced right}\quad qaquad}
\texttt{\tcbox[tcbox width=forced right]{forced right with long text}\\}
\texttt{\tcbox[tcbox width=minimum center]{minimum center}\quad qaquad}
\texttt{\tcbox[tcbox width=minimum center]{minimum center with long text}\\}
\texttt{\tcbox[tcbox width=minimum left]{minimum left}\quad qaquad}
\texttt{\tcbox[tcbox width=minimum left]{minimum left with long text}\\}
\texttt{\tcbox[tcbox width=minimum right]{minimum right}\quad qaquad}
\texttt{\tcbox[tcbox width=minimum right]{minimum right with long text}}
4.21 Counters, Labels, and References

/\texttt{tcb/phantom}=\langle\texttt{code}\rangle
(no default, initially unset)

The \langle\texttt{code}\rangle is put in a box at the upper left corner of the \texttt{tcolorbox}. If the \texttt{tcolorbox} is breakable, the \langle\texttt{code}\rangle is executed for the first box of the break sequence only. If there already was some phantom code given, the new \langle\texttt{code}\rangle is appended.

The \langle\texttt{code}\rangle is intended to be used for counter stepping, labelling, and related operations which do not produce visible text.

- The \langle\texttt{code}\rangle is executed before the title and box content, i.e. counter values are ensured to be increased before usage.
- Labels are ensured to reference the correct page number.
- The \langle\texttt{code}\rangle is executed only once even during fitting operations for title and box content.
- In combination with the \texttt{hyperref} package, the hyper anchor is set to the upper left corner of the \texttt{tcolorbox}, i.e. links inside the pdf document will jump to the box pleasantly.
- Since the \langle\texttt{code}\rangle is executed inside a \TeX\ group, only global operations can survive this group.

Examples for the \texttt{phantom} usage are given in Section 17.11 from page 368, e.g. Example 17.1 on page 369.

/\texttt{tcb/nophantom}
(no value, initially set)

Removes the phantom code if set before.

\texttt{N 2023-02-08 /tcb/label\ is\ label}
(no value, initially set)

Sets \texttt{\label} as labelling for \texttt{tcolorbox} (global or per box). When /\texttt{tcb/label} and friends are used, the underlying labeling macro is \texttt{\label}. References can be made by \texttt{\ref}, \texttt{\pageref}, and similar macros. This is the default \LaTeX\ behaviour. Note that this option is not getting reset by /\texttt{tcb/reset} \texttt{\rightarrow P.\texttt{122}}.

\texttt{N 2023-02-08 /tcb/label\ is\ zlabel}
(no value, initially unset)

Sets \texttt{\zlabel} as labelling for \texttt{tcolorbox} (global or per box). When /\texttt{tcb/label} and friends are used, the underlying labeling macro is \texttt{\zlabel}. This needs the \texttt{zref} package [12] or packages building upon \texttt{zref} to be loaded. References can be made by \texttt{\zref}. If the \texttt{zref-clever} package [2] is loaded, \texttt{\zcref}, \texttt{\zcpageref}, and similar macros can be applied. Note that this option is not getting reset by /\texttt{tcb/reset} \texttt{\rightarrow P.\texttt{122}}.

\texttt{U 2023-02-08 /tcb/label=}\langle\texttt{marker}\rangle
(no default, initially unset)

The \langle\texttt{marker}\rangle is set as label text with \texttt{\label} for a reference with the \texttt{\ref} macro, if /\texttt{tcb/label is label} is active, or as label text with \texttt{\zlabel} for a reference with the \texttt{zref} macro and similar, if /\texttt{tcb/label is zlabel} is active. Typically, this option is used for numbered boxes, see Subsection 5.1 from page 127, e.g. /\texttt{tcb/new/auto counter} \texttt{\rightarrow P.\texttt{127}}.

\texttt{N 2014-11-28 /tcb/phantomlabel=}\langle\texttt{marker}\rangle
(no default, initially unset)

Equivalent to /\texttt{tcb/label} for an \texttt{unnumbered} box. A \texttt{\phantomsection} from the package \texttt{hyperref} [16] is used to set a correct hyperlink target. This is not needed for a numbered box.
/tcb/step=\langle\textit{counter}\rangle \ (\textit{no default, initially unset})

Shortcut for \texttt{phantom=\{ref\textit{stepcounter}\{#1\}}}\. The given \textit{\langle counter\rangle} is increased and ready for labelling\. This option is not needed when using the convenient automated numbering introduced with version 2.40, see Subsection 5.1 from page 127.

/tcb/step and label=\langle\langle\textit{counter}\rangle\rangle\{\langle\textit{marker}\rangle\} \ (\textit{no default, initially unset})

Shortcut for using /tcb/step and /tcb/label \textsuperscript{P.113}. This option is not needed when using the convenient automated numbering introduced with version 2.40, see Subsection 5.1 from page 127.

/tcb/label type=\langle\textit{type}\rangle \ (\textit{no default, initially unset})

This option has a different meaning based upon the chosen labeling mechanism.

- If /tcb/label \textit{is label} \textsuperscript{P.113} is active:
  The option key /tcb/label type can be used only in conjunction with the \texttt{cleveref} package \textsuperscript{[5]} which has to be loaded separately. \textit{\langle type\rangle} has to be a cross-reference type \textit{known} to cleveref like \texttt{theorem, algorithm, result}, etc. References made with cleveref will use this type. Note that using label type will result in compilation errors, if cleveref is not loaded. For an example, see Theorem 18.3.5 on page 397.

- If /tcb/label \textit{is zlabel} \textsuperscript{P.113} is active:
  The option key /tcb/label type can be used only in conjunction with the \texttt{zref-clever} package \textsuperscript{[2]} which has to be loaded separately. \textit{\langle type\rangle} has to be a cross-reference type \textit{known} to zref-clever. This \textit{\langle type\rangle} is bound to an automatic \texttt{tcolorbox} counter which has to be set up using /tcb/new/auto counter \textsuperscript{P.127}, /tcb/new/use counter from \textsuperscript{P.128}, /tcb/new/use counter \textsuperscript{P.128}, or /tcb/new/use counter* \textsuperscript{P.128}. If /tcb/label \textit{is zlabel} \textsuperscript{P.113} is set, but zref-clever is not loaded, using zref-clever countertype will be silently ignored.

/tcb/no label type \ (\textit{no value, initially set})

Removes a /tcb/label type, if set before.
If the \nameref\ package is loaded, the given \textit{text} is used for corresponding \nameref macros. If the \zref-titleref\ package is loaded, the given \textit{text} is used to set the reference text for \ztitleref. Typically, the \textit{text} will be chosen to be identical or nearly identical to the one for \tcb/title\ref\P.\textsuperscript{23}.

\begin{tcolorbox}
\textbf{Definition in the preamble:}
\begin{verbatim}
\newtcolorbox[auto counter,number within=section]{pabox}[2][]{%
colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries,
title=Examp.-\thetcbcounter: #2,#1}
\begin{pabox}[label={mynamelabel},nameref={Title or anything else}]{Title text}
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{pabox}
This box is automatically numbered with \ref{mynamelabel} on page \pageref{mynamelabel}.
The box is titled \textquote{\nameref{mynamelabel}}.
\end{verbatim}
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}
\textbf{Examp. 4.1: Title text}
\begin{verbatim}
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{verbatim}
\end{tcolorbox}

\textbf{\texttt{/tcb/nameref} is used automatically inside \texttt{\newtcbtheorem}\ref\P.\textsuperscript{374}.}

\begin{tcolorbox}
\textbf{\texttt{/tcb/short title}=(text) \textit{(style, no default)}\ref\P.136}
Sets both \texttt{/tcb/list entry}\ref\P.\textsuperscript{136} and \texttt{/tcb/nameref} to \textit{text}. The most likely use case is to set a short title for the «list of tcolorbox(es)» and for box referencing.
\end{tcolorbox}
A \texttt{\hypertarget} from the package \texttt{hyperref} \cite{hyperref} is used to create an internal link of an anchor \texttt{⟨marker⟩}. This \texttt{⟨marker⟩} can be referenced by \texttt{\hyperlink} or \texttt{/tcb/hyperlink} \textsuperscript{P.223}.

```latex
\begin{tcolorbox}
\[enhanced,
colback=red!10,colframe=red!50!black,\
hypertarget=hypertwinA,\
hyperlink=hypertwinB,\
title=Box A\]
Click me to jump to Box B.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

Sets a PDF bookmark with the given \texttt{⟨text⟩}, if the package \texttt{bookmark} \cite{bookmark} is loaded. This bookmark is set with an automated destination (the current box) and is set one level below the current bookmark level.

```latex
\begin{tcolorbox}
colback=blue!10,colframe=blue!50!black,\
bookmark=Example for using a bookmark,\
title=Example for using a bookmark\]
Open the bookmark view of the previewer to see the bookmark.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

Identical to \texttt{/tcb/bookmark}, but additional \texttt{⟨options⟩} from the package \texttt{bookmark} \cite{bookmark} can be given.

```latex
\begin{tcolorbox}
colback=red!10,colframe=red!50!black,\
bookmark*=\{color=red,italic,bold\}\%\
{Another bookmark example},\
title=Red and bold bookmark\]
Open the bookmark view of the previewer to see the bookmark.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

Adds an index \texttt{⟨entry⟩} for the box. This is a shortcut for setting \texttt{\index{⟨entry⟩}} to \texttt{/tcb/phantom} \textsuperscript{P.113}.

```latex
\begin{tcolorbox}
\index{⟨entry⟩}\%\
Open the bookmark view of the previewer to see the bookmark.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

Adds an \texttt{⟨entry⟩} to an index with a specific \texttt{⟨name⟩}. This is a shortcut for setting \texttt{\index[⟨name⟩]{⟨entry⟩}} to \texttt{/tcb/phantom} \textsuperscript{P.113}. An index extension package like \texttt{imakeidx} has to be loaded to use this option key.

```latex
\begin{tcolorbox}
\index[⟨name⟩]{⟨entry⟩}\%\
Open the bookmark view of the previewer to see the bookmark.
\end{tcolorbox}
```
4.22 Even and Odd Pages

Also see \texttt{/tcb/toggle left and right \textsuperscript{P.}52} and \texttt{/tcb/toggle enlargement \textsuperscript{P.}100} for further even/odd options.

\texttt{/tcb/check odd page=\texttt{true|false}} \hspace{1em} \text{(default \texttt{true}, initially \texttt{false})}

If set to \texttt{true}, a precise even/odd page testing for the current box is applied. This is done by using labels. If a box moves to another page, the document has to be compiled twice for the correct settings. If set to \texttt{false}, even/odd page tests may give wrong results for the first box of a page.

\texttt{/tcb/toggle left and right \textsuperscript{P.}52}, \texttt{/tcb/toggle enlargement \textsuperscript{P.}100}, and \texttt{/tcb/if odd page} automatically set \texttt{check odd page}, but for \texttt{\textbackslash tcbifoddpage \textsuperscript{P.}119} this option has to be set explicitly.

\texttt{/tcb/if odd page}=\texttt{\langle odd options\rangle\{even options\}} \hspace{1em} \text{(style, no default)}

If the current box is on an odd page, the \texttt{\langle odd options\rangle} are applied. On an even page, the \texttt{\langle even options\rangle} are applied. \texttt{/tcb/check odd page} is automatically set for precise even/odd page testing.

\begin{tcolorbox}
\texttt{\begin{tcolorbox}[if odd page=\texttt{\{colback=yellow!50\}\{colback=red!50\}]}
This box is colored in yellow on an odd page 
and is colored in red on an even page.
\end{tcolorbox}}

This box is colored in yellow on an odd page and is colored in red on an even page.

\begin{tcolorbox}
\texttt{\begin{tcolorbox}[if odd page=\texttt{breakable \textsuperscript{P.}403}]}
If a box is \texttt{/tcb/breakable \textsuperscript{P.}403}, using \texttt{/tcb/if odd page} only acts upon the \texttt{first} box. If the setting should be repeated for every partial box of the break sequence, the option should be packed into \texttt{/tcb/extras \textsuperscript{P.}410}. In this case, \texttt{/tcb/check odd page} has to be set explicitly! Also see \texttt{/tcb/if odd page* \textsuperscript{P.}118}.
\end{tcolorbox}}

\texttt{/tcb/if odd page or oneside}=\texttt{\langle odd options\rangle\{even options\}} \hspace{1em} \text{(style, no default)}

For onesided documents, the \texttt{\langle odd options\rangle} are applied always. For twosided documents, this style is identical to \texttt{/tcb/if odd page}.
This option needs the \texttt{breakable} library, see Section 19 on page 401.

For breakable boxes, if the current partial box is on an odd page, the \emph{(odd options)} are applied. On an even page, the \emph{(even options)} are applied. \verb+/tcb/check odd page+\textsuperscript{P.117} is automatically set for precise even/odd page testing.

In contrast to \verb+/tcb/if odd page+\textsuperscript{P.117}, \verb+/tcb/if odd page+\textsuperscript{*} is used on every partial box of a break sequences and not only on the first box. Another difference is that \verb+/tcb/if odd page+\textsuperscript{*} is applied quite late during option processing, while \verb+/tcb/if odd page+\textsuperscript{P.117} is applied immediately.

\verb+/tcb/if odd page+\textsuperscript{*} is implemented as \verb+/tcb/if odd page+\textsuperscript{P.117} packed into \verb+/tcb/extras+\textsuperscript{P.410}.

\begin{tcolorbox}
\texttt{breakable,if odd page*=\{}\texttt{colback=yellow!50}\texttt{}\}\{}\texttt{colback=red!50}\texttt{\}\}
This breakable box is colored in yellow on an odd page
and is colored in red on an even page. For every partial box, the
test is repeated, i.e. this would give a yellow, red, yellow, red, \texttt{\ldots}\sequence for a long content.
\end{tcolorbox}

This breakable box is colored in yellow on an odd page and is colored in red on an even page.
For every partial box, the test is repeated, i.e. this would give a yellow, red, yellow, red, \ldots sequence for a long content.

For onesided documents, the \emph{(odd options)} are applied always. For twosided documents, this style is identical to \verb+/tcb/if odd page+\textsuperscript{*}.
If the current box is on an odd page, the \emph{odd code} is executed. On an even page, the \emph{even code} is executed. For precise even/odd page testing, the \texttt{/tcb/check odd page} \footnote{P.117} has to be set manually inside the box options.

The macro \texttt{tcbifoddpage} can be used inside underlay, overlay, or watermark code to test if the box is on an odd page. This will work also for boxes in a break sequence.

The macro can also be used inside the box \texttt{content text}. For unbreakable boxes, the correct page test is applied. But for \texttt{/tcb/breakable} \footnote{P.403} boxes, \texttt{tcbifoddpage} will always give the result for the page of the first box inside the box \texttt{content text}. If needed, the methods from the packages \texttt{changepage} or \texttt{ifoddpage} could be used here.

\begin{tcolorbox}
\begin{minipage}{0.5\textwidth}
\begin{verbatim}
\texttt{\textbackslash tcbset\{colframe=blue!75!black,colback=white,fonttitle=\bfseries\}}
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,check odd page,
  title={Example for a box on an \texttt{tcbifoddpage}\{odd\}\{even\} page},
  watermark text={\texttt{tcbifoddpage}\{Odd\}\{Even\} page!}]
\lipsum[1]
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{verbatim}
\end{minipage}
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}
\begin{minipage}{0.5\textwidth}
\end{minipage}
\end{tcolorbox}

For onesided documents, the \emph{odd code} is executed always. For twosided documents, this macro is identical to \texttt{tcbifoddpage}.
This is a unique identifier (arabic number) for a tcolorbox. It is locally defined inside boxes and has no meaning outside. It is used for precise even/odd page testing, but may also be valuable for elaborate user code.

\begin{tcolorbox}[colback=yellow!5,title=Box \thetcolorboxnumber]
This box is \thetcolorboxnumber. \tcbox[on line,size=fbox]{This box is \thetcolorboxnumber} and \tcbox[on line,size=fbox]{this box is \thetcolorboxnumber}. This box is \thetcolorboxnumber.
\end{tcolorbox}

Box 1266
This box is 1266. This box is 1267 and this box is 1268. This box is 1266.

This macro contains the expanded arabic page number of the current tcolorbox. It is locally defined inside boxes and has no meaning outside. It is precise only, if /tcb/check odd page was set.

\begin{tcolorbox}[colback=yellow!5,check odd page, title=Box on page \thetcolorboxpage]
This box is located on page \thetcolorboxpage.
\end{tcolorbox}

Box on page 120
This box is located on page 120.
4.23 Externalization

See Section 25 on page 480 for the \texttt{external} library of \texttt{tcolorbox}.

If the \textit{externalization} library of the \texttt{tikz} package is used and \texttt{/tcb/graphical environment} \textsuperscript{P.157} is set to \texttt{tikzpicture}, a \texttt{tcolorbox} could trigger the externalization process which will arise a compilation error.

To avoid this, there are two possible strategies:

- Ensure, that \texttt{\tikzexternaldisable} is set before a \texttt{tcolorbox} is used. If you typically use the pattern \texttt{\tikzexternalenable some picture \tikzexternaldisable}, there is nothing to care about.

- If \textit{externalization} is enabled globally, use \texttt{/tcb/shield externalize} to shield any \texttt{tcolorbox}. The preamble code could look like this:

\begin{verbatim}
\usetikzlibrary{external}
\tikzexternalize
\tcbset{shield externalize}
\end{verbatim}

\texttt{/tcb/shield externalize=true|false} (default \texttt{true}, initially \texttt{false})

If set to \texttt{true}, the drawing part of the \texttt{tcolorbox} is not being externalized which is a good thing at the current state of art. Nevertheless, if the \texttt{tcolorbox} contains a \texttt{tikzpicture}, this picture is still externalized. Pictures drawn with help of \texttt{/tcb/tikz upper} \textsuperscript{P.78} or alike are not externalized.

If a \texttt{tcolorbox} is used inside a node of an encircling \texttt{tikzpicture} which is externalized, do not use \texttt{\tikzexternaldisable} in front of the \texttt{tcolorbox}. \texttt{/tcb/shield externalize} is deactivated automatically inside a \texttt{tikzpicture}.

\texttt{/tcb/shield externalize} is applied for every following \texttt{tcolorbox} inside the current \TeX{} group and is not affected by \texttt{/tcb/reset} \textsuperscript{P.122}.

\texttt{/tcb/external=\textit{\texttt{file name}}} (no default, initially unset)

Convenience option which calls \texttt{\tikzsetnextfilename{\textit{\texttt{file name}}}}. Typically, it may be used inside the option list of a \texttt{tcolorbox} to set the externalization \textit{\texttt{file name}} for the first \texttt{tikzpicture} which is discovered \textit{inside} the box content. The package \texttt{tikz} \textsuperscript{[23]} or the library \texttt{s} \texttt{s} \texttt{skins} has to be loaded to use this option. Additionally, \texttt{\usetikzlibrary{external}} has to be used.

\texttt{/tcb/remake=true|false} (default \texttt{true}, initially \texttt{false})

Convenience option which calls \texttt{/tikz/external/remake next}. Typically, it may be used inside the option list of a \texttt{tcolorbox} to force the remake of the first \texttt{tikzpicture} which is discovered \textit{inside} the box content. The package \texttt{tikz} \textsuperscript{[23]} or the library \texttt{s} \texttt{s} \texttt{skins} has to be loaded to use this option. Additionally, \texttt{\usetikzlibrary{external}} has to be used.
4.24 Miscellaneous

/tcb/reset

Sets (nearly) all \texttt{tcolorbox} settings (including loaded libraries) back to their default values plus any settings given by \texttt{\tcbsetforeverylayer}\textsuperscript{*P.13}, \texttt{\tcb/savedelimiter}\textsuperscript{*P.32}, \texttt{\tcb/capture}\textsuperscript{*P.108}, and \texttt{\tcb/shield externalize}\textsuperscript{*P.121} keep their values. Also, all raster values (see Section 16 on page 307) are not reset. This option is useful for boxes in boxes where the inner box should not inherit the settings of the outer box. Note that for boxes inside boxes the \texttt{reset} is done automatically, if the standard settings of the package are used (v2.40 and above), see Section 4.16 from page 105.

/tcb/code\langle code\rangle

The given \langle code\rangle is executed immediately. This option is useful to place some arbitrary code into an option list.

\begin{tcolorbox}
\begin{minipage}{.8\textwidth}
\texttt{\tcbset\{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,}
\texttt{code=\texttt{Useless at this spot but functional.},}
\texttt{fonttitle=\texttt{bfseries}}
\end{minipage}
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}
\begin{minipage}{.8\textwidth}
\texttt{\begin{tcolorbox}\{code=\texttt{\newcommand\{mycommand\}\{\texttt{\textit{working}}\}}\text{,}
\texttt{title=My \{mycommand\} title}
This is a \texttt{\textbf{tcolorbox}}.
\end{tcolorbox}}
\end{minipage}
\end{tcolorbox}

Useless at this spot but functional.

\begin{tcolorbox}
\textbf{My working title}

This is a \texttt{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
Wraps the `\tl_if_blank:n(TF)` command(s) of `expl3` for option setting. If the ⟨token list⟩ consists only of blank spaces or is entirely empty, the ⟨true options⟩ are set. Otherwise, the ⟨false options⟩ are set.

```
\newtcolorbox{mybox}[1]{ IfBlankF={#1}{title=`#1`} }
\begin{mybox}{My title}
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{mybox}
```

Wraps the `\tl_if_empty:n(TF)` command(s) of `expl3` for option setting. If the ⟨token list⟩ is entirely empty, the ⟨true options⟩ are set. Otherwise, the ⟨false options⟩ are set.

```
\newtcolorbox{mybox}[1]{ IfEmptyTF={#1}{colframe=red}{title=`#1`} }
\begin{mybox}{My title}
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{mybox}
```
Wraps the `\IfNoValue(TF)` command(s) of `xparse` for option setting. If the `<argument>` has no value, the `<true options>` are set. Otherwise, the `<false options>` are set.

```latex
\DeclareTColorBox{mybox}{ o }{colframe=red!75!black,
  IfNoValueTF={#1}{colback=red!5!white}{enhanced,interior style image=#1}}
\begin{mybox}
  This is a tcolorbox.
\end{mybox}
\begin{mybox}[goldshade.png]
  This is a tcolorbox.
\end{mybox}
```

This is a tcolorbox.

This is a tcolorbox.

Wraps the `\IfValue(TF)` command(s) of `xparse` for option setting. If the `<argument>` has a value, the `<true options>` are set. Otherwise, the `<false options>` are set.

```latex
\DeclareTColorBox{mybox}{ o }{colframe=red!75!black, colback=red!5!white, 
  IfValueT={#1}{title={\textit{#1}}, fonttitle={\bfseries}}}
\begin{mybox}
  This is a tcolorbox.
\end{mybox}
\begin{mybox}[My title]
  This is a tcolorbox.
\end{mybox}
```

This is a tcolorbox.

«My title»

This is a tcolorbox.
Wraps the \texttt{IfBoolean(TF)} command(s) of \texttt{xparse} for option setting. If the \texttt{⟨argument⟩} is \texttt{BooleanTrue}, the \texttt{⟨true options⟩} are set. If the \texttt{⟨argument⟩} is \texttt{BooleanFalse}, the \texttt{⟨false options⟩} are set.

\begin{Verbatim}
\texttt{\DeclareTColorBox\{mybox\} \{s\} \{colframe=red!75!black, IfBooleanTF=\{#1\}\{colback=yellow!50!red\}\{colback=red!5!white\}\}}
\end{Verbatim}

\begin{Verbatim}
\begin{mybox}
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{mybox}
\end{Verbatim}

\begin{Verbatim}
\begin{mybox}*
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{mybox}
\end{Verbatim}
Annihilates the current \texttt{tcolorbox} as far as possible. Basically, this comments out the whole \texttt{tcolorbox} by using a key. If the option list of the current \texttt{tcolorbox} contains arbitrary code with global impact (like counter settings), these actions are not undone automatically. Nevertheless, the effects of \texttt{/tcb/phantom\textsuperscript{P.113}}, \texttt{/tcb/step\textsuperscript{P.114}}, \texttt{/tcb/new/auto counter\textsuperscript{P.127}}, etc., are removed by \texttt{/tcb/void}.

\begin{tcolorbox}\[
\begin{array}{l}
\text{title=This box is completely removed by the following key, void}
\end{array}
\]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

This option key cannot be applied for every situation. For example, if several box environments with the same environment name are nested, for the outer environment \texttt{/tcb/void} cannot be used, since the end of the inner environment will be misinterpreted as end of the outer environment. Also, \texttt{/tcb/void} cannot be used for environments wrapped with \texttt{tcolorboxenvironment\textsuperscript{P.22}}.

\begin{tcolorbox}\[
\begin{array}{l}
\text{title=This box is completely removed by the following key, nirvana}
\end{array}
\]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

The contents of the current \texttt{tcolorbox} are processed including counter settings, but the box is just not drawn. Therefore, \texttt{/tcb/nirvana} is less radical than \texttt{/tcb/void} and several box environments can be nested without problems.

\begin{tcolorbox}\[
\begin{array}{l}
\text{title=This box is completely removed by the following key, nirvana}
\end{array}
\]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
5 Initialization Option Keys

The initialization options are only applicable for the generation of new environments and commands based on \tcolorbox and friends. Particularly, they can be used for

- \newtcolorbox \newTColorBox \NewTotalTColorBox
- \newtcbox \NewTCBox \NewTotalTCBox
- \newtcblisting \NewTCBListing
- \newtcbinputlisting \NewTCBInputListing
- \newtcbtheorem \NewTcbTheorem
- \newtcboxfit \NewTCBoxFit \NewTotalTCBoxFit

and friends like \renewtcolorbox etc.

Typically, these options may generate counters and alike. It is strongly recommended that you use initialization options inside the preamble only. Otherwise, you may get trouble when using \LaTeX’s \include features. Also, it is recommended to generate new environments and commands with these options after hyperref is loaded to avoid warnings about duplicate identifiers.

5.1 Numbered Boxes

Counters assigned using the initialization options are administrated automatically. Especially, they are increased for each new box. Independent from the real counter name, the counter value can be referenced by \thetcbcounter, e.g. inside the title of the box. The real counter name is stored inside \tcbcounter.

\texttt{/tcb/new/auto counter} \hspace{2cm} (no value, initially unset)

Creates a new counter automatically. With /tcb/new/number format and /tcb/new/number within, the appearance and behavior of the counter can be changed. The counter value is referenced by \thetcbcounter.

\texttt{\newtcolorbox[auto counter,number within=section]{pabox}{2}{% colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries, title=Examp.~\thetcbcounter: #2,#1}}

\begin{pabox}[label={myautocounter}]{Title with number}
This box is automatically numbered with \ref{myautocounter} on page \pageref{myautocounter}. Inside the box, the \thetcbcounter can also be referenced by \thetcbcounter. The real counter name is \texttt{\tcb@cnt@pabox}.
\end{pabox}

Examp. 5.1: Title with number

This box is automatically numbered with 5.1 on page 127. Inside the box, the 5.1 can also be referenced by \thetcbcounter. The real counter name is \texttt{tcb@cnt@pabox}.
/tcb/new/use counter from=⟨tcolorbox⟩

Here, a counter from another ⟨tcolorbox⟩ is reused. Note that the settings for /tcb/new/number format→P.129 and /tcb/new/number within→P.129 are inherited and cannot be changed. The counter value is referenced by \tcbcounter.

```
\newtcolorbox[use counter from=pabox]{mybox}[2][]{
  \% colback=blue!5!white,colframe=blue!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries,
  title=Some Box \tcbcounter: #2,#1}
\begin{mybox}[label={myusecounterfrom}]{Title with continued number}
This box is automatically numbered with \ref{myusecounterfrom} on page \pageref{myusecounterfrom}. Inside the box, the \tcbcounter\ can also be referenced by \texttt{\tcbcounter}.
The real counter name is \texttt{tcb\@cnt\@pabox}.
\end{mybox}

Some Box 5.2: Title with continued number

This box is automatically numbered with 5.2 on page 128. Inside the box, the 5.2 can also be referenced by \tcbcounter. The real counter name is \texttt{tcb\@cnt\@pabox}.
```

/tcb/new/use counter=⟨counter⟩

Here, an ordinary existing LATEX ⟨counter⟩ is used for numbering. With /tcb/new/number format→P.129 and /tcb/new/number within→P.129, the appearance and behavior of the counter can be changed. The counter value is referenced by \tcbcounter.

```
% \newcounter{myexample}\% preamble
\newtcolorbox[use counter=myexample,number format=\Alph\]{mybox}[2][]{
  \% colback=green!5!white,colframe=green!55!black,fonttitle=\bfseries,
  title=Some Box \tcbcounter: #2,#1}
\begin{mybox}[label={myusecounter}]{Title with \LaTeX\ number}
This box is automatically numbered with \ref{myusecounter} on page \pageref{myusecounter}. Inside the box, the \tcbcounter\ can also be referenced by \texttt{\tcbcounter}.
The real counter name is \texttt{myexample}.
\end{mybox}

Some Box A: Title with \LaTeX\ number

This box is automatically numbered with A on page 128. Inside the box, the A can also be referenced by \tcbcounter. The real counter name is \texttt{myexample}.
```

/tcb/new/use counter*=⟨counter⟩

An existing LATEX ⟨counter⟩ is used for numbering. In contrast to /tcb/new/use counter, the options /tcb/new/number format→P.129 and /tcb/new/number within→P.129 are ignored. Use this for counters which are already configured outside the tcolorbox package, e.g. the standard figure counter.

/tcb/new/no counter

The created boxes are not numbered. This is the default. The option may be used to overrule a previous option.

/tcb/new/reset counter on overlays=true|false

(default true, initially false)

For beamer slides, this invokes the \resetcounteronoverlays command for the box counter. The counter is automatically reset on subsequent overlay slides of a frame. Thereby, the counter will be the same on all slides of every frame.

128
The automatic counter is set to zero, if \textit{counter} is increased. Additionally, during output, the value of \textit{counter} is prepended to the value of the automatic counter.

To prepend the automatic counter with the chapter number and to reset it with every new chapter, use:

\texttt{number within=chapter}

See \texttt{/tcb/new/use counter} \textsuperscript{P.128} for a complete example.

Declares the format of the automatic counter. The \textit{format macro} can be any valid \LaTeX{} number formatting macro like \texttt{\arabic{}}, \texttt{\roman{}}, etc.

To display the counter value in large roman numbers, use:

\texttt{number format=\Roman{}}

See \texttt{/tcb/new/auto counter} \textsuperscript{P.127} for a complete example.

Allows advanced control over the complete number format. This option overrules the format given by \texttt{/tcb/new/number within} and \texttt{/tcb/new/number format}. Nevertheless, you can combine it with \texttt{/tcb/new/number within} to get the desired reset property.

The \textit{code} is some formatting code which should contain \texttt{\tcbcounter} to reference the automated counter. Since this \textit{code} is expanded, you have to secure each macro with \texttt{\noexpand} with exception of \texttt{\tcbcounter}.

\texttt{number freestyle=(code)}

Definition in the preamble:

\begin{verbatim}
\newtcolorbox[auto counter,number within=section,
  number freestyle={(Q/\noexpand\thesection/\noexpand\Alph{\tcbcounter})},
  ]{phbox}[2]{
\% colback=yellow!15!white,colframe=blue!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries,
  title=Question~\thetcbcounter
\}
\begin{phbox}[label={myfreestyle}]{Title with freestyle number}
This box is automatically numbered with \texttt{\ref{myfreestyle}} on page \texttt{\pageref{myfreestyle}}. Inside the box, the \texttt{\thetcbcounter} can also be referenced by \texttt{\\thetcbcounter}. The real counter name is \texttt{\texttt{\texttt{tcb@cnt@phbox}}.}
\end{phbox}
\end{verbatim}

\begin{phbox}[label={myfreestyle}]{Title with freestyle number}
This box is automatically numbered with \texttt{(Q/5/A)} on page 129. Inside the box, the \texttt{(Q/5/A)} can also be referenced by \texttt{\thetcbcounter}. The real counter name is \texttt{tcb@cnt@phbox}. 
\end{phbox}
The following options /tcb/new/crefname and /tcb/new/Crefname need to be set inside the preamble.

\tcb/new/crefname={⟨singular⟩}{⟨plural⟩} (no default, initially unset)

This option key can be used only in conjunction with the cleveref package [5] which has to be loaded separately. It creates a cross-reference type for the new \textcolorbox’es, where the lowercase \{⟨singular⟩\} and \{⟨plural⟩\} forms of the cross-reference are given. This type is the environment or macro name and /tcb/label type \[P.114\] is set automatically. See /tcb/label type \[P.114\] and [5] for more information.

\tcb/new/Crefname={⟨singular⟩}{⟨plural⟩} (no default, initially unset)

This option key can be used only in conjunction with the cleveref package [5] which has to be loaded separately. It creates a cross-reference type for the new \textcolorbox’es, where the uppercase \{⟨singular⟩\} and \{⟨plural⟩\} forms of the cross-reference are given. This type is the environment or macro name and /tcb/label type \[P.114\] is set automatically. See /tcb/label type \[P.114\] and [5] for more information.

\begin{mybluebox}[label={myreference}]{My title}
This is an example.
\end{mybluebox}
\Cref{myreference}, \cref{myreference}.
\Cpageref{myreference}, \cpageref{myreference}.
\nameCref{myreference}, \namecref{myreference}.
\labelcref{myreference}, \labelcpageref{myreference}.
With \texttt{varioref}:
\Vref{myreference}, \vref{myreference}.
\Vref*[myreference], \vref*[myreference].

Bluebox 5.1: My title
This is an example.

Bluebox 5.1, bluebox 5.1.
Page 130, page 130.
Bluebox, bluebox.
5.1, 130.
With \texttt{varioref}:
Bluebox 5.1, bluebox 5.1.
Bluebox 5.1, bluebox 5.1.
Used to comfortably blend into an existing schema of naming and numbering for some selected cases. For example, a `tcolorbox` can be used to display and entitle an image pretending to be a standard `figure` environment. Here, `/tcb/title → P.23` is used instead of the standard `\caption` and `/tcb/list text → P.136` can be used instead of the optional parameter of the standard `\caption`. Also, `/tcb/new/list type → P.134` is automatically adapted (changed with version 6.0.5).

Feasible values for `⟨name⟩` are:

- **figures**: blend into the standard `figure` environment.
- **tables**: blend into the standard `table` environment.
- **listings**: blend into the standard `lstlisting` environment of the package `listings` [6].

Note that `blend into=listings` can only be used in the document content or, preferably, inside a `\AtBeginDocument` clause! Using it without `\AtBeginDocument` inside the preamble does not work since the `listings` packages initializes its counter also inside `\AtBeginDocument`.

```latex
\begin{figure}[htb]
\centering\includegraphics[height=4cm]{lichtspiel.jpg}
\caption{A standard figure}
\end{figure}

\newtcolorbox[blend into=figures]{myfigure}[2]
{float=htb,capture=hbox,
\textbf{title=}#2,every float=\centering,#1}

\begin{myfigure}{A tcolorbox figure}
\includegraphics[height=4cm]{lichtspiel.jpg}
\end{myfigure}
```

Figure 1: A standard figure

Figure 2: A `tcolorbox` figure
\tcb{blend before title=⟨value⟩} (no default, initially colon)

This option formats the title output of \tcb{new/blend into} P.131. Note that this is a common \tcolorbox option which should be set globally or in the normal option part of \newtcolorbox P.15.

Feasible values for ⟨value⟩ are:
- colon: use name/number plus colon.
- dash: use name/number plus dash.
- colon hang: use name/number plus colon with hanging indent.
- dash hang: use name/number plus dash with hanging indent.

\newtcolorbox[blend into=figures]{myfigure}[2]{float=htb,capture=hbox,blend before title=dash hang,title=⟨#2⟩,every float=\centering,#1}

\begin{myfigure}{A tcolorbox figure with quite a long title}
\includegraphics[height=5cm]{lichtspiel.jpg}
\end{myfigure}

\begin{myfigure}{A tcolorbox figure with quite a long title}
\includegraphics[height=5cm]{lichtspiel.jpg}
\end{myfigure}
This option formats the title output of /tcb/new/blend into P.131. The \texttt{\textlangle\textcode\textrangle} takes one parameter, the name/number. Use this, if /tcb/blend before title P.132 is not flexible enough.

\begin{myfigure}{A tcolorbox figure}
\includegraphics[height=6cm]{lichtspiel.jpg}
\end{myfigure}

\textbf{Figure 4} A tcolorbox figure
5.2 Lists of \texttt{tcolorbox}

For figures and tables, \LaTeX{} provides the \texttt{\listoffigures} and \texttt{\listoftables} commands to create lists of these numbered entities. Also, a \texttt{tcolorbox} can be part of such a kind of list.

1. Assign a list \langle \textit{name} \rangle by the initialization option \texttt{/tcb/new/list inside}.

2. Optionally, a new \langle \textit{type} \rangle for list entries may be assigned by the initialization option \texttt{/tcb/new/list type}.

3. List entries are generated automatically within each new \texttt{tcolorbox} using the above initialization.
   - If \texttt{/tcb/list entry} \texttt{} is set, the entry is generated with it.
   - Otherwise, if \texttt{/tcb/title} \texttt{} is set, the entry is generated with it.
   - Otherwise, the entry is generated with the current number and the environment name.

4. The generated list is displayed by \texttt{\tcblistof} \texttt{}.

\texttt{/tcb/new/list inside=\langle \textit{name} \rangle} \texttt{} (no default, initially unset)

Assigns a list or contents file to the generated \texttt{tcolorbox}es. Entries to this list are saved to a file which gets the \langle \textit{name} \rangle as file name extension. The list is referenced by this name in \texttt{\tcblistof} \texttt{}.

For example:

\begin{verbatim}
list inside=exam
\end{verbatim}

See Section 17.11 from page 368 for a complete example.

\texttt{/tcb/new/list type=\langle \textit{type} \rangle} \texttt{} (no default, initially \texttt{tcolorbox})

Optionally, some \langle \textit{type} \rangle can be assigned to the list entries. For a new \langle \textit{type} \rangle, a macro \texttt{\l@\langle \textit{type} \rangle} has to exist which controls the format of the list entry. The default type is defined by

\begin{verbatim}
\newcommand*{\l@tcolorbox}{\@dottedtocline{1}{1.5em}{2.3em}}
\end{verbatim}

This is identical to the \texttt{\l@section} setting of \LaTeX{}. \texttt{\l@tcolorbox} can be redefined or a new \langle \textit{type} \rangle can be assigned.
\texttt{\texttt{tcblistof}} \texttt{[(macro)]\{\langle name\rangle\}\{\langle short\rangle\}\{\langle title\ text\rangle\}}

Displays the generated list of \texttt{tcolorbox}es with the given \texttt{\langle name\rangle}. The heading is generated by \texttt{\langle macro\rangle\{\langle short\rangle\}\{\langle title\ text\rangle\}} where \texttt{\section} is the default setting for \texttt{\langle macro\rangle}. Here, as usual, \texttt{\langle title\ text\rangle} is the title of the section or chapter while \texttt{\langle short\rangle} is a shorter title for headings and table of contents.

- If \texttt{\langle macro\rangle} ends with a *, \texttt{\tcblistof} mimics the behavior of \texttt{\listoffigures} from the standard \LaTeX{} classes and adds the title to the left and right mark for headings.
- If \texttt{\langle macro\rangle} starts with \texttt{\chapter}, a possible two column document setting is restored to one column (as standard \LaTeX{} classes do for \texttt{\listoffigures}).

To display the list inside a subsection, use for example:

\begin{tcblistof}[subsection]{exam}{List of Exercises}
\end{tcblistof}

The result of the example is found as Subsection 17.12 on page 371.

To apply the list similar to \texttt{\listoffigures} for a report or book, use for example:

\begin{tcblistof}[chapter*]{exam}{List of Exercises}
\end{tcblistof}

To set a short title for headings with the default \texttt{\section} setting, use for example:

\begin{tcblistof}{exam}{List of Exercises}{Elaborate List of Fine Exercises for all Students of my Course}
\end{tcblistof}

The core of the list is generated by \texttt{\@starttoc\{\langle name\rangle\}} which can be wrapped into an own macro.
The following options are not initialization options, but common options, which are typically reasonable in connection with lists of `tcolorbox`es.

```latex
\tcb/list entry={text} \hspace{1cm} \text{(no default, initially unset)}
```

If the «list of tcolorbox(es)» feature described in the current subsection is used, this key describes the \textit{(text)} for an entry into the generated list, e.g.

```latex
list entry={\protect\numberline{\thetcbcounter}My beautiful Example}
```

See Section 17.11 from page 368 for a complete example.

If \texttt{\thetcbcounter} is omitted, \texttt{/tcb/list entry} could be used for unnumbered boxes too.

\begin{itemize}
  \item This is a customization option. For numbered boxes, \texttt{/tcb/list entry} typically has not to be given, because this entry will be generated automatically.
\end{itemize}

```latex
\tcb/list text={text} \hspace{1cm} \text{(style, no default)}
```

This is a shortcut for setting \texttt{/tcb/list entry} to \texttt{\protect\numberline{\thetcbcounter}{text}}. So, the following settings are identical:

```latex
list text={My beautiful Example},
list entry={\protect\numberline{\thetcbcounter}My beautiful Example}
```

See Section 17.11 from page 368 for a complete example.

```latex
\tcb/add to list={⟨list⟩}{⟨type⟩} \hspace{1.2cm} \text{(no default, initially unset)}
```

If the «list of tcolorbox(es)» feature described in the current subsection is used, list entries are generated automatically. With this key, you can enforce an entry to the given \textit{⟨list⟩} with the given \textit{⟨type⟩}. This issues:

\texttt{\addcontentsline{⟨list⟩}{⟨type⟩}{⟨entry text⟩}}

\textit{⟨entry text⟩} may be given by \texttt{/tcb/list entry}.

\begin{itemize}
  \item This is a customization option. For numbered boxes, this feature is configured automatically, where \textit{⟨list⟩} is set by \texttt{/tcb/new/list inside} \texttt{→ P.134} and \textit{⟨type⟩} is set by \texttt{/tcb/new/list type} \texttt{→ P.134}
\end{itemize}
A side by side box is a special tcolorbox \(^\text{P.12}\) where the upper and lower part of the box are set side by side. All boxes of this kind are unbreakable.

Further side by side options for code examples are /tcb/listing side text \(^\text{P.349}\), /tcb/text side listing \(^\text{P.349}\), /tcb/listing outside text \(^\text{P.349}\), and /tcb/text outside listing \(^\text{P.350}\).

### 6.1 Basic Settings

\texttt{/tcb/sidebyside=true|false} \hspace{1cm} (default \texttt{true}, initially \texttt{false})

Normally, the upper part and the lower part of the box have their positions as their names suggest. If \texttt{sidebyside} is set to \texttt{true}, the upper part is drawn \textit{left-handed} and the lower part is drawn \textit{right-handed}. Both parts are drawn together with the geometry settings of the upper part but the space is divided horizontally according to the following options. Colors, fonts, and box content additions are used individually. The resulting box is unbreakable.
Sets the vertical \textit{alignment} for the left-handed and right-handed part. Feasible values for \textit{alignment} are:

- \texttt{center}: identical to \texttt{minipage} option \texttt{c}.
- \texttt{top}: identical to \texttt{minipage} option \texttt{t} (aligns the top lines of the left-handed and right-handed side according to their baselines).
- \texttt{bottom}: identical to \texttt{minipage} option \texttt{b} (aligns the bottom lines of the left-handed and right-handed side according to their baselines).
- \texttt{center seam}: aligns the center of the left-handed and right-handed side.
- \texttt{top seam}: aligns the very top seam of the left-handed and right-handed side.
- \texttt{bottom seam}: aligns the very bottom seam of the left-handed and right-handed side.

\begin{tcolorbox}
\texttt{\texttcbset{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries,nobeforeafter,}
\texttt{left=2mm,right=2mm,sidebyside,sidebyside gap=6mm,width=(\textwidth-2mm)/3}}
\texttt{\begin{tcolorbox}[adjusted title=center,sidebyside align=center]}
This is a text which is too long for one line.
\texttt{\tcblower}
This is a short text.
\texttt{\end{tcolorbox}}\hfill
\texttt{\begin{tcolorbox}[adjusted title=top,sidebyside align=top]}
This is a text which is too long for one line.
\texttt{\tcblower}
This is a short text.
\texttt{\end{tcolorbox}}\hfill
\texttt{\begin{tcolorbox}[adjusted title=bottom,sidebyside align=bottom]}
This is a text which is too long for one line.
\texttt{\tcblower}
This is a short text.
\texttt{\end{tcolorbox}}
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tabular}{|c|c|c|}
\hline
\texttt{center} & \texttt{top} & \texttt{bottom} \\
\texttt{This is a text which is too long for one line.} & \texttt{This is a text which is too long for one line.} & \texttt{This is a text which is too long for one line.} \\
\texttt{This is a short text.} & \texttt{This is a short text.} & \texttt{This is a short text.} \\
\hline
\end{tabular}

\texttt{center}, \texttt{top}, and \texttt{bottom} are identical to the known corresponding \texttt{minipage} options. While this is the preferred approach for text content, the result for boxed content like tables or images may not be as expected.

For such content, one may use \texttt{center seam}, \texttt{top seam}, and \texttt{bottom seam}. For example, \texttt{top seam} aligns the very top seam of the left-handed and right-handed side.
This is my description text for the pictures displayed on the right-handed side.

**center seam**

This is my description text for the pictures displayed on the right-handed side.

**top seam**

This is my description text for the pictures displayed on the right-handed side.

**bottom seam**

This is my description text for the pictures displayed on the right-handed side.
\tcbset{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle={\bfseries},nobeforeafter, sidebyside,width=(\linewidth-2mm)/2}
\begin{tcolorbox}[adjusted title=Wide gap,sidebyside gap=30mm]
This is a text which is too long for one line.
\tcblower
This is a short text.
\end{tcolorbox}\hfill\begin{tcolorbox}[adjusted title=Narrow gap,sidebyside gap=1mm]
This is a text which is too long for one line.
\tcblower
This is a short text.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}
[title=My title,sidebyside,lefthand width=3cm]
This is the upper (left-handed) part.
\tcblower
This is the lower (right-handed) part.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}
[title=My title,sidebyside,righthand width=3cm]
This is the upper (left-handed) part.
\tcblower
This is the lower (right-handed) part.
\end{tcolorbox}
/tcb/lefthand ratio=\langle fraction \rangle 
(no default, initially 0.5)
Sets the width of the left-handed part to the given \langle fraction \rangle of the available space. \langle fraction \rangle is a value between 0 and 1.

\begin{tcolorbox}[title=My title,sidebyside,lefthand ratio=0.25]
This is the upper (\textit{left-handed}) part.
\tcblower
This is the lower (\textit{right-handed}) part.
\end{tcolorbox}

/tcb/righthand ratio=\langle fraction \rangle 
(no default, initially 0.5)
Sets the width of the right-handed part to the given \langle fraction \rangle of the available space. \langle fraction \rangle is a value between 0 and 1.

\begin{tcolorbox}[title=My title,sidebyside,righthand ratio=0.25]
This is the upper (\textit{left-handed}) part.
\tcblower
This is the lower (\textit{right-handed}) part.
\end{tcolorbox}
If one side of a side-by-side box should be adapted to the width of its content, this width has to be computed beforehand. The following example uses a savebox \mysavebox to store the picture to determine its width. A more convenient way to handle this task is to use the methods from Section 6.2 on page 143.

\begin{tikzpicture}
\path[fill=red!20,draw=red!50!black]
(0,0) node[below]{A} -- (3,1) node[right]{B}
-- (1,4) node[above]{C} -- cycle;
\end{tikzpicture}

6.2 Advanced Settings
\tcbsidebyside[(options)]\{(left-handed content)\}{(right-handed content)}

Creates a colored box using more or less arbitrary \textit{(options)} for a \texttt{tcolorbox}^\textsuperscript{P.12}. The \texttt{/tcb/sidebyside}^\textsuperscript{P.137} option is set to \texttt{true} and the \textit{(left-handed content)} and \textit{(right-handed content)} is filled into the box appropriately. The resulting box is unbreakable. \texttt{\tcbsidebyside} is not only a shortcut for using a normal \texttt{tcolorbox}^\textsuperscript{P.12} with \texttt{/tcb/sidebyside}^\textsuperscript{P.137}, but allows setting further options like \texttt{/tcb/sidebyside adapt}^\textsuperscript{P.144} and \texttt{/tcb/sidebyside switch}^\textsuperscript{P.146}.

\begin{verbatim}
\% \tcbuselibrary{skins}
\% \usepackage{lipsum}
\tcbsidebyside[title=The Triangle,
sidebyside adapt=left,
bicolor,colback=white,colbacklower=yellow!10,
fonttitle=\bfseries,center title,drop lifted shadow,]
{\%
\begin{tikzpicture}
\path[fill=red!20,draw=red!50!black]
(0,0) node[below]{A} -- (3,1) node[right]{B}
-- (1,4) node[above]{C} -- cycle;
\end{tikzpicture}\%
}{\lipsum[1]}
\}
\end{verbatim}

The Triangle
The option allows the left-handed and/or right-handed side to determine the dimensions of the box. This option is only valid inside \texttt{tcb\_sidebyside}\textsuperscript{P.149}. Feasible values for \texttt{\{side\}} are:

- \texttt{none}: no measurement of left-handed and right-handed side.
- \texttt{left}: the actual width of the left-handed content is used to set \texttt{tcb\_lefthand width}\textsuperscript{P.140}.
- \texttt{right}: the actual width of the right-handed content is used to set \texttt{tcb\_righthand width}\textsuperscript{P.140}.
- \texttt{both}: the actual width of the left-handed and right-handed content is used to set \texttt{tcb\_lefthand width}\textsuperscript{P.140}, \texttt{tcb\_righthand width}\textsuperscript{P.140}, and the overall \texttt{tcb\_width}\textsuperscript{P.40}.

\%
\begin{tabular}{|l|c|r|}
\hline
left & center & right \\
A & B & C \\
D & E & F \\
\hline
\end{tabular}
\%

This table contains the most important figures for all future actions. You may notice that B follows A, C follows B, and so on.

\%
\begin{tikzpicture}
\path[fill=yellow,draw=yellow!75!red] (0,0) circle (1cm);
\fill[red] (45:5mm) circle (1mm);
\fill[red] (135:5mm) circle (1mm);
\draw[line width=1mm,red] (215:5mm) arc (215:325:5mm);
\end{tikzpicture}
\%

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>left</th>
<th>center</th>
<th>right</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>E</td>
<td>F</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Both sides adapted
If set to \texttt{true}, the \textit{(left-handed content)} and \textit{(right-handed content)} of \texttt{\tcb@sidebyside} are switched. Obviously, this option is only valid inside \texttt{\tcb@sidebyside}.

The side switching can be made even/odd page sensitive, if used inside \texttt{\tcb@if odd page}.

\begin{verbatim}
% \tcblibrary{skins}
\tcb@sidebyside\{Left\}{Right}
\tcb@sidebyside\{sidebyside switch\}{Left}{Right}
\tcb@sidebyside[title=Very important table, 
if odd page={sidebyside switch,sidebyside adapt=right,flushright title}]% 
{sidebyside adapt=left, 
beamer,colframe=blue!50!black,colback=blue!10, 
lower separated=false,sidebyside gap=5mm} 
\begin{tabular}{|l|c|r|}
\hline
left & center & right \\
\hline
A & B & C \\
D & E & F \\
\hline
\end{tabular}
\end{verbatim}

This table contains the most important figures for all future actions. You may notice that B follows A, C follows B, and so on.
7 Saving and Loading of Verbatim Texts

The following macros are slightly modified versions of the original macros from the known packages `moreverb` and `verbatim`. They are used implicitly inside of a `tcolorbox` environment, but they can be used outside also.

\begin{tcbverbatimwrite}{⟨file name⟩}
⟨environment content⟩
\end{tcbverbatimwrite}

Saves the ⟨environment content⟩ to a file named by ⟨file name⟩. TeX macros inside the environment are not expanded.

\begin{tcbverbatimwrite}{\jobname_verbexp.tex}
This text is saved \textit{as is}.
\end{tcbverbatimwrite}

Now, we are using the file:
\input{\jobname_verbexp.tex}

This environment may be used inside an own environment. Note, that inside the environment definition \texttt{tcbverbatimwrite} has to be used instead of \texttt{begin{tcbverbatimwrite}} and \texttt{end{tcbverbatimwrite}} instead of \texttt{end{tcbverbatimwrite}}.

\begin{tcbverbatimwrite}{\jobname_myverb.tex}
This is the text which is saved by my own environment.
\end{tcbverbatimwrite}

Now, we are using the file:
\input{\jobname_myverb.tex}

\begin{tcbwritetemp}
⟨environment content⟩
\end{tcbwritetemp}

Has the same function as \texttt{tcbverbatimwrite}, but uses the key value of \texttt{tempfile} for the file name.

\begin{tcbwritetemp}
This text is saved \textit{as is}.
\end{tcbwritetemp}

Now, we are using the file:
\input{\jobname_myverb.tex}

\newenvironment{myverbatim}{%
\begingroup\tcbverbatimwrite{\jobname_myverb.tex}}%  \end{myverbatim}
\begin{myverbatim}
This is the text which is saved by my own environment.
\end{myverbatim}

Now, we are using the file:
\input{\jobname_myverb.tex}

\tcbusetemp

Loads the current temporary file which was saved by \texttt{tcbwritetemp}.
If this option is set to be true, the percent sign % is silently ignored for \verb|tcbverbatimwrite| and all macros and environments which are built using \verb|tcbverbatimwrite|, e.g. \verb|tcbwritetemp|, \verb|tcblisting|, or \verb|dispExample|.

This option may be useful for creating some special effects, but mainly it is intended to be applied for documentation with DocStrip. The creation of this option was motivated by Yudai Nakata. Note that this option is not getting reset by \verb|/tcb/reset|.

Normal usage:
\begin{tcbwritetemp}
\%\begin{center}\bfseries
This is my text.
\%\end{center}
\end{tcbwritetemp}
\tcbusetemp
\tcbset{verbatim ignore percent}
\bigskip Option applied:
\begin{tcbwritetemp}
\%\begin{center}\bfseries
This is my text.
\%\end{center}
\end{tcbwritetemp}
\tcbusetemp

Normal usage:
This is my text.

Option applied:
This is my text.

Note that every percent sign is removed, also escaped ones.

\begin{tcblisting}{title=Normal}
\%\begin{center}\bfseries
This is my text and this is my text.
\%\end{center}
\end{tcblisting}

\begin{tcblisting}{title=Option applied, verbatim ignore percent}
\begin{center}\bfseries
This is my text and this is my text.
\end{center}
\end{tcblisting}
If this option is set to be **true**, spaces and tabs before `\end{tcbverbatimwrite}` on the same line are ignored. The same is true for all environments based on `tcbverbatimwrite` \(^\text{P.147}\). If anything else precedes `\end{tcbverbatimwrite}` on the same line, the complete content is written.

If this option is set to be **false**, everything preceding `\end{tcbverbatimwrite}` is written. This was the default behavior before version 6.0.0.

The idea of `/tcb/verbatim ignore indention at end` is that the environment can be indented. The creation of this option was inspired by Yukai Chou.

```latex
\begin{tcblisting}{listing engine=minted, listing only, verbatim ignore indention at end=false}
  \begin{minted}{c}
    int a;
  \end{minted}
\end{tcblisting}

\begin{tcblisting}{listing engine=minted, listing only, verbatim ignore indention at end=false}
  int a;
  int b;
\end{tcblisting}

\begin{tcblisting}{listing engine=minted, listing only, verbatim ignore indention at end=true}
  \begin{minted}{c}
    int a;
  \end{minted}
\end{tcblisting}

\begin{tcblisting}{listing engine=minted, listing only, verbatim ignore indention at end=true}
  int a;
  int b;
\end{tcblisting}
```

verbatim ignore indention at end=false

```
int a;
```

```verbatim ignore indention at end=false```

```
int a;
int b;
```

verbatim ignore indention at end=true

```
int a;
```

```verbatim ignore indention at end=true```

```
int a;
int b;
```
8 Recording

The package provides some macros and options to take records during compilation. This is done by \LaTeX file operations to save some data to a file for later usage. The main application scenario is depicted in Section 8.3 on the next page where information about example solutions is recorded and read again in Section 8.4 on page 154.

8.1 Macros

\texttt{\textbackslash tcbstartrecording}\texttt{[(file name)]}

Opens a file denoted by \texttt{(file name)} for writing the records. The default file name is \texttt{\jobname.records}. See Section 8.3 on the next page for an example application.

\texttt{\textbackslash tcbrecord}\texttt{\{⟨content⟩\}}

Records any \texttt{⟨content⟩} to the record file. \texttt{\tcbrecord} is implemented as \texttt{\immediate\write}. \texttt{\tcbstartrecording} has to be called before; otherwise, \texttt{\tcbrecord} is silently ignored.

\texttt{\textbackslash tcbstoprecording}

Closes the current record file which was opened by \texttt{\tcbstartrecording} before.

\texttt{\textbackslash tcbinputrecords}\texttt{[(file name)]}

Opens a file denoted by \texttt{(file name)} for reading the records via \texttt{\input}. The default file name is the name of the last used record file for saving. \texttt{\tcbstoprecording} has to be called before.

8.2 Options

\texttt{/tcb/record\=\langle content⟩} (style, no default)

Records any \texttt{⟨content⟩} to the record file, see \texttt{\tcbrecord}. This key can be used several times to write several lines.

\texttt{/tcb/no recording}

Disables \texttt{\tcbrecord} and \texttt{/tcb/record} inside the current group.
8.3 Example: Exercises

The following application example creates exercises and their corresponding solutions. Each pair is generated inside a single \texttt{tcolorbox} where the solution is given below \texttt{tcblower}. For every example, the solution part is saved by \texttt{/tcb/savelowerto} to a file. The saving is recorded using \texttt{/tcb/record} to a file. To enlighten the possibilities, the second exercise has no solution. Finally, the solutions are input in Section 8.4 on page 154.

\begin{exercise}
\small
Compute the derivative of the following function:
\begin{equation*}
f(x) = \sin((\sin x)^2)
\end{equation*}
\end{exercise}

\begin{align*}
f'(x) &= \left( \sin((\sin x)^2) \right)' \\
&= \cos((\sin x)^2) 2 \sin x \cos x.
\end{align*}
\begin{exercise}[no solution]
It holds:
\begin{equation*}
\frac{d}{dx}(\ln|x|) = \frac{1}{x}.
\end{equation*}
\end{exercise}

\begin{exercise}
Compute the derivative of the following function:
\begin{equation*}
f(x) = (\sin(\sin x))^{2}
\end{equation*}
\tcblower
The derivative is:
\begin{align*}
f'(x) &= (\sin(\sin x))^{2}' \\
&= \left( \sin(\sin x) \right) \cos(\sin x) \cos x.
\end{align*}
\end{exercise}

\begin{exercise}
Compute the derivative of the following function:
\begin{equation*}
f(x) = \sqrt{x^3-6x^2+2x}
\end{equation*}
\tcblower
The derivative is:
\begin{align*}
f'(x) &= \left( \sqrt{x^3-6x^2+2x} \right)' \\
&= \frac{3x^2-12x+2}{2\sqrt{x^3-6x^2+2x}}.
\end{align*}
\end{exercise}

\begin{exercise}
Compute the derivative of the following function:
\begin{equation*}
f(x) = \left( \frac{2+3x}{1-2x} \right)^3
\end{equation*}
\tcblower
The derivative is:
\begin{align*}
f'(x) &= \left( \left( \frac{2+3x}{1-2x} \right)^3 \right)' \\
&= 3 \left( \frac{2+3x}{1-2x} \right)^2 \left( \frac{(1-2x)3-(2+3x)(-2)}{(1-2x)^2} \right) \\
&= \frac{21(2+3x)^2}{(1-2x)^4}.
\end{align*}
\end{exercise}

\begin{exercise}
Compute the derivative of the following function:
\begin{equation*}
f(x) = \frac{\cos x}{(\tan 2x)^2}
\end{equation*}
\tcblower
The derivative is:
\begin{align*}
f'(x) &= \frac{\cos x (\cos 2x)^2}{(\sin 2x)^4} \\
&= -\frac{\cos(2x) \left[\sin x \sin 2x \cos 2x + 4 \cos x \right]}{(\sin 2x)^3}.
\end{align*}
\end{exercise}
\begin{exercise}
Compute the derivative of the following function:
\begin{equation*}
f(x) = \cos((2x^2+3)^3)
\end{equation*}
\end{exercise}

\texttt{tcblower}

The derivative is:
\begin{align*}
f'(x) &= \left( \cos((2x^2+3)^3) \right)' \\
&= -\sin((2x^2+3)^3) 3(2x^2+3)^2 2 \cdot 2x \\
&= -12x(2x^2+3)^2 \sin((2x^2+3)^3).
\end{align*}

\begin{exercise}
Compute the derivative of the following function:
\begin{equation*}
f(x) = (x^2+1)\sqrt{x^4+1}
\end{equation*}
\end{exercise}

\texttt{tcblower}

The derivative is:
\begin{align*}
f'(x) &= \left( (x^2+1)\sqrt{x^4+1} \right)' \\
&= 2x\sqrt{x^4+1} + \frac{2x^3(x^2+1)}{\sqrt{x^4+1}}.
\end{align*}

\begin{exercise}
Compute the derivative of the following function:
\begin{equation*}
f(x) = \sin((\sin x)^2)
\end{equation*}
\end{exercise}

Solution on page 154

\begin{exercise}
It holds:
\[ \frac{d}{dx}(\ln x) = \frac{1}{x} \]
\end{exercise}

\begin{exercise}
Compute the derivative of the following function:
\begin{equation*}
f(x) = (\sin(\sin x))^2
\end{equation*}
\end{exercise}

Solution on page 154

\begin{exercise}
Compute the derivative of the following function:
\[ f(x) = \sqrt{x^3 - 6x^2 + 2x} \]
\end{exercise}

Solution on page 154
Exercise 8.5: Compute the derivative of the following function:

\[ f(x) = \left( \frac{2 + 3x}{1 - 2x} \right)^3 \]

Solution on page 155

Exercise 8.6: Compute the derivative of the following function:

\[ f(x) = \frac{\cos x}{(\tan 2x)^2} \]

Solution on page 155

Exercise 8.7: Compute the derivative of the following function:

\[ f(x) = \cos((2x^2 + 3)^3) \]

Solution on page 155

Exercise 8.8: Compute the derivative of the following function:

\[ f(x) = (x^2 + 1)\sqrt{x^4 + 1} \]

Solution on page 155

8.4 Example: Solutions

This concludes the example given in Section 8.3 on page 151. Now, the saved and recorded solutions are included.

\texttt{\textbackslash tcbinputrecords}

\textbf{Solution of Exercise 8.1 on page 153:}
The derivative is:

\[ f'(x) = \left( \sin((\sin x)^2) \right)' = \cos((\sin x)^2)2\sin x \cos x. \]

\textbf{Solution of Exercise 8.3 on page 153:}
The derivative is:

\[ f'(x) = \left( (\sin x)^2 \right)' = 2\sin(x) \cos(x) \cos x. \]

\textbf{Solution of Exercise 8.4 on page 153:}
The derivative is:

\[ f'(x) = \left( \sqrt{x^3 - 6x^2 + 2x} \right)' = \frac{3x^2 - 12x + 2}{2\sqrt{x^3 - 6x^2 + 2x}}. \]
Solution of Exercise 8.5 on page 154:
The derivative is:
\[ f'(x) = \left( \frac{2 + 3x}{1 - 2x} \right)^3 = 3 \left( \frac{2 + 3x}{1 - 2x} \right)^2 \frac{(1 - 2x)3 - (2 + 3x)(2)}{(1 - 2x)^2} = \frac{21(2 + 3x)^2}{(1 - 2x)^4}. \]

Solution of Exercise 8.6 on page 154:
The derivative is:
\[ f'(x) = \frac{\cos x}{(\tan 2x)^2} = \frac{\cos x(\cos 2x)^2}{(\sin 2x)^2} = \frac{(\sin 2x)^2(-\sin x)(\cos 2x)^2 + (\cos x)4\cos x(-\sin 2x)}{(\sin 2x)^4} - \cos x(\cos 2x)^24\sin 2x\cos 2x = \frac{-\cos(2x)\sin x\sin 2x\cos 2x + 4\cos x(\sin 2x)^2 + 4\cos x(\cos 2x)^2}{(\sin 2x)^3} = \frac{-\cos(2x)[\sin x\sin 2x\cos 2x + 4\cos x]}{(\sin 2x)^3}. \]

Solution of Exercise 8.7 on page 154:
The derivative is:
\[ f'(x) = \left( \cos((2x^2 + 3)^3) \right)' = -\sin(2x^2 + 3)^3 \cdot 3(2x^2 + 3)^22x = -12x(2x^2 + 3)^2\sin((2x^2 + 3)^3). \]

Solution of Exercise 8.8 on page 154:
The derivative is:
\[ f'(x) = \left( (x^2 + 1)\sqrt{x^2 + 1} \right)' = 2x\sqrt{x^2 + 1} + \frac{2x^3(x^2 + 1)}{\sqrt{x^2 + 1}}. \]
9 Technical Overview and Customization

This section provides a technical overview of the skin concept of \texttt{tcolorbox}. For most applications of \texttt{tcolorbox}, one will not need to know the bells and whistles described herein. You may proceed to Section 10 on page 171 where the customization options for most users are documented.

The following explanations also cover options and settings from the \texttt{\skins} library, see Section 10 on page 171.

9.1 Skins and Drawing Engines

From a technical point of view, a \textit{skin} is a style definition for the appearance of a \texttt{tcolorbox}. The core package provides some additional option keys for skins but only two skins called \texttt{standard}\footnote{P.231} and \texttt{standard\ jigsaw}\footnote{P.232}. The \texttt{\skins} library adds several more skins. To change to a skin, only one option from the core package has to be set.

\texttt{/tcb/skin=\langle name\rangle} \hspace{1cm} \text{(style, no default, initially \texttt{standard})}

Sets the current skin to \langle name\rangle. This is a style definition which sets all the following keys, i.e. for many use cases there is nothing more to do.

\begin{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[\texttt{breakable},\texttt{adjusted title=My title}]
This is my content.
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{tcolorbox}

\texttt{/tcb/skin\ first=\langle name\rangle} \hspace{1cm} \text{(style, no default, initially \texttt{standard})}

If the box is set to be \texttt{/tcb/breakable}\footnote{P.403} and \texttt{is} broken actually, then the skin for the \texttt{first} part of the break sequence is set to \langle name\rangle, see Subsection 19.8 on page 417. Typically, this key is set by a \texttt{/tcb/skin}.

\texttt{/tcb/skin\ middle=\langle name\rangle} \hspace{1cm} \text{(style, no default, initially \texttt{standard})}

If the box is set to be \texttt{/tcb/breakable}\footnote{P.403} and \texttt{is} broken actually, then the skin for the \texttt{middle} parts (if any) of the break sequence is set to \langle name\rangle, see Subsection 19.8 on page 417. Typically, this key is set by a \texttt{/tcb/skin}.

\texttt{/tcb/skin\ last=\langle name\rangle} \hspace{1cm} \text{(style, no default, initially \texttt{standard})}

If the box is set to be \texttt{/tcb/breakable}\footnote{P.403} and \texttt{is} broken actually, then the skin for the \texttt{last} part of the break sequence is set to \langle name\rangle, see Subsection 19.8 on page 417. Typically, this key is set by a \texttt{/tcb/skin}. 

156
\texttt{/tcb/graphical\ environment = \langle name \rangle} \quad \text{(no default, initially \texttt{pgfpicture})}

Sets the graphical environment for the \texttt{tcolorbox} to \langle name \rangle. Feasible values are \texttt{pgfpicture} and \texttt{tikzpicture} or environments which inherit from one of these two. This key is set by a \texttt{/tcb/skin \rightarrow P.156} and may seldom be used directly.

The skin of a \texttt{tcolorbox} is drawn by up to four \textit{engines}. Afterwards, the text content is drawn which is not part of a skin. The four steps are:

1. The \textit{frame} of the box, drawn by \texttt{/tcb/frame engine}.
2. The \textit{interior} of the box. The interior of a box with title is drawn differently from a box without title. \texttt{/tcb/interior titled engine} or \texttt{/tcb/interior engine} \texttt{\rightarrow P.158} is used to draw the interior.
3. The \textit{segmentation} (line) of the box, if there is a lower part; drawn by \texttt{/tcb/segmentation engine} \texttt{\rightarrow P.158}.
4. The \textit{title area} of the box, if there is a title and \texttt{/tcb/title filled \rightarrow P.33} is set to \texttt{true}; drawn by \texttt{/tcb/title engine} \texttt{\rightarrow P.158}.

\texttt{/tcb/frame engine = \langle name \rangle} \quad \text{(no default, initially \texttt{standard})}

Sets the \textit{frame} drawing engine for a box to \langle name \rangle. Typically, this key is set by a \texttt{/tcb/skin \rightarrow P.156}. Feasible values for \langle name \rangle are:
- \texttt{standard}: the original code from the core package,
- \texttt{path}: a \texttt{tikz} path which is controlled by \texttt{/tcb/frame style \rightarrow P.171},
- \texttt{pathjigsaw}: a \texttt{tikz} path which is controlled by \texttt{/tcb/frame style \rightarrow P.171},
- \texttt{pathfirst}: a \texttt{tikz} path which is controlled by \texttt{/tcb/frame style \rightarrow P.171},
- \texttt{pathfirstjigsaw}: a \texttt{tikz} path which is controlled by \texttt{/tcb/frame style \rightarrow P.171},
- \texttt{pathmiddle}: a \texttt{tikz} path which is controlled by \texttt{/tcb/frame style \rightarrow P.171},
- \texttt{pathmiddlejigsaw}: a \texttt{tikz} path which is controlled by \texttt{/tcb/frame style \rightarrow P.171},
- \texttt{pathlast}: a \texttt{tikz} path which is controlled by \texttt{/tcb/frame style \rightarrow P.171},
- \texttt{pathlastjigsaw}: a \texttt{tikz} path which is controlled by \texttt{/tcb/frame style \rightarrow P.171},
- \texttt{freelance}: deprecated.
- \texttt{spartan}: a quite spartan code.
- \texttt{empty}: draw nothing.

\texttt{/tcb/interior titled engine = \langle name \rangle} \quad \text{(no default, initially \texttt{standard})}

Sets the \textit{interior} drawing engine for a titled box to \langle name \rangle. Typically, this key is set by a \texttt{/tcb/skin \rightarrow P.156}. Feasible values for \langle name \rangle are:
- \texttt{standard}: the original code from the core package,
- \texttt{path}: a \texttt{tikz} path which is controlled by \texttt{/tcb/interior style \rightarrow P.172},
- \texttt{pathfirst}: a \texttt{tikz} path which is controlled by \texttt{/tcb/interior style \rightarrow P.172},
- \texttt{pathmiddle}: a \texttt{tikz} path which is controlled by \texttt{/tcb/interior style \rightarrow P.172},
- \texttt{pathlast}: a \texttt{tikz} path which is controlled by \texttt{/tcb/interior style \rightarrow P.172},
- \texttt{freelance}: deprecated.
- \texttt{spartan}: a quite spartan code.
- \texttt{empty}: draw nothing.
/tcb/interior engine=(name)  (no default, initially standard)

Sets the interior drawing engine for an untitled box to (name). Typically, this key is set by a /tcb/skin *P.156. Feasible values for (name) are:
- **standard**: the original code from the core package,
- **path**: a tikz path which is controlled by /tcb/interior style *P.172,
- **pathfirst**: a tikz path which is controlled by /tcb/interior style *P.172,
- **pathmiddle**: a tikz path which is controlled by /tcb/interior style *P.172,
- **pathlast**: a tikz path which is controlled by /tcb/interior style *P.172,
- **freelance**: deprecated.
- **spartan**: a quite spartan code.
- **empty**: draw nothing.

/tcb/segmentation engine=(name)  (no default, initially standard)

Sets the segmentation (line) drawing engine for a box to (name). Typically, this key is set by a /tcb/skin *P.156. Feasible values for (name) are:
- **standard**: the original code from the core package,
- **path**: a tikz path which is controlled by /tcb/segmentation style *P.174,
- **freelance**: deprecated.
- **spartan**: a quite spartan code.
- **empty**: draw nothing.

/tcb/title engine=(name)  (no default, initially standard)

Sets the title area drawing engine for a titled box to (name). Typically, this key is set by a /tcb/skin *P.156. Feasible values for (name) are:
- **standard**: the original code from the core package,
- **path**: a tikz path which is controlled by /tcb/title style *P.174,
- **pathfirst**: a tikz path which is controlled by /tcb/title style *P.174,
- **pathmiddle**: a tikz path which is controlled by /tcb/title style *P.174,
- **pathlast**: a tikz path which is controlled by /tcb/title style *P.174,
- **freelance**: deprecated.
- **spartan**: a quite spartan code.
- **empty**: draw nothing.

After an engine is set to an initializing value, the resulting graphical code can be changed using code option keys, see Section 9.2 on page 160.
/tcb/geometry nodes=true|false (default true, initially false)

If set to true, up to four tikz nodes are defined for a tcolorbox which are named frame, interior, segmentation, and title. These nodes describe the boundaries of the equally named parts of a tcolorbox. They are used by most engines based on TikZ. Typically, this key is set automatically by a /tcb/skin.\textsuperscript{P.156}

\tcbset{colback=Salmon!50!white,colframe=FireBrick!75!black, width=(\linewidth-8mm)/2, before=, after=\hfill, equal height group=geon}

\begin{tcolorbox}[adjusted title=The title]
The upper part. \tcblower The lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,adjusted title=The title, frame code={\path[draw=red,fill=red!25] (frame.south west) rectangle (frame.north east);}, interior titled code={\path[draw=blue,fill=blue!25] (interior.south west) rectangle (interior.north east);}, segmentation code={\path[draw=green,fill=green!25] (segmentation.south west) rectangle (segmentation.north east);}, title code={\path[draw=black,fill=brown!75!black] (title.south west) rectangle (title.north east);}]
The upper part. \tcblower The lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}
9.2 Code Option Keys

The following code options are applicable for all skins. The used \textit{(graphical code)} can be any \texttt{pgf} code. For all skins with exception of \texttt{standard}\footnote{P.231} and \texttt{standard jigsaw}\footnote{P.232}, the \texttt{(graphical code)} can also be any \texttt{TikZ} code.

\texttt{/tcb/frame code=⟨graphical code⟩} (code, default from \texttt{standard})

The given \texttt{(graphical code)} is used for drawing the \textit{frame} of the box.

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,frame code={\foreach \n in {north east,north west,south east,south west}
{\path [fill=red!75!black] (interior.\n) circle (3mm); }}]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\tcblower
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}

\texttt{/tcb/frame empty} (style, no value)

This is a shortcut for setting \texttt{/tcb/frame code} to empty. This option removes the drawing of the frame. Alternatively, use \texttt{/tcb/frame hidden}\footnote{P.172}.

\texttt{/tcb/interior titled code=⟨graphical code⟩} (code, default from \texttt{standard})

The given \texttt{(graphical code)} is used for drawing the \textit{interior} of the box, if the box comes with a title.

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,title=My title,interior titled code={\path[draw=red!5!white,line width=5mm,line cap=round]
(\xshift=-3mm,\yshift=3mm)interior.north west
(\xshift=-3mm,\yshift=-3mm)interior.south east
(\xshift=3mm,\yshift=3mm)interior.south west
(\xshift=-3mm,\yshift=-3mm)interior.north east};]}
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\tcblower
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}

\texttt{/tcb/interior titled empty} (style, no value)

This is a shortcut for setting \texttt{/tcb/interior titled code} to empty. This option removes the drawing of the untitled interior. Alternatively, use \texttt{/tcb/interior hidden}\footnote{P.173}.
/tcb/interior code=(graphical code)  (code, default from standard)

The given \(\text{graphical code}\) is used for drawing the \textit{interior} of the box, if the box is without a title.

```
\begin{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcbraster}
\checkmark This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcbraster}
\tcblower
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

//tcb/interior empty  (style, no value)

This is a shortcut for setting /tcb/interior code to empty. This option removes the drawing of the interior. Alternatively, use /tcb/interior hidden → P.175.

/tcb/segmentation code=(graphical code)  (code, default from standard)

The given \(\text{graphical code}\) is used for drawing the \textit{segmentation} area of the box.

```
\begin{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcbraster}
\checkmark My title This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcbraster}
\tcblower
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

//tcb/segmentation empty  (style, no value)

This is a shortcut for setting /tcb/segmentation code to empty. This option removes the drawing of the segmentation line. Alternatively, use /tcb/segmentation hidden → P.174.
\texttt{/tcb/title code=(graphical code)} \hspace{1cm} (code, default from \texttt{standard})

The given \texttt{(graphical code)} is used for drawing the \textit{title} area of the box.

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,title=My title,title code={
\path[draw=yellow,solid,decorate,line width=2mm, 
  decoration={coil,aspect=0,segment length=10.1mm}] 
  ([xshift=1mm]title.west) -- ([xshift=-1mm]title.east);}]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

This is the lower part.

\texttt{/tcb/title empty} \hspace{1cm} (style, no value)

This is a shortcut for setting \texttt{/tcb/title code} to empty. This option removes the drawing of the title area. Alternatively, use \texttt{/tcb/title hidden}. \textsuperscript{P.175}
9.3 Subskins

A subskin is a new \texttt{/tcb/skin\textsuperscript{P.156}} based on an existing skin which is extended or changed.

Never use geometry settings or bounding box options inside a subskin definition! If one skin is replaced by another skin, the overall bounding box should stay constant. Especially, if a skin is used for a breakable box, unpredictable and unpleasant results could arise otherwise. If you want to change the geometry also, use an additional style. See the skin \texttt{beamer\textsuperscript{P.260}} and the style \texttt{/tcb/beamer\textsuperscript{P.260}} as pattern.

\begin{verbatim}
\tcbsubskin{(name)}{(base skin)}{(options)}
\end{verbatim}

Creates a new skin \texttt{(name)} which inherits all properties of an existing \texttt{(base skin)} plus the given \texttt{(options)}. The new skin \texttt{(name)} can be used as value for the keys \texttt{/tcb/skin\textsuperscript{P.156}}, \texttt{/tcb/skin first\textsuperscript{P.156}}, \texttt{/tcb/skin middle\textsuperscript{P.156}}, and \texttt{/tcb/skin last\textsuperscript{P.156}}. As \texttt{(base skin)}, one can take \texttt{standard\textsuperscript{P.231}}, \texttt{empty\textsuperscript{P.267}}, \texttt{enhanced\textsuperscript{P.233}}, or any skin from the \texttt{skins} library, see Section 10 on page 171.

\begin{verbatim}
\% \tcbsuselibrary{skins}
\tcbsubskin{mycross}{empty}{frame code={%
  \draw[red,line width=5pt] (frame.south west)--(frame.north east);
  \draw[red,line width=5pt] (frame.north west)--(frame.south east);},
  skin first=mycross,skin middle=mycross,skin last=mycross }
\begin{tcolorbox}[skin=mycross]
  This is my content.
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{verbatim}

\texttt{/tcb/skin first is subskin of=}\texttt{(base skin)}\texttt{\{(options\}}} (no default, initially unset)

Creates a new unnamed skin which inherits all properties of an existing \texttt{(base skin)} plus the given \texttt{(options)}. This skin is set as \texttt{/tcb/skin first\textsuperscript{P.156}}.

See a detailed example on page 273.

\texttt{/tcb/skin middle is subskin of=}\texttt{(base skin)}\texttt{\{(options\}}} (no default, initially unset)

Creates a new unnamed skin which inherits all properties of an existing \texttt{(base skin)} plus the given \texttt{(options)}. This skin is set as \texttt{/tcb/skin middle\textsuperscript{P.156}}.

See a detailed example on page 273.

\texttt{/tcb/skin last is subskin of=}\texttt{(base skin)}\texttt{\{(options\}}} (no default, initially unset)

Creates a new unnamed skin which inherits all properties of an existing \texttt{(base skin)} plus the given \texttt{(options)}. This skin is set as \texttt{/tcb/skin last\textsuperscript{P.156}}.

See a detailed example on page 273.
9.4 Drawing Scheme

Depending on the complexity of a \texttt{tcolorbox} definition, the resulting box is drawn in a more or less complex series of steps.

To document and demonstrate these drawing steps, we consider the following box definition:

\begin{verbatim}
\newtcolorbox{testbox}[1]\{enhanced,title=Test Box, boxrule=1mm,titlerule=0.5mm,colframe=blue!50!black, interior style={top color=blue!20!green!50!white,bottom color=blue!20!yellow!50!white}, colbacktitle=blue!50!green!90!white,segmentation style={solid}, fonttitle=\bfseries,drop fuzzy shadow,borderline={0.3mm}{0.35mm}{yellow!50!white}, underlay={\path[fill image opacity=0.15,fill image scale=0.9, fill stretch picture={\draw[blue,line width=2mm] circle (1);}(interior.south west) rectangle (interior.north east);}, watermark text={Watermark},watermark color={green!20!white}, finish={\begin{tcbclipframe}\path[bottom color=black,top color=black!50!white,opacity=0.1] (frame.south west) -- (frame.south east) -- (frame.north east) -- cycle; \path[top color=white,bottom color=black!50!white,opacity=0.1] (frame.south west) -- (frame.north west) -- cycle; \end{tcbclipframe}},#1}
\end{verbatim}

For this definition, we get the maximal number of drawing steps:

1. shadow

- Section 10.6 on page 206.

2. frame

- \texttt{/tcb/colframe} $\rightarrow$ P. 33
- \texttt{/tcb/opacityframe} $\rightarrow$ P. 57
- \texttt{/tcb/frame code} $\rightarrow$ P. 160
- \texttt{/tcb/frame style} $\rightarrow$ P. 171

164


3. interior
- /tcb/colback → P.33, /tcb/opacityback → P.57
- /tcb/interior code → P.161, /tcb/interior titled code → P.160
- /tcb/interior style → P.172

4. title area
- /tcb/colbacktitle → P.33, /tcb/opacitybacktitle → P.57
- /tcb/title code → P.162
- /tcb/title style → P.174

5. segmentation
- /tcb/lower separated → P.31
- /tcb/segmentation code → P.161
- /tcb/segmentation style → P.174
Nam dui ligula, fringilla a, euismod sodales, sollicitudin vel, wisi. Morbi auctor lorem non justo. Nam lacus libero, pretium at, lobortis vitae, ultricies et, tellus. Donec aliquet, tortor sed accumsan bibendum, erat ligula aliquet magna, vitae ornare odio metus a mi.


Lower part

- Section 10.9 on page 221

All together, the box is drawn:

```latex
% \usepackage{lipsum}
\begin{testbox}
\lipsum[2]
\tcblower
Lower part
\end{testbox}
```
9.5 Color Names

Color settings for a \texttt{tcolorbox} are saved into named colors which may be used inside a box, e.g. for an overlay. These color names are

- \texttt{tcbcolframe} set by \texttt{/tcb/colframe} \textsuperscript{P.33} (frame color)
- \texttt{tcbcolback} set by \texttt{/tcb/colback} \textsuperscript{P.33} (background color)
- \texttt{tcbcolbacktitle} set by \texttt{/tcb/colbacktitle} \textsuperscript{P.33} (background color of the title)
- \texttt{tcbcolbacklower} set by \texttt{/tcb/colbacklower} \textsuperscript{P.247} (skin dependend background color of the lower part; needs \texttt{skins} to be loaded)
- \texttt{tcbcolupper} set by \texttt{/tcb/colupper} \textsuperscript{P.34} (text color upper part)
- \texttt{tcbcollower} set by \texttt{/tcb/collower} \textsuperscript{P.34} (text color lower part)
- \texttt{tcbcoltitle} set by \texttt{/tcb/coltitle} \textsuperscript{P.34} (text color title)

```latex
\begin{tcolorbox}[title=Color names, colframe=blue!50!black, colback=blue!5, colbacktitle=blue!50, colupper=red!35!black]
\foreach \name in {tcbcolframe, tcbcolback, tcbcolbacktitle, tcbcolbacklower, tcbcolupper, tcbcollower, tcbcoltitle}
{\tikz\path[draw, fill=\name] (0,0) rectangle node[right=4mm, font=\ttfamily]{\name} (0.8,0.8);\par}
\end{tcolorbox}
```

% \tcbbusetlibrary{skins}
\begin{tcolorbox}[title=Color names, colframe=blue!50!black, colback=blue!5, colbacktitle=blue!50, colupper=red!35!black]
\foreach \name in {tcbcolframe, tcbcolback, tcbcolbacktitle, tcbcolbacklower, tcbcolupper, tcbcollower, tcbcoltitle}
{\tikz\path[draw, fill=\name] (0,0) rectangle node[right=4mm, font=\ttfamily]{\name} (0.8,0.8);\par}
\end{tcolorbox}
9.6 Useful Properties

The following macros describe certain properties which may be used for the drawing scheme, see Section 9.4 on page 164. Sometimes, they are even available inside the box content. All of them are considered to be read-only and should never be redefined by the user.

\tcbheightspace

If the height of a tcolorbox is not the natural height, the space difference between the forced and the natural size is hold by \tcbheightspace. This macro is not usable inside the box content, but for skins or inside /tcb/underlay \textsuperscript{P.219}, /tcb/overlay \textsuperscript{P.82}, etc. If such a space information is needed inside the box content, see /tcb/space to \textsuperscript{P.65} instead.

\begin{tcolorbox}
\begin{verbatim}
% \tcbuselibrary{skins}
\newtcolorbox{testbox}[2][]{enhanced,size=fbox,  
  colframe=blue!75!black,colback=white,height=#2,  
  underlay={\node[above,inner sep=3pt] at (interior.south){  
    \includegraphics[width=\tcbtextwidth,height=\tcbheightspace-3pt]{goldshade.png};  
}},  
#1}
\begin{testbox}{3cm}
  This is my box. The space is filled with a picture.  
\end{testbox}
\begin{testbox}{2cm}
  This is my box. The space is filled with a picture.  
\end{testbox}
\end{verbatim}
\end{tcolorbox}

This is my box. The space is filled with a picture.

This is my box. The space is filled with a picture.

\tcbtextwidth

This property describes the box content width.

- If there also is a lower part, it describes the width of the upper part.
- For /tcb/sidebyside \textsuperscript{P.137} boxes, it describes the combined text width plus segmentation.
- This property can be used inside the box content text with exception of /tcb/fit \textsuperscript{P.457} boxes.
- \tcbtextwidth can be used for all box types for skins or inside /tcb/underlay \textsuperscript{P.219}, /tcb/overlay \textsuperscript{P.82}, etc.

\begin{tcolorbox}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{tcolorbox}[colframe=blue!75!black]
  Inside a box: \tcbtextwidth (\textsuperscript{=}the\/linewidth).  
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{verbatim}
\end{tcolorbox}

Inside a box: 370.74823pt (\textsuperscript{=}370.74823pt).

169
This property describes the designated box content height. If the box is larger than the natural height, the actual content will be smaller than `\tcbtextheight`.

- For boxes with a fixed `/tcb/height` \textsuperscript{\textsuperscript{P.59}}, this property can be used inside the box content text. For other boxes, it denotes \textit{0pt} inside the box content.
- `\tcbtextheight` can be used for all box types for skins or inside `/tcb/underlay` \textsuperscript{\textsuperscript{P.219}}, `/tcb/overlay` \textsuperscript{\textsuperscript{P.82}}, etc.

\begin{tcolorbox}
[enhanced,colframe=blue!75!black,
underlay={\node[left,red] at (frame.east) {Here: \tcbtextheight};}]
Inside a box with natural height: \tcbtextheight.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}
[enhanced,colframe=blue!75!black,height=1cm,
underlay={\node[left,red] at (frame.east) {Here: \tcbtextheight};}]
Inside a box with fixed height: \tcbtextheight.
\end{tcolorbox}

\subsubsection*{\texttt{\tcbsegmentstate}}

This macro contains 0, 1, or 2. It is set for every unbroken box and every broken partial box with the following meaning:

- \textbf{0}: The current (partial) box contains only an upper part.
- \textbf{1}: The current (partial) box contains an upper and a lower part. The segmentation node can be used for positioning.
- \textbf{2}: The current (partial) box contains only a lower part. This can only be true for parts of breakable boxes.

Skins like \texttt{bicolor} \textsuperscript{\textsuperscript{\textsuperscript{\textsuperscript{P.245}}}} use this property to paint the (partial) boxes.
The library is loaded by a package option or inside the preamble by:

\tcbuselibrary{skins}

This also loads the package tikz\textsuperscript{[23]}. Typically but not necessarily, the following skins use tikz instead of pgf.

In the following, general settings and options of the library are documented. The actual catalog of skins is found in Section 11 on page 229.

10.1 Style Option Keys

The following style options are applicable for all skins which use engines of type\texttt{path, pathfirst, pathmiddle, or pathlast}. Especially, the skin\texttt{enhanced}\textsuperscript{P.23}\textsuperscript{3} supports\texttt{all} of them and\texttt{standard}\textsuperscript{P.23}\textsuperscript{1}\texttt{none}.

\texttt{/tcb/frame style=\{tikz keys\}} \hspace{1cm} \text{(style, no default)}

The\texttt{tikz keys} are used inside the\texttt{tikz} path command for drawing the\texttt{frame} of the box. This option is available if the\texttt{/tcb/frame engine}\textsuperscript{P.157} is set to\texttt{path, pathfirst, pathmiddle, or pathlast}. It is\texttt{not} available for\texttt{standard}.

\begin{tcolorbox}
\tcbset{colback=red!5!white,fonttitle=\bfseries}
\begin{tcbox}[enhanced,title=My title, frame style={left color=red!75!black, right color=blue!75!black}]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\tcblower
This is the lower part.
\end{tcbox}
\end{tcolorbox}

\texttt{/tcb/frame style image=\{file name\}} \hspace{1cm} \text{(no default, initially unset)}

Fills the frame with an external image referenced by\texttt{\{file name\}}.
\texttt{/tcb/frame style tile=\{\textit{graphics options}\}\{\textit{file name}\}} (no default, initially unset)

Fills the frame with a tile pattern based on an external image referenced by \textit{file name}. The \textit{graphics options} are given to the underlying \texttt{\includegraphics} command.

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,title=My title, frame style tile={width=1cm}{pink_marble.png}]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\tcblower
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}

\texttt{/tcb/frame hidden} (style, no value)

This is a shortcut for \texttt{frame style=\{draw=none, fill=none\}}. Depending on the skin, this option switches off the drawing of the frame. Alternatively, use \texttt{/tcb/frame empty} \textsuperscript{P.160}.

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,title=My title, frame hidden]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\tcblower
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}

\texttt{/tcb/interior style=\{\textit{tikz keys}\}} (style, no default)

The \textit{tikz keys} are used inside the \texttt{tikz} path command for drawing the \textit{interior} of the box. They are used for the titled and for the untitled version as well. This option is available if the \texttt{/tcb/interior titled engine} \textsuperscript{P.157} or \texttt{/tcb/interior engine} \textsuperscript{P.158} is set to \texttt{path, pathfirst, pathmiddle, or pathlast}. It is not available for standard.

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,title=My title, interior style={left color=red!20!white, right color=yellow!50!white}]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\tcblower
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}
/tcb/interior style image=(file name)  (no default, initially unset)
Fills the interior with an external image referenced by \textit{(file name)}.

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,title=My title,interior style image=goldshade.png]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\tcblower
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,title=My title,interior style image=crinklepaper.png]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\tcblower
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}

/tcb/interior style tile=(\textit{graphics options})\{\textit{file name}\}  (no default, initially unset)
Fills the interior with a tile pattern based on an external image referenced by \textit{(file name)}. The \textit{(graphics options)} are given to the underlying \texttt{includegraphics} command.

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,title=My title,interior style tile={width=2cm}{crinklepaper.png}]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\tcblower
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}

/tcb/interior hidden  (style, no value)
This is a shortcut for \texttt{interior style=\{draw=none,fill=none\}}. Depending on the skin, this option switches off the drawing of the interior. Alternatively, use /tcb/interior empty \textsuperscript{P.161} and/or /tcb/interior titled empty \textsuperscript{P.160}.

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,title=My title,interior hidden]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\tcblower
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}
/tcb/segmentation style={tikz keys} (style, no default)

The (tikz keys) are used inside the tikz path command for drawing the segmentation line of the box.
This option is available if the /tcb/segmentation engine → P.158 is set to path. It is not available for standard.

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,title=My title,
  segmentation style={double=white,draw=blue,
  double distance=1pt,solid}]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\tcblower
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}

My title
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
This is the lower part.

/tcb/segmentation hidden (style, no value)

This is a shortcut for segmentation style={draw=none,fill=none}. Depending on the skin, this option switches off the drawing of the segmentation line. See also /tcb/lower separated → P.31 which has the same effect for most skins. Alternatively, use /tcb/segmentation empty → P.161.

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,segmentation hidden]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\tcblower
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}

My title
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
This is the lower part.

/tcb/title style={tikz keys} (style, no default)

The (tikz keys) are used inside the tikz path command for drawing the title area of the box.
This option is available if the /tcb/title engine → P.158 is set to path, pathfirst, pathmiddle, or pathlast. It is not available for standard.

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,title=My title,
  title style={left color=blue!15!yellow,
  right color=red!85!black}]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\tcblower
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}

My title
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
This is the lower part.

174
/tcb/title style image=(file name)  
(no default, initially unset)
Fills the title area with an external image referenced by (file name).

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,title=My title, title style image=blueshade.png]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\tcblower
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}

My title
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
This is the lower part.

/tcb/title style tile=\{(graphics options)\}{\langle file name \rangle}  
(no default, initially unset)
Fills the title area with a tile pattern based on an external image referenced by \langle file name \rangle. The \langle graphics options \rangle are given to the underlying \texttt{includegraphics} command.

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,title=My title, title style tile=width=1cm\{pink_marble.png\}]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\tcblower
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}

My title
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
This is the lower part.

/tcb/title hidden  
(style, no value)
This is a shortcut for title style={\texttt{draw=none,fill=none}}. Depending on the skin, this option switches off the drawing of the title background. See also /tcb/title filled → P.33 for a similar effect. Alternatively, use /tcb/title empty → P.162.

\begin{tcolorbox}[title=My title, enhanced,title hidden]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\tcblower
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}

My title
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
This is the lower part.
The \texttt{(tikz keys)} are used to draw a title rule, i.e. a rule below the optional title. The width of the rule is controlled by \texttt{/tcb/titlerule} \textsuperscript{P.42}. It may be set directly to a smaller width to create mixed effects with the standard rule. This option is implemented as an \texttt{/tcb/underlay} \textsuperscript{P.219}. Thus, it is not available for \texttt{standard} \textsuperscript{P.231} and \texttt{standard jigsaw} \textsuperscript{P.232}, but for all other skins, e.g. \texttt{enhanced} \textsuperscript{P.233}. As an underlay, this option can be used multiple times and is removed by \texttt{/tcb/no underlay} \textsuperscript{P.219}. 

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,  
  colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,  
  colbacktitle=red!50!yellow,fonttitle=\bfseries,  
  title=My title,  
  titlerule=1mm,  
  titlerule style=yellow ]  
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.  
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,  
  colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,  
  colbacktitle=red!50!yellow,fonttitle=\bfseries,  
  title=My title,  
  titlerule=1mm,  
  titlerule style={yellow,line width=0.5mm} ]  
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.  
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,  
  colback=red!10!white,colframe=red!75!black,  
  colbacktitle=red!50!yellow,fonttitle=\bfseries,  
  box_rule=0pt,titlerule=1mm,  
  titlerule style=red!50!black ]  
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.  
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[empty,  
  coltitle=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries,  
  borderline horizontal={0.5mm}{0pt}{red!50!white},  
  title=My title,  
  titlerule style={red,  
  arrows = {Hooks[arc=270]-Hooks[arc=270]}} ]  
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.  
\end{tcolorbox}
The combined Ti\textit{k}Z style applied to frame, interior, and title background can be used by authors in customizing code.

\texttt{/tikz/tcb fill frame} \hspace{1em} (style, no value)

This is a Ti\textit{k}Z style which is finally applied to the \textit{frame} of the box.

\begin{tcolorbox}
\[title=My title\]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\tcblower
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}

\texttt{/tikz/tcb fill interior} \hspace{1em} (style, no value)

This is a Ti\textit{k}Z style which is finally applied to the \textit{interior} of the box.

\begin{tcolorbox}
\[title=My title\]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\tcblower
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}

\texttt{/tikz/tcb fill title} \hspace{1em} (style, no value)

This is a Ti\textit{k}Z style which is finally applied to the \textit{title area} of the box.

\begin{tcolorbox}
\[title=My title\]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\tcblower
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}
10.2 Boxed Title Option Keys

10.2.1 Boxed Title Placement

The following options place the title text into an own `\textbf{boxed title}`. This boxed title can be customized independently from the main box using `\textbf{boxed title style}`. The placement can be influenced by \textbf{boxed title options}.

`/tcb/attach boxed title to top left=\{\textbf{boxed title options}\}` (style, default empty)

The title is boxed with a `\textbf{boxed title}` and attached to the top left corner of the main box.

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,title=My title, 
attach boxed title to top left] 
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}. 
\end{tcolorbox}
```

```
My title
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
```

`/tcb/attach boxed title to top text left=\{\textbf{boxed title options}\}` (style, default empty)

The title is boxed with a `\textbf{boxed title}` and attached to the top left corner of the main box and shifted to match title text and box text.

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,title=My title, 
attach boxed title to top text left] 
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}. 
\end{tcolorbox}
```

```
My title
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
```

`/tcb/attach boxed title to top center=\{\textbf{boxed title options}\}` (style, default empty)

The title is boxed with a `\textbf{boxed title}` and attached to the top of the main box.

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,title=My title, 
attach boxed title to top center] 
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}. 
\end{tcolorbox}
```

```
My title
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
```

`/tcb/attach boxed title to top text right=\{\textbf{boxed title options}\}` (style, default empty)

The title is boxed with a `\textbf{boxed title}` and attached to the top right corner of the main box and shifted to match title text and box text.

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,title=My title, 
align=right, 
attach boxed title to top text right] 
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}. 
\end{tcolorbox}
```

```
My title
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
```

`/tcb/attach boxed title to top right=\{\textbf{boxed title options}\}` (style, default empty)

The title is boxed with a `\textbf{boxed title}` and attached to the top right corner of the main box.

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,title=My title, 
attach boxed title to top right] 
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}. 
\end{tcolorbox}
```

```
My title
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
```
The title is boxed with a `\tcbox` and attached to the bottom left corner of the main box.

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,title=My title, attach boxed title to bottom left] This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.

My title

The title is boxed with a `\tcbox` and attached to the bottom left corner of the main box and shifted to match title text and box text. Note that this matches the upper part, even, if there is a lower part.

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,title=My title, attach boxed title to bottom text left] This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.

My title

The title is boxed with a `\tcbox` and attached to the bottom of the main box.

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,title=My title, attach boxed title to bottom center] This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.

My title

The title is boxed with a `\tcbox` and attached to the bottom right corner of the main box and shifted to match title text and box text. Note that this matches the upper part, even, if there is a lower part.

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,title=My title, halign=right, attach boxed title to bottom text right] This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.

My title

The title is boxed with a `\tcbox` and attached to the bottom right corner of the main box.

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,title=My title, attach boxed title to bottom right] This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.

My title
This is a convenient style to mimic a standard title. It uses \texttt{/tcb/attach boxed title to top} \footnote{P.178}, \texttt{/tcb/minipage boxed title} \footnote{P.187}, and sizes the boxed title to match the base box.

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,title=My title,attach boxed title to top,boxed title style={colframe=red}] This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

In contrast to \texttt{/tcb/attach boxed title to top}, this style uses smaller left and right rules to avoid previewer glitches. Typically, one would not use different colors for the frame as in the example below.

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,title=My title,attach boxed title to top*,boxed title style={colframe=red}] This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

This is a convenient style to produce a standard-like title at the bottom of the box. It uses \texttt{/tcb/attach boxed title to bottom} \footnote{P.179}, \texttt{/tcb/minipage boxed title} \footnote{P.187}, and sizes the boxed title to match the base box.

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,title=My title,attach boxed title to bottom,boxed title style={colframe=red}] This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

In contrast to \texttt{/tcb/attach boxed title to top}, this style uses smaller left and right rules to avoid previewer glitches.

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,title=My title,attach boxed title to bottom*] This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

This style combines \texttt{/tcb/attach boxed title to bottom*} with \texttt{/tcb/boxed title style} \footnote{P.183}. The \texttt{\{options\}} are given to \texttt{/tcb/boxed title style} \footnote{P.183}.

\begin{tcolorbox}[tile,flip title={sharp corners},title=My title,colback=red!10, colbacktitle=red!75!black] This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
10.2.2 Options for the Boxed Title Placement

The \textit{boxtitle options} of the keys described above are shift values. The dimensions of the boxed title are stored into two macros \texttt{\textbackslash tcbboxedtitleheight} and \texttt{\textbackslash tcbboxedtitlewidth}. These macros can be used inside the following \textit{boxtitle options}:

\begin{verbatim}
/tcb/boxtitle/xshift=(length) (no default, initially 0pt)
The boxed title is shifted by \textit{(length)} in the horizontal direction.

\begin{tcolorbox}
[enhanced,title=My title, attach boxed title to top left={xshift=-2mm}, boxed title style={size=small,colback=blue}]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{verbatim}

\begin{verbatim}
/tcb/boxtitle/yshift=(length) (no default, initially 0pt)
The boxed title is shifted by \textit{(length)} in the vertical direction.

\begin{tcolorbox}
[enhanced,title=My title, attach boxed title to top center={yshift=-\texttt{tcbboxedtitleheight}/2}, boxed title style={size=small,colback=blue}]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{verbatim}

\begin{verbatim}
/tcb/boxtitle/yshifttext=(length) (no default, initially 0pt)
The text inside the main box is shifted by \textit{(length)} to give room for e.g. a sunken title.

\begin{tcolorbox}
[enhanced,title=My title, attach boxed title to top center={yshift=-3mm,yshifttext=-1mm}, boxed title style={size=small,colback=blue}]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{verbatim}

\begin{verbatim}
/tcb/boxtitle/yshift*= (length) (no default, initially 0pt)
Sets \texttt{/tcb/boxtitle/yshift} and \texttt{/tcb/boxtitle/yshifttext} the same time. 
\texttt{/tcb/boxtitle/yshifttext} is only set if necessary.

\begin{tcolorbox}
[enhanced,title=My title, attach boxed title to top center={yshift*=-3mm}, boxed title style={size=small,colback=blue}]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{verbatim}

The bounding box of the resulting total \texttt{tcolorbox} is adapted automatically to the \textit{vertical} dimensions of the boxed title. Possible horizontal enlargements are \textit{not} automatically computed.
10.2.3 Options for the Boxed Title Box

The boxed title options are implemented as an underlay, see Section 10.8 on page 219. Therefore, a boxed title is not drawn, if a skin does not support underlays like standard. Still, the room for the boxed titles gets reserved in these cases.

A TikZ node title is produced by a boxed title which can be used inside /tcb/frame code, /tcb/interior code, underlays, overlays, and finishes.

A boxed title is almost always the first underlay. The only exceptions are underlays defined by /tcb/underlay boxed title which are drawn before. Additionally, underlays defined by /tcb/underlay boxed title are only drawn, if a boxed title is actually set. They are ignored, if there is no boxed title.

\begin{tcbraster}[raster columns=3,enhanced,boxrule=0.4pt,tcbboxed title size=title]
  \begin{tcolorbox}[boxed title size=title]
    This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
  \end{tcolorbox}
  \begin{tcolorbox}[boxed title size=standard]
    This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
  \end{tcolorbox}
  \begin{tcolorbox}[boxed title size=copy]
    This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
  \end{tcolorbox}
\end{tcbraster}

\begin{footnotesize}2016-02-26\end{footnotesize}

\begin{footnotesize}/tcb/boxed title size=(size) (no default, initially title)\end{footnotesize}

This setting defines the basic size for the title box. Further settings can be applied using /tcb/boxed title style. Feasible values for (size) are:

- **title**: Sets the size according to /tcb/size=\textit{title}.
- **standard**: No size setting. Typically, this is identical to /tcb/size=\textit{normal}.
- **copy**: The size values for a title of the base box are copied for the title box.

% \tcbuselibrary{raster}
\begin{tcbraster}[raster columns=3,enhanced,boxrule=0.4pt, title=My title,attach boxed title to top center]
  \begin{tcolorbox}[boxed title size=title]
    This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
  \end{tcolorbox}
  \begin{tcolorbox}[boxed title size=standard]
    This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
  \end{tcolorbox}
  \begin{tcolorbox}[boxed title size=copy]
    This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
  \end{tcolorbox}
\end{tcbraster}

My title
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.

My title
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.

My title
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
By default, a boxed title is dimensioned with \texttt{/tcb/size=\textsuperscript{P.50}title} and inherits the \texttt{/tcb/skin=\textsuperscript{P.156}} and \texttt{/tcb/colframe=\textsuperscript{P.33}} of the main box. Also, the \texttt{/tcb/colback=\textsuperscript{P.33}} is inherited from the main \texttt{/tcb/colbacktitle=\textsuperscript{P.33}}. Font and color of the title text are set as usual. All other \texttt{(options)} are set by the \texttt{/tcb/boxed title style} key. Since a boxed title is set by \texttt{\tcbx{P.14}}, all \texttt{tcolorbox} options are applicable here. If \texttt{/tcb/boxed title style} is used several times, the \texttt{(options)} are appended.

\begin{tcolorbox}
[enhanced,title=My title, fonttitle=\bfseries,coltitle=green!25!black, attach boxed title to top center=\{yshift=-2mm,yshifttext=-1mm\}, boxed title style=\{colframe=green!75!black, colback=yellow!50!green\}]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}
[enhanced,title=My title, colframe=red!50!black,colback=red!10!white, arc=1mm,colbacktitle=red!10!white, fonttitle=\bfseries,coltitle=red!50!black, attach boxed title to top text left=\{yshift=-0.50mm\}, boxed title style=\{skin=enhanced first jigsaw, size=small,arc=1mm,bottom=-1mm, interior style=\{fill=none, top color=red!30!white, bottom color=red!20!white\}\}]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}
[enhanced,title=My title, colframe=blue!50!black,colback=blue!10!white,colbacktitle=blue!5!yellow!10!white, fonttitle=\bfseries,coltitle=black,attach boxed title to top center=\{yshift=0.25mm-\texttt{tcbxboxedtitleheight}/2,yshifttext=2mm-\texttt{tcbxboxedtitleheight}/2\}, boxed title style=\{boxrule=0.5mm, frame code=\{\texttt{\path[tcb fill frame]} ([\xshift=-4mm]\texttt{frame.west}) -- (frame.north west) -- (frame.north east) -- ([\xshift=4mm]\texttt{frame.east}) -- (frame.south east) -- (frame.south west) -- cycle; \}, interior code=\{\texttt{\path[tcb fill interior]} ([\xshift=-2mm]\texttt{interior.west}) -- (interior.north west) -- (interior.north east) -- (interior.south east) -- (interior.south west) -- cycle; \} \}
\lipsum[2]
\end{tcolorbox}

My title


N 2016-02-26 /tcb/no boxed title style
(style, initially set)

Removes all options which were set by /tcb/boxed title style. P.183.
The title text content is captured with a horizontal box. Especially, there are no linebreak possible.

\begin{mybox}{Short title}
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{mybox}

\begin{mybox}{This title is not really very short}
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{mybox}

The title text content is captured with a minipage with a width of \langle length \rangle. By default, the resulting boxed title is somewhat smaller than the main box.

\begin{mybox}{Short title}
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{mybox}

\begin{mybox}{This title is not really very short}
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{mybox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[mybox][1]{minipage boxed title=-2cm, enhanced,attach boxed title to top center=\{yshift=-3mm,yshifttext=-1mm\}, boxed title style=\{size=small,colback=red\}, center title,title=\{#1\}}
\begin{mybox}{Short title}
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{mybox}
\begin{mybox}{This title is not really very short}
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{mybox}
\end{tcolorbox}
The title text content is captured with a TikZ node with given TikZ \texttt{(options)}. The text is centered by default

```latex
\newtcolorbox{mybox}[1]{tikznode boxed title, enhanced,attach boxed title to top center=\{yshift=-3mm,yshifttext=-1mm\}, boxed title style={size=small,colback=red}, title={#1})
\begin{mybox}{Short title}
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{mybox}
\begin{mybox}{This title is not really very short}
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{mybox}
```

The title text content is captured with a \texttt{varwidth} environment with a width of \texttt{(length)}. This style needs the \texttt{varwidth} package \cite{varwidth} to be loaded manually. By default, the resulting boxed title is somewhat smaller than the main box.

```latex
% \usepackage{varwidth}
\newtcolorbox{mybox}[1]{varwidth boxed title, enhanced,attach boxed title to top center=\{yshift=-3mm,yshifttext=-1mm\}, boxed title style={size=small,colback=red}, center title,title={#1}}
\begin{mybox}{Short title}
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{mybox}
\begin{mybox}{This title is not really very short}
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{mybox}
```

The title text content is captured with a \texttt{varwidth} environment with a width of main box width plus \texttt{(length)}. This style needs the \texttt{varwidth} package \cite{varwidth} to be loaded manually. By default, the resulting boxed title is somewhat smaller than the main box.

```latex
% \usepackage{varwidth}
\newtcolorbox{mybox}[1]{varwidth boxed title*=\texttt{(length)}, enhanced,attach boxed title to top center=\{yshift=-3mm,yshifttext=-1mm\}, boxed title style={size=small,colback=red}, center title,title={#1}}
\begin{mybox}{Short title}
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{mybox}
\begin{mybox}{This title is not really very short}
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{mybox}
```
10.3 Watermark Option Keys

The following watermark options are applicable for all skins which use \tikzpicture as \texttt{/tcb/graphical environment} \textsuperscript{P.157}. Therefore, the skin \texttt{standard} \textsuperscript{P.231} does not support these watermarks, but all other skins, e.g. \texttt{enhanced} \textsuperscript{P.233}.

The watermark options rely on the more general overlay options described in Section 4.12 from page 82. Therefore, \textit{watermarks} and \textit{overlays} cannot be used mixed. But a mixture is possible with the \texttt{\\hooks} library, see Section 23.

\texttt{/tcb/watermark text=\langle text\rangle} (no default, initially unset)

Writes some \langle text\rangle in the center of the interior region of a \texttt{tcolorbox}. This \langle text\rangle is written \textit{after} the frame and interior are drawn and \textit{before} the text content is drawn. It is zoomed or stretched according the values of \texttt{/tcb/watermark zoom} \textsuperscript{P.192} or \texttt{/tcb/watermark stretch} \textsuperscript{P.194}.

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,title=My title,watermark text=My Watermark]
\lipsum[1]
\tcblober
\lipsum[2]
\end{tcolorbox}

My Watermark

\texttt{/tcb/watermark text on=(part) is (text)} (no default, initially unset)

This option writes some \langle text\rangle in the center of the interior region of a \texttt{tcolorbox} as described for \texttt{/tcb/watermark text}. But this is done only for boxes named \langle part\rangle of a break sequence, see \texttt{/tcb/breakable} \textsuperscript{P.403}.

Feasible values for \langle part\rangle are:

- \texttt{broken}: all broken box parts,
- \texttt{unbroken}: unbroken boxes only,
- \texttt{first}: first parts of a break sequence,
- \texttt{middle}: middle parts of a break sequence,
- \texttt{last}: last parts of a break sequence,
- \texttt{unbroken and first}: unbroken boxes and first parts of a break sequence,
- \texttt{middle and last}: middle and last parts of a break sequence,
- \texttt{first and middle}: first and middle parts of a break sequence.
/tcb/watermark graphics=(file name) (no default, initially unset)

Draws an external picture referenced by ⟨file name⟩ in the center of the interior region of a tcolorbox. The picture is drawn after the frame and interior are drawn and before the text content is drawn. It is zoomed or stretched according the values of /tcb/watermark zoom \(^\text{P.192}\) or /tcb/watermark stretch \(^\text{P.194}\).

\tcbset{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries}
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,title=My title,watermark graphics=Basilica_5.png,watwatermark opacity=0.15]
\lipsum[1-2]
\tcblower
This example uses a public domain picture from \url{http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Basilica_5.png}
\end{tcolorbox}

\textbf{My title}


This example uses a public domain picture from \url{http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Basilica_5.png}

/tcb/watermark graphics on=(part) is (file name) (no default, initially unset)

This option draws a picture referenced by ⟨file name⟩ in the center of the interior region of a tcolorbox as described for /tcb/watermark graphics. But this is done only for boxes named ⟨part⟩ of a break sequence, see /tcb/breakable \(^\text{P.403}\).

Feasible values for ⟨part⟩ are:
- broken: all broken box parts,
- unbroken: unbroken boxes only,
- first: first parts of a break sequence,
- middle: middle parts of a break sequence,
- last: last parts of a break sequence,
- unbroken and first: unbroken boxes and first parts of a break sequence,
- middle and last: middle and last parts of a break sequence.
/tcb/watermark tikz=(graphical code)  
(no default, initially unset)

Draws the given tikz (graphical code) in the center of the interior region of a tcolorbox. The code is executed after the frame and interior are drawn and before the text content is drawn. The result is zoomed or stretched according the values of /tcb/watermark zoom → P.192 or /tcb/watermark stretch → P.194.

\tcbset{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries}
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,title=My title,watermark tikz={\draw[line width=2mm] circle (1cm) node{\fontfamily{ptm}\fontseries{b}\fontsize{20mm}{20mm}\selectfont ?};}]\lipsum[1]\tcblower\lipsum[2]\end{tcolorbox}

My title


/tcb/watermark tikz on=(part) is (graphical code)  
(no default, initially unset)

This option draws the given tikz (graphical code) in the center of the interior region of a tcolorbox as described for /tcb/watermark tikz. But this is done only for boxes named (part) of a break sequence, see /tcb/breakable → P.403.

Feasible values for (part) are:
- broken: all broken box parts,
- unbroken: unbroken boxes only,
- first: first parts of a break sequence,
- middle: middle parts of a break sequence,
- last: last parts of a break sequence,
- unbroken and first: unbroken boxes and first parts of a break sequence,
- middle and last: middle and last parts of a break sequence.

/tcb/no watermark  
(style, no default, initially set)

Removes the watermark if set before. This is an alias for /tcb/no overlay → P.83.
/tcb/watermark opacity=(fraction)

Sets the opacity value $\in [0,1]$ for a watermark.

\begin{tcolorbox}[title=Opacity 1.00,watermark opacity=1.00]
\lipsum[2]
\end{tcolorbox}
\hfill
\begin{tcolorbox}[title=Opacity 0.50,watermark opacity=0.50]
\lipsum[2]
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tabular}{|p{0.6\linewidth}|p{0.4\linewidth}|}
\hline
\hline
\hline
\end{tabular}

/tcb/watermark zoom=(fraction)

Sets the zoom value for a watermark. The zoom respects the aspect ratio. The value 1.0 means to fill the whole box until the watermark touches the frame.

\begin{tcolorbox}[title=Zoom 1.0,watermark zoom=1.0]
\lipsum[2]
\end{tcolorbox}
\hfill
\begin{tcolorbox}[title=Zoom 0.5,watermark zoom=0.5]
\lipsum[2]
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tabular}{|p{0.6\linewidth}|p{0.4\linewidth}|}
\hline
\hline
\hline
\end{tabular}
Identically to /tcb/watermark zoom \(^{\text{P.192}}\), but the watermark never gets enlarged. Thus, the watermark keeps its original size or is shrunk.

Sets the overzoom value for a watermark. The overzoom respects the aspect ratio. The value 1.0 means to fill the whole box until the watermark touches all four sides of the frame.

\begin{tcolorbox}
\texttt{\tcbset\{enhanced,colback=white,colframe=blue!50!black,fonttitle=\bfseries, watermark opacity=0.5, watermark graphics=lichtspiel.jpg,nobeforeafter,width=(\linewidth-2mm)/2\}}

\begin{verbatim}
\begin{tcolorbox}[title=Zoom 1.0,watermark zoom=1.0]
\lipsum[1]
\end{tcolorbox} 
\begin{tcolorbox}[title=Overzoom 1.0,watermark overzoom=1.0]
\lipsum[1]
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{verbatim}
\end{tcolorbox}

If a /tcb/watermark overzoom value of 1.0 is used in connection with invisible top and bottom rules which still have a thickness greater than \texttt{0pt}, the space of these invisible rules may not be covered by the watermark. For example, this situation may occur during the breaking of /tcb/enhanced \(^{\text{P.233}}\) boxes. To avoid this optical glitch, just set /tcb/pad at break \(^{\text{P.408}}\) to any desired value.
Sets the stretch value for a watermark. The stretch value is applied to width and height in relation to the box dimensions. It does not respect the aspect ratio. The value 1.0 means to fill the whole box.

```
\tcbset{enhanced,colback=white,colframe=blue!50!black,fonttitle=\bfseries,
  watermark graphics=lichtspiel.jpg,watermark opacity=0.5,
  nobeforeafter,width=(\linewidth-2mm)/2}

\begin{tcolorbox}[title=Stretch 1.00,watermark stretch=1.00]
\lipsum[2]
\end{tcolorbox}
\hfill
\begin{tcolorbox}[title=Stretch 0.50,watermark stretch=0.50]
\lipsum[2]
\end{tcolorbox}
```

```
/tcb/watermark color=(color)  (no default, initially mixed background and frame color)

Sets the color for the watermark.

```
\tcbset{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries}

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,title=My title,watermark text=My Watermark,
  watermark color=yellow!50!red]
\lipsum[1]
\end{tcolorbox}
```
Sets the watermark to be clipped to the interior area.

\[\texttt{\texttt{tcb/clip \textbf{watermark}=true|false}}\]

\begin{tcolorbox}[title=Clip (default),\texttt{clip watermark}]
\lipsum[1]
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[title=No clip,\texttt{clip watermark=false}]
\lipsum[1]
\end{tcolorbox}

Removing the clipping should be necessary only in very rare situations. Until version 5.1.1 (2022/06/24), theoretically, the watermark could be extended over the boundaries of the box without limit. Newer versions restrict the watermark to a box scaled 4 times the actual \texttt{tcolorbox}. If you really need to extend further, you are strongly advised to implement this by using \texttt{/tcb/overlay} \texttt{\textsuperscript{P.82}} or \texttt{/tcb/underlay} \texttt{\textsuperscript{P.219}} directly where no restrictions apply. Note that a watermark is just a special \texttt{/tcb/overlay} \texttt{\textsuperscript{P.82}}.
10.4 Clip Environments

The following clip environments are applicable for all skins which use engines of type `path`, `pathfirst`, `pathmiddle`, or `pathlast`. Especially, the skin `enhanced`\textsuperscript{P.233} supports all of them and `standard`\textsuperscript{P.231} none. The typical area of application is inside overlay code, see Section 4.12 from page 82.

\begin{tcbclipframe}
\begin{environment content}
\end{tcbclipframe}

Defines a Tikz scope which clips to the frame area path.

\begin{picturebox}[title=My Picture Box]{lichtspiel.jpg}
\lipsum[1]
\end{picturebox}
\begin{tcbinvclipframe}
\textit{environment content}
\end{tcbinvclipframe}

Defines a \texttt{Tikz} scope which clips to the \emph{outside} of the frame area path.

\begin{tikzpicture}
% draw two balls
\path [use as bounding box] (0,0.8) rectangle +(0.1,0.1);
\shadedraw [shading=ball] (0,0) circle (1cm);
\shadedraw [ball color=red] (3,-2.2) circle (1cm);
\end{tikzpicture}

\begin{tcolorbox}
[title=A translucent box, overlay={\begin{tcbinvclipframe}
\draw [red, line width=1cm] ([xshift=-2mm,yshift=2mm]frame.north west) --([xshift=2mm,yshift=-2mm]frame.south east);
\draw [red, line width=1cm] ([xshift=-2mm,yshift=-2mm]frame.south west) --([xshift=2mm,yshift=2mm]frame.north east);
\end{tcbinvclipframe}}]
\lipsum[2]
\end{tcolorbox}

A translucent box

\begin{tcbclipinterior}
\begin{environment content}
\end{tcbclipinterior}
\end{environment content}

Defines a Tikz scope which clips to the interior area path.

\begin{tcolorbox}
[enhanced,title=My Title, overlay={
\begin{tcbclipinterior}
\draw[red,line width=1cm] (interior.north west)--(interior.south east);
\draw[red,line width=1cm] (interior.south west)--(interior.north east);
\end{tcbclipinterior}]
\lipsum[1]
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcbcliptitle}
\begin{environment content}
\end{tcbcliptitle}
\end{environment content}

Defines a Tikz scope which clips to the title area path.

\begin{tcolorbox}
[enhanced,title=My Title,colframe=blue,colback=yellow!10!white, overlay={\begin{tcbcliptitle}\node at (title)\{\includegraphics[width=\linewidth]{lichtspiel.jpg}\};\end{tcbcliptitle}}]
\lipsum[1]
\end{tcolorbox}
/tcb/clip title=true|false (default true, initially false)
Sets the title to be clipped to the title area.

\tcbset{enhanced,width=5cm,colframe=red!50!white,coltitle=black,
colbacktitle=yellow!50!white}
\begin{tcolorbox}
[title=\mbox{This is a title which is unbreakable and far too long}]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}
[title=\mbox{This is a title which is unbreakable and far too long},
clip title]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}

This is a title which is unbreakable and far too long
This is a tcolorbox.

This is a title which is unbreakable and far too long
This is a tcolorbox.

/tcb/clip upper=true|false (default true, initially false)
Sets the upper part to be clipped to the interior area.

\newcommand{\mygraphics}[2][]{%
  \tcbox[enhanced,boxsep=0pt,top=0pt,bottom=0pt,left=0pt,
  right=0pt,boxrule=0.4pt,drop fuzzy shadow,clip upper,
  colback=black!75!white,toptitle=2pt,bottomtitle=2pt,nobeforeafter,
  center title,fonttitle=\small\sffamily,title=\detokenize{#2}]{\includegraphics[width=\the\dimexpr\linewidth-4mm)/2\relax]{#2}}%
}\mygraphics{lichtspiel.jpg}\hfill\mygraphics{Basilica_5.png}

\mygraphics{lichtspiel.jpg}
\mygraphics{Basilica_5.png}
The example for /tcb/clip upper*P.199* sizes the box according to the dimensions of the picture. To do it the other way around, the watermark options provide an easy solution.

\newcommand{\mygraphics}[2][]{%
\tcbox[enhanced,capture=minipage,boxsep=0pt,top=0pt,bottom=0pt,left=0pt,
right=0pt,boxrule=0.4pt,drop fuzzy shadow,nobeforeafter,
colback=black!75!white, toptitle=2pt,bottomtitle=2pt,
center title,fonttitle=\small\sfamily,title=\detokenize{#2},
width=(\linewidth-4mm)/2,height=6cm, colbacktitle={black},
watermark zoom=1.0, watermark graphics={#2}]{}\}
\mygraphics{lichtspiel.jpg} \hspace{1em} \mygraphics{Basilica_5.png}

/tcb/clip lower=true|false
(default true, initially false)
Sets the lower part to be clipped to the interior area.

\tcbset{enhanced, width=6cm, colframe=red!50!black, text and listing}
\begin{tcblisting}{}
Donau\-dampf\-schiff\-fahrts\-ka\-pi\-t\"ans\-m\"ut\-zen\-fran\-sen
\end{tcblisting}
\begin{tcblisting}{clip lower}
Donau\-dampf\-schiff\-fahrts\-ka\-pi\-t\"ans\-m\"ut\-zen\-fran\-sen
\end{tcblisting}
10.5 Border Line Option Keys

The following borderline options are applicable for most skins which use \texttt{tikzpicture} as \texttt{/tcb/graphical environment} \sloppycite{P.157}. Therefore, the skin \texttt{standard} \sloppycite{P.231} does not support these border lines, but most other skins, e.g. \texttt{enhanced} \sloppycite{P.233}.

The borderlines are independent from the normal \texttt{tcolorbox} rules. They may be used with or without the \texttt{/tcb/segmentation engine} \sloppycite{P.158}.

The borderlines are stackable, i.e. several different border lines can be used on the same \texttt{tcolorbox}. They are drawn \textit{after} the box frame and box interior and \textit{before} overlays or watermarks.

![Technically, the normal \texttt{tcolorbox} rules result from a TikZ filling process. The border lines are created by a TikZ drawing process. This can be used to apply different effects.]

\texttt{/tcb/borderline=\{(width)\}\{(offset)\}\{(options)\}} \quad \text{(no default, initially unset)}

Adds a new borderline to the stack of border lines. This border line is drawn with the given \texttt{(width)} and gets an \texttt{(offset)} computed from the frame outline. A positive \texttt{(offset)} value moves the borderline inside the \texttt{tcolorbox} and a negative \texttt{(offset)} value moves it outside without changing the bounding box.

The border line is drawn along a TikZ path with the given TikZ \texttt{(options)}. Note that the TikZ \texttt{line width} option should not be used here.

The border lines adapt to the rounded corners of the \texttt{tcolorbox}. An inside borderline will switch to sharp corners if necessary, an outside borderline will always be rounded except for \texttt{/tcb/sharp corners} \sloppycite{P.54}.

\begin{tcolorbox} [enhanced,title=Rounded corners,fonttitle=\bfseries,boxsep=5pt, arc=8pt, borderline={0.5pt}{0pt}{red}, borderline={0.5pt}{5pt}{blue,dotted}, borderline={0.5pt}{-5pt}{green} ] 
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox} 

\begin{tcolorbox} [enhanced,title=Sharp corners,fonttitle=\bfseries,boxsep=5pt, arc=8pt, sharp corners=downhill, borderline={0.5pt}{0pt}{red}, borderline={0.5pt}{5pt}{blue,dotted}, borderline={0.5pt}{-5pt}{green} ] 
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox} 

Rounded corners

This is a tcolorbox.

Sharp corners

This is a tcolorbox.


\begin{mygreenbox}{My title}
\lipsum[4]
\end{mygreenbox}

My title

\texttt{/tcb/no borderline} (no default, initially set)
Removes all borderlines if set before.

\texttt{/tcb/show bounding box}=(\texttt{color}) (default \texttt{red}, initially unset)
Displays the bounding box borderline of a \texttt{tcolorbox}. Its intended use is debugging and fine tuning. It should not be part of a final document. The optional (\texttt{color}) is the base color for the bounding box borderline.

\begin{tcolorbox}[show bounding box,title=Normal]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[show bounding box=blue,title=Shadow,drop fuzzy shadow]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[show bounding box=green,title=Enlarged,drop fuzzy shadow,\
enlarge by=2mm]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}
The following *partial* borderlines act slightly different from the complete borderlines described before. They ignore rounded corner settings, their length is not modified by their ⟨offset⟩, they ignore skin settings but adapt to breakable boxes.

/\texttt{tcb/borderline north}={⟨width⟩}{⟨offset⟩}{⟨options⟩}  (no default, initially unset)

Adds a new borderline with the given ⟨width⟩ to the north of the \texttt{tcolorbox}. A positive ⟨offset⟩ value moves the borderline inside the \texttt{tcolorbox} and a negative ⟨offset⟩ value moves it outside without changing the bounding box.

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,\newline \texttt{borderline north=\{2pt\}{\{-2pt\}}\{red\}}\newline \texttt{This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.} \end{tcolorbox}

/\texttt{tcb/borderline south}={⟨width⟩}{⟨offset⟩}{⟨options⟩}  (no default, initially unset)

Adds a new borderline with the given ⟨width⟩ to the south of the \texttt{tcolorbox}. A positive ⟨offset⟩ value moves the borderline inside the \texttt{tcolorbox} and a negative ⟨offset⟩ value moves it outside without changing the bounding box.

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,\newline \texttt{borderline south=\{2pt\}{\{-2pt\}}\{red\}}\newline \texttt{This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.} \end{tcolorbox}

/\texttt{tcb/borderline east}={⟨width⟩}{⟨offset⟩}{⟨options⟩}  (no default, initially unset)

Adds a new borderline with the given ⟨width⟩ to the east of the \texttt{tcolorbox}. A positive ⟨offset⟩ value moves the borderline inside the \texttt{tcolorbox} and a negative ⟨offset⟩ value moves it outside without changing the bounding box.

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,\newline \texttt{borderline east=\{2pt\}{\{-2pt\}}\{red\}}\newline \texttt{This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.} \end{tcolorbox}

/\texttt{tcb/borderline west}={⟨width⟩}{⟨offset⟩}{⟨options⟩}  (no default, initially unset)

Adds a new borderline with the given ⟨width⟩ to the west of the \texttt{tcolorbox}. A positive ⟨offset⟩ value moves the borderline inside the \texttt{tcolorbox} and a negative ⟨offset⟩ value moves it outside without changing the bounding box.

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,\newline \texttt{borderline west=\{2pt\}{\{-2pt\}}\{red\}}\newline \texttt{This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.} \end{tcolorbox}
/tcb/borderline horizontal=(\width)\langle\text{offset}\rangle\langle\text{options}\rangle  
(no default, initially unset)

Adds a new borderline with the given \textit{width} to the north and south of the \texttt{tcolorbox}. A positive \textit{offset} value moves the borderlines inside the \texttt{tcolorbox} and a negative \textit{offset} value moves them outside without changing the bounding box.

\begin{tcolorbox}[blanker,top=3mm,bottom=3mm,borderline horizontal={2pt}{0pt}{red}]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

/tcb/borderline vertical=(\width)\langle\text{offset}\rangle\langle\text{options}\rangle  
(no default, initially unset)

Adds a new borderline with the given \textit{width} to the east and west of the \texttt{tcolorbox}. A positive \textit{offset} value moves the borderlines inside the \texttt{tcolorbox} and a negative \textit{offset} value moves them outside without changing the bounding box.

\begin{tcolorbox}[blanker,left=3mm,right=3mm,borderline vertical={2pt}{0pt}{red}]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
My second line.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,colback=yellow!10!white,boxrule=0pt,frame hidden,borderline north={1mm}{-2mm}{red},borderline south={1mm}{-2mm}{blue},borderline west={1mm}{-2mm}{green},borderline east={1mm}{-2mm}{yellow}]
\lipsum[1]
\end{tcolorbox}

10.6 Shadow Option Keys

The following shadow options are applicable for most skins which use \texttt{tikzpicture} as \texttt{/tcb/graphical\ environment} \cite{P.157}. Therefore, the skin \texttt{standard} \cite{P.231} does not support these shadows, but most other skins, e.g. \texttt{enhanced} \cite{P.233}.

The shadows are stackable, i.e. several different shadows can be used on the same \texttt{tcolorbox}. They are drawn \textit{before} the box frame is drawn.

\texttt{/tcb/no shadow} \hfill (no default)

Removes all shadows if set before.

10.6.1 Common Shadows and Halos

\texttt{/tcb/drop shadow=(color)} \hfill (style, default \texttt{black!50!white})

Adds a new shadow with standard dimensions to the stack of shadows. Optionally, the \texttt{(color)} for the shadow can be changed.

\begin{verbatim}
\tcbset{enhanced,colback=red!5!white, colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries}
\begin{tcolorbox}[drop shadow] This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{verbatim}

\texttt{Another shadow}

\begin{verbatim}
\tcbset{enhanced,colback=red!5!white, colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries}
\begin{tcolorbox}[title=Another shadow, drop shadow=blue] This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{verbatim}

\texttt{This is a tcolorbox.}

\texttt{Another shadow}

\begin{verbatim}
\tcbset{enhanced,colback=red!5!white, colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries}
\begin{tcolorbox}[drop fuzzy shadow] This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{verbatim}

\texttt{Another shadow}

\begin{verbatim}
\tcbset{enhanced,colback=red!5!white, colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries}
\begin{tcolorbox}[title=Another shadow, drop fuzzy shadow=blue] This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{verbatim}

\texttt{This is a tcolorbox.}

\texttt{Another shadow}

\begin{verbatim}
\tcbset{enhanced,colback=red!5!white, colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries}
\begin{tcolorbox}[drop midday shadow] This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{verbatim}

\texttt{Another shadow}

\begin{verbatim}
\tcbset{enhanced,colback=red!5!white, colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries}
\begin{tcolorbox}[title=Another shadow, drop midday shadow=blue] This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{verbatim}

\texttt{This is a tcolorbox.}
/tcb/drop fuzzy midday shadow=(color) (style, default black!50!white)
Adds a new fuzzy shadow with standard dimensions to the stack of shadows. Optionally, the (color) for the shadow can be changed.

```
\tcbset{enhanced, colback=red!5!white, colframe=red!75!black, fonttitle=\bfseries}
\begin{tcolorbox}[drop fuzzy midday shadow]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

/tcb/halo=(size) with (color) (style, default 0.9mm with yellow)
Adds a new halo shadow with the given (color) which overlaps the colorbox an all sides by (size).

```
\tcbset{enhanced, colback=red!5!white, colframe=red!75!black, fonttitle=\bfseries}
\begin{tcolorbox}[title=My own halo, halo]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

/tcb/fuzzy halo=(size) with (color) (style, default 0.9mm with yellow)
Adds a new fuzzy halo shadow with the given (color) which overlaps the colorbox an all sides by (size) plus 0.48mm.

```
\tcbset{enhanced, colback=red!5!white, colframe=red!75!black, fonttitle=\bfseries}
\begin{tcolorbox}[title=My own halo, fuzzy halo]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

For all following shadows, the optionally given \textit{⟨color⟩} for the shadow can be changed equivalent to the preceding examples.

\texttt{/tcb/drop shadow southeast=⟨color⟩} \hspace{1cm} \text{(style, default black!50!white)}

Adds a new shadow with standard dimensions to the stack of shadows. This shadow is identical to \texttt{/tcb/drop shadow} \textsuperscript{P.206}.

\begin{tcolorbox}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{tcbox}[drop shadow southeast, 
  enhanced,colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black]
  This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcbox}
\end{verbatim}
\end{tcolorbox}

\texttt{/tcb/drop shadow south=⟨color⟩} \hspace{1cm} \text{(style, default black!50!white)}

Adds a new shadow with standard dimensions to the stack of shadows. This shadow is identical to \texttt{/tcb/drop midday shadow} \textsuperscript{P.206}.

\begin{tcolorbox}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{tcbox}[drop shadow south, 
  enhanced,colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black]
  This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcbox}
\end{verbatim}
\end{tcolorbox}

\texttt{/tcb/drop shadow southwest=⟨color⟩} \hspace{1cm} \text{(style, default black!50!white)}

Adds a new shadow with standard dimensions to the stack of shadows.

\begin{tcolorbox}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{tcbox}[drop shadow southwest, 
  enhanced,colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black]
  This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcbox}
\end{verbatim}
\end{tcolorbox}

\texttt{/tcb/drop shadow west=⟨color⟩} \hspace{1cm} \text{(style, default black!50!white)}

Adds a new shadow with standard dimensions to the stack of shadows.

\begin{tcolorbox}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{tcbox}[drop shadow west, 
  enhanced,colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black]
  This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcbox}
\end{verbatim}
\end{tcolorbox}

\texttt{/tcb/drop shadow northwest=⟨color⟩} \hspace{1cm} \text{(style, default black!50!white)}

Adds a new shadow with standard dimensions to the stack of shadows.

\begin{tcolorbox}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{tcbox}[drop shadow northwest, 
  enhanced,colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black]
  This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcbox}
\end{verbatim}
\end{tcolorbox}

\texttt{/tcb/drop shadow north=⟨color⟩} \hspace{1cm} \text{(style, default black!50!white)}

Adds a new shadow with standard dimensions to the stack of shadows.

\begin{tcolorbox}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{tcbox}[drop shadow north, 
  enhanced,colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black]
  This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcbox}
\end{verbatim}
\end{tcolorbox}
/tcb/drop shadow northeast=(color) (style, default black!50!white)
Adds a new shadow with standard dimensions to the stack of shadows.

\begin{tcolorbox}[drop shadow northeast, enhanced,colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}

/tcb/drop shadow east=(color) (style, default black!50!white)
Adds a new shadow with standard dimensions to the stack of shadows.

\begin{tcolorbox}[drop shadow east, enhanced,colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}

/tcb/drop fuzzy shadow southeast=(color) (style, default black!50!white)
Adds a new fuzzy shadow with standard dimensions to the stack of shadows. This shadow is identical to /tcb/drop fuzzy shadow → P.206.

\begin{tcolorbox}[drop fuzzy shadow southeast, enhanced,colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}

/tcb/drop fuzzy shadow south=(color) (style, default black!50!white)
Adds a new fuzzy shadow with standard dimensions to the stack of shadows. This shadow is identical to /tcb/drop fuzzy midday shadow → P.207.

\begin{tcolorbox}[drop fuzzy shadow south, enhanced,colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}

/tcb/drop fuzzy shadow southwest=(color) (style, default black!50!white)
Adds a new fuzzy shadow with standard dimensions to the stack of shadows.

\begin{tcolorbox}[drop fuzzy shadow southwest, enhanced,colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}

/tcb/drop fuzzy shadow west=(color) (style, default black!50!white)
Adds a new fuzzy shadow with standard dimensions to the stack of shadows.

\begin{tcolorbox}[drop fuzzy shadow west, enhanced,colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[drop fuzzy shadow northwest, enhanced, colback=red!5!white, colframe=red!75!black]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}

This is a tcolorbox.

\begin{tcolorbox}[drop fuzzy shadow north, enhanced, colback=red!5!white, colframe=red!75!black]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}

This is a tcolorbox.

\begin{tcolorbox}[drop fuzzy shadow northeast, enhanced, colback=red!5!white, colframe=red!75!black]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}

This is a tcolorbox.

\begin{tcolorbox}[drop fuzzy shadow east, enhanced, colback=red!5!white, colframe=red!75!black]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}

This is a tcolorbox.

/\texttt{tcb/drop fuzzy shadow north}=\texttt{(color)} \quad \text{(style, default black!50!white)}

Adds a new fuzzy shadow with standard dimensions to the stack of shadows.

/\texttt{tcb/drop fuzzy shadow northeast}=\texttt{(color)} \quad \text{(style, default black!50!white)}

Adds a new fuzzy shadow with standard dimensions to the stack of shadows.

/\texttt{tcb/drop fuzzy shadow east}=\texttt{(color)} \quad \text{(style, default black!50!white)}

Adds a new fuzzy shadow with standard dimensions to the stack of shadows.
10.6.2 Lifted Shadows

\(/tc\text{b}/\text{drop lifted shadow}=(color)\) (style, default \text{black!50!white})

Adds a new lifted shadow with standard dimensions to the stack of shadows. Optionally, the \((color)\) for the shadow can be changed.

\t\text{tcset}\{\text{enhanced},\text{colback=red!5!white},\}
\text{boxrule=0.4pt,\text{sharp corners,}}\n\text{colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\textbfseries}\}
\begin{tc\text{colorbox}}\{\text{drop lifted shadow}\}
\text{This is a tcolorbox.}\n\end{tc\text{colorbox}}
\par
\begin{tc\text{colorbox}}\{\text{title=}Another shadow,\}
\text{drop lifted shadow=blue}\}
\text{This is a tcolorbox.}\n\end{tc\text{colorbox}}

\(/tc\text{b}/\text{drop small lifted shadow}=(color)\) (style, default \text{black!50!white})

Adds a new small lifted shadow with standard dimensions to the stack of shadows. Optionally, the \((color)\) for the shadow can be changed.

\t\text{tcset}\{\text{enhanced},\text{colback=red!5!white},\}
\text{boxrule=0.4pt,\text{sharp corners,}}\n\text{colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\textbfseries}\}
\begin{tc\text{box}}\{\text{drop small lifted shadow,\text{size=fbox}}\}
\{\text{This is a tcolorbox.}\}
\par\bigskip
\begin{tc\text{colorbox}}\{\text{title=}Another shadow,\}
\text{drop small lifted shadow=black}\}
\text{This is a tcolorbox.}\n\end{tc\text{colorbox}}

\(/tc\text{b}/\text{drop large lifted shadow}=(color)\) (style, default \text{black!50!white})

Adds a new large lifted shadow with standard dimensions to the stack of shadows. Optionally, the \((color)\) for the shadow can be changed.

\t\text{tcset}\{\text{enhanced},\text{colback=red!5!white},\}
\text{boxrule=0.4pt,\text{sharp corners,}}\n\text{colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\textbfseries}\}
\begin{tc\text{colorbox}}\{\text{drop large lifted shadow}\}
\text{This is a tcolorbox.}\n\end{tc\text{colorbox}}
\par\bigskip
\begin{tc\text{colorbox}}\{\text{title=}Another shadow,\}
\text{drop large lifted shadow=blue}\}
\text{This is a tcolorbox.}\n\end{tc\text{colorbox}}
10.6.3 Generic Shadows

\texttt{/tcb/shadow}=\{\langle xshift\rangle\}\{\langle yshift\rangle\}\{\langle offset\rangle\}\{\langle options\rangle\} (no default)

Adds a new shadow to the stack of shadows. This shadow follows the outline of the \texttt{tcolorbox} but is shifted by \langle xshift\rangle and \langle yshift\rangle. The \langle offset\rangle value is a distance value from the frame outline. A positive \langle offset\rangle value shrinks the shadow and a negative \langle offset\rangle value enlarges the shadow. The shadow is filled along a Ti\kZ path with the given Ti\kZ \langle options\rangle.

The shadows adapt to the rounded corners of the \texttt{tcolorbox}. A shrunked shadow will switch to sharp corners if necessary, an enlarged shadow may become more rounded depending on several factors. But \texttt{/tcb/sharp corners} \rightarrow P.54 have sharp shadows.

Shadows are not considered for the bounding box computation by default. Large shadows may be overlapped by the following content. But, the bounding box can be adapted if necessary.

```latex
\tcbset{enhanced,colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries}
\begin{tcolorbox}[title=My own shadow, shadow={2mm}{-1mm}{0mm}{black!50!white}]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[title=Another shadow, shadow={-1mm}{-2mm}{0mm}{fill=blue, opacity=0.5}]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[title=Double shadow, shadow={-1.5mm}{-1.5mm}{0mm}{fill=blue, opacity=0.25}, shadow={1.5mm}{-1.5mm}{0mm}{fill=red, opacity=0.25}]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[title=Far shadow, shadow={5.5mm}{-3.5mm}{2mm}{fill=black, opacity=0.25}]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[title=Halo shadow, shadow={0mm}{0mm}{-1.5mm}
{fill=yellow!75!red,opacity=0.5}]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}
```
/tcb/fuzzy shadow={(xshift)}{(yshift)}{(offset)}{(step)}{(options)} (no default)

Adds a new fuzzy shadow to the stack of shadows. Actually, this option adds several shadows which appear like a shadow with a fuzzy border. This fuzzy shadow follows the outline of the \texttt{tcolorbox} but is shifted by \texttt{⟨xshift⟩} and \texttt{⟨yshift⟩}. The \texttt{⟨offset⟩} value is a distance value from the frame outline. A positive \texttt{⟨offset⟩} value shrinks the shadow and a negative \texttt{⟨offset⟩} value enlarges the shadow. The \texttt{⟨step⟩} value describes a shrink offset used for the combination of the partial shadows. The shadow is filled along a Ti\texttt{kZ} path with the given Ti\texttt{kZ} \texttt{(options)} but any \texttt{opacity} value will be ignored.

\begin{tcolorbox}
\texttt{\[@\texttt{tcbset}\{\texttt{enhanced},colback=red!5!white,}
\texttt{colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\texttt{\bfseries}\}\@\texttt{begin}\{\texttt{tcolorbox}\}\{\texttt{title=My own shadow,}
\texttt{fuzzy shadow=\{2mm\}{-1mm\}{0mm\}{0.1mm}\}
\texttt{\{black!50!white\}\}\}
This is a tcolorbox.
\texttt{\}@\texttt{end}\{\texttt{tcolorbox}\}\at\texttt{par\bigskip}\texttt{\[@\texttt{begin}\{\texttt{tcolorbox}\}\{\texttt{title=Another shadow,}
\texttt{fuzzy shadow=\{-1mm\}{-2mm\}{0mm\}{0.2mm}\}
\texttt{\{fill=blue\}\}\}
This is a tcolorbox.
\texttt{\}@\texttt{end}\{\texttt{tcolorbox}\}\at\texttt{par\bigskip}\texttt{\[@\texttt{begin}\{\texttt{tcolorbox}\}\{\texttt{title=Double shadow,}
\texttt{fuzzy shadow=\{-1.5mm\}{-1.5mm\}{0mm\}{0.1mm}\}
\texttt{\{blue\},}
\texttt{fuzzy shadow=\{1.5mm\}{-1.5mm\}{0mm\}{0.1mm}\}
\texttt{\{red\}\}\}
This is a tcolorbox.
\texttt{\}@\texttt{end}\{\texttt{tcolorbox}\}\at\texttt{par\bigskip}\texttt{\[@\texttt{begin}\{\texttt{tcolorbox}\}\{\texttt{title=Far shadow,}
\texttt{fuzzy shadow=\{5.5mm\}{-3.5mm\}{0mm\}{0.3mm}\}
\texttt{\{black\}\}\}
This is a tcolorbox.
\texttt{\}@\texttt{end}\{\texttt{tcolorbox}\}\at\texttt{par\bigskip}\texttt{\[@\texttt{begin}\{\texttt{tcolorbox}\}\{\texttt{title=Glow shadow,}
\texttt{fuzzy shadow=\{0mm\}{0mm\}{-1.5mm\}{0.15mm}\}
\texttt{\{yellow!75!red\}\}\}
This is a tcolorbox.
\texttt{\}@\texttt{end}\{\texttt{tcolorbox}\}\end{tcolorbox}
If set to `true`, the shadow drawing algorithm tries to do a somewhat smart calculation of the arc for the shadow. The result is pleasing for typical boxes with rounded corners, but gives strange results for circular boxes.

```latex
\tcbsset{enhanced,nobeforeafter,colback=red!5!white, colframe=red!75!black,width=3cm,square,halign=center,valign=center}
\begin{tcolorbox}[drop shadow]
Smart shadow arc (arguably better than normal)
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[smart shadow arc=false, drop shadow]
Normal shadow arc
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[circular arc, drop shadow]
Smart shadow arc (worse than normal)
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[circular arc, smart shadow arc=false, drop shadow]
Normal shadow arc
\end{tcolorbox}
```

/\texttt{tcblifted shadow}=\{⟨xshift⟩\}{⟨yshift⟩}{⟨bend⟩}{⟨step⟩}{⟨options⟩} \hspace{2cm} (no default)

Adds a new lifted shadow to the stack of shadows. Actually, this option adds several shadows which appear like a shadow with a fuzzy border. This lifted shadow follows the outline of the \texttt{tcolorbox} but is shifted by ⟨xshift⟩ and ⟨yshift⟩ on the lower left corner and by −⟨xshift⟩ and ⟨yshift⟩ on the lower right corner. Additionally, there is a ⟨bend⟩ in the middle. The {⟨step⟩} value describes a shrink offset used for the combination of the partial shadows. The shadow is filled along a Ti\texttt{kZ} path with the given Ti\texttt{kZ} ⟨options⟩ but any \texttt{opacity} value will be ignored.

```latex
\tcbsset{enhanced,colback=red!5!white, boxrule=0.1pt, colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries}
\begin{tcolorbox}[title=My own shadow, lifted shadow={1mm}{-2mm}{3mm}{0.1mm}{black!50!white}]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}
```
10.6.4 **TikZ Shadows**

Alternativ to the package shadow options described before, shadows from the «Shadows Library» of TikZ can be used. Such shadows can be added directly to the frame path using `/tcb/frame style`.

% \usetikzlibrary{shadows} 
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced, 
    colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black, 
    frame style={drop shadow} ]  
This is a tcolorbox.  
\end{tcolorbox} 

% \usetikzlibrary{shadows} 
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,height=3cm, 
    colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black, 
    halign=center,valign=center, 
    frame style={circular drop shadow} ]  
This is a tcolorbox.  
\end{tcolorbox} 

% \usetikzlibrary{shadows} 
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,width=2.5cm, 
    square,circular arc, 
    halign=center,valign=center, 
    colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black, 
    frame style={circular glow={fill=red}} ]  
tcolorbox  
\end{tcolorbox}
10.7 TikZ Picture Option Keys

The following general options are applicable for skins which use `tikzpicture` as `/tcb/graphical environment` "P. 157. Therefore, the skin `standard` "P. 231 does not support these options, but most other skins, e.g. `enhanced` "P. 233.

```
/tcb/tikz={tikz option list} (no default, initially empty)
```

Adds the given `tikz option list` to the main `tikzpicture` environment used to draw the color box, see [23]. If this option is applied a second time, the new `tikz option list` is appended to the current option list.

```
\tcbset{enhanced,colback=red!5!white,
        colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle={bfseries}}
\begin{tcolorbox}[title=Transparent box,
                tikz={opacity=0.5,transparency group}]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

Transparent box
This is a tcolorbox.

```
\tcbset{enhanced,colback=red!5!white,
        colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle={bfseries},
        fontupper={bfseries}\huge,
        halign title=center,halign=center}
\begin{tcolorbox}[title=Rotated box,
                tikz={rotate=30}]
Sold!
\end{tcolorbox}
```

Rotated box
Sold!

```
/tcb/tikz reset (initially set)
```

Removes all options given by `/tcb/tikz`.

```
/tcb/at begin tikz={tikz code} (no default, initially empty)
```

The given `tikz code` is executed at the beginning of the `tikzpicture` environment after the TikZ option `execute at begin picture` was applied. If this option is applied a second time, the new `tikz code` is appended to the current code.

```
/tcb/at begin tikz reset (initially set)
```

Removes all code given by `/tcb/at begin tikz`.

```
/tcb/at end tikz={tikz code} (no default, initially empty)
```

The given `tikz code` is executed at the ending of the `tikzpicture` environment before the TikZ option `execute at end picture` was applied. If this option is applied a second time, the new `tikz code` is appended to the current code.

```
/tcb/at end tikz reset (initially set)
```

Removes all code given by `/tcb/at end tikz`. 

216
/tcb/rotate=⟨angle⟩  (no default, initially unset)
Rotates the tcolorbox by the given ⟨angle⟩. Note that this is a TikZ coordinate transformation i.e. not all graphical elements like shadings will really be rotated.

\begin{tcolorbox}[title=Rotated box,rotate=30]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}

/tcb(scale=⟨fraction⟩)  (no default, initially unset)
Scales the tcolorbox by the given ⟨fraction⟩. Note that this is a TikZ coordinate transformation i.e. not all graphical elements like line widths will really be scaled.

\begin{tcolorbox}[title=Scaled box,scale=0.5]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[title=Scaled box,scale=1.25]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}

/tcb/remember  (style, initially unset)
Shortcut for tikz={remember picture}. This allows one to reference nodes in other TikZ pictures.

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,remember,colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries,title=The four corners of a paper,overlay={\draw[red!50!white,line width=1mm,opacity=0.5,shorten >=3mm]
(frame.north west) edge[->] (current page.north west)
(frame.north east) edge[->] (current page.north east)
(frame.south west) edge[->] (current page.south west)
(frame.south east) edge[->] (current page.south east);}]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}

The four corners of a paper
This is a tcolorbox.
The `frame` node will be remembered by the given \textit{name} to be referenced in other TikZ pictures.

\begin{mybox}[title=First Box,nobeforeafter,width=\linewidth/4,remember as=one]
This is a test.
\end{mybox}

\begin{mybox}[title=Second Box,nobeforeafter,width=\linewidth/4,remember as=two]
This is a test.
\end{mybox}

\begin{mybox}[title=Third Box,nobeforeafter,width=\linewidth/4,remember as=three]
This is a test.
\end{mybox}

\begin{mybox}[title=Fourth Box,remember as=four]
This is a test.
\end{mybox}

\begin{tikzpicture}[overlay,remember picture,line width=1mm,draw=red!75!black]
\draw[->] (one.east) to[bend right] node[above] {A} (two.west);
\draw[->] (two.east) to[bend left] node[above] {B} (three.west);
\draw[->] (three.east) to[bend left=90] node[right] {C} (four.east);
\draw[->] (four.west) to[bend left=90] node[left] {D} (one.west);
\end{tikzpicture}

10.8 Underlay Option Keys

Underlays are quite similar to overlays described in Section 4.12 on page 82. Underlays are drawn \textit{after} the frame and interior are drawn and \textit{before} overlays and the text content is drawn; see Section 9.4 on page 164 for the general drawing scheme.

The differences between underlays and overlays are:

- Underlays are not applicable for the skins \texttt{standard}^{P.231} and \texttt{standard jigsaw}^{P.232}, whereas overlays are applicable also for these skins. The skin \texttt{spartan}^{P.277} supports underlays but no overlays.
  
  \begin{itemize}
  \item If an underlay is used with the \texttt{standard}^{P.231} skin, it is silently ignored.
  \end{itemize}

- Underlays are stackable, i.e. several different underlays can be used on the same \texttt{tcolorbox}. Overlays are not stackable by default (but with some help of the library \texttt{LIB hooks}).

- Boxed titles are implemented with underlays (Section 10.2 on page 178), watermarks are implemented with overlays (Section 10.3 on page 189).

\texttt{/tcb/underlay}=(\textit{graphical code}) (no default, initially unset)

Adds \textit{\{(graphical code)\}} to the box drawing process. This \textit{\{(graphical code)\}} is drawn \textit{after} the frame and interior and \textit{before} the text content.

\begin{verbatim}
\newtcolorbox{mybox}[1][]{enhanced, colback=red!5!white, colbacktitle=red!85!black!50!white, colframe=red!75!black, fonttitle=\bfseries, watermark color=yellow!50!white, underlay={\begin{tcbclipinterior}
\draw[red!40!white,line width=1cm] (interior.south west)--(interior.north east);
\end{tcbclipinterior}}, attach boxed title to top center={yshift=-2mm},#1}

\begin{mybox}[title=My box, watermark text=My Watermark]
\lipsum[2]
\end{mybox}
\end{verbatim}

\texttt{/tcb/no underlay} (style, no default, initially set)

Removes the underlay if set before.
/tcb/underlay broken=(graphical code) (no default, initially unset)

If the box is set to be /tcb/breakable → P.403 and is broken actually, then the (graphical code) is added to the box drawing process. /tcb/underlay → P.219 overwrites this key.

/tcb/underlay unbroken=(graphical code) (no default, initially unset)

If the box is set to be /tcb/breakable → P.403 but is not broken actually or if the box is set to be /tcb/unbreakable → P.404, then the (graphical code) is added to the box drawing process. /tcb/underlay → P.219 overwrites this key.

/tcb/no underlay unbroken (style, no default, initially set)

Removes the unbroken underlay if set before.

/tcb/underlay first=(graphical code) (no default, initially unset)

If the box is set to be /tcb/breakable → P.403 and is broken actually, then the (graphical code) is added to the box drawing process for the first part of the break sequence. /tcb/underlay → P.219 overwrites this key.

/tcb/no underlay first (style, no default, initially set)

Removes the first underlay if set before.

/tcb/underlay middle=(graphical code) (no default, initially unset)

If the box is set to be /tcb/breakable → P.403 and is broken actually, then the (graphical code) is added to the box drawing process for the middle parts (if any) of the break sequence. /tcb/underlay → P.219 overwrites this key.

/tcb/no underlay middle (style, no default, initially set)

Removes the middle underlay if set before.

/tcb/underlay last=(graphical code) (no default, initially unset)

If the box is set to be /tcb/breakable → P.403 and is broken actually, then the (graphical code) is added to the box drawing process for the last part of the break sequence. /tcb/underlay → P.219 overwrites this key.

/tcb/no underlay last (style, no default, initially set)

Removes the last underlay if set before.

/tcb/underlay boxed title=(graphical code) (no default, initially unset)

If the box has a boxed title, see Section 10.2 on page 178, then the (graphical code) is added to the box drawing process before the boxed title is drawn.

/tcb/no underlay boxed title (style, no default, initially set)

Removes the boxed title underlay if set before.

/tcb/underlay unbroken and first=(graphical code) (no default, initially unset)

This is an abbreviation for setting /tcb/underlay unbroken and /tcb/underlay first together. /tcb/underlay → P.219 overwrites this key.

/tcb/underlay middle and last=(graphical code) (no default, initially unset)

This is an abbreviation for setting /tcb/underlay middle and /tcb/underlay last together. /tcb/underlay → P.219 overwrites this key.

/tcb/underlay unbroken and last=(graphical code) (no default, initially unset)

This is an abbreviation for setting /tcb/underlay unbroken and /tcb/underlay last together. /tcb/underlay → P.219 overwrites this key.

/tcb/underlay first and middle=(graphical code) (no default, initially unset)

This is an abbreviation for setting /tcb/underlay first and /tcb/underlay middle together. /tcb/underlay → P.219 overwrites this key.
10.9 Finish Option Keys

Finishes are quite similar to underlays described in Section 10.8 on page 219 and overlays described in Section 4.12 on page 82. Finishes are drawn after the text content is drawn; see Section 9.4 on page 164 for the general drawing scheme. Therefore, a finish will reduce the readability of the text content.

Finishes are intended for special effects like highlights or glosses or text over text.

- Finishes are only applicable for the skins enhanced\textsuperscript{P. 233}, empty\textsuperscript{P. 267}, freelance\textsuperscript{P. 280}, bicolor\textsuperscript{P. 245}, beamer\textsuperscript{P. 260}, and widget\textsuperscript{P. 264}.

\begin{itemize}
\item If a finish is used with the standard\textsuperscript{P. 231} skin, it is silently ignored.
\end{itemize}

- Finishes are stackable, i.e. several different finishes can be used on the same \texttt{tcolorbox}.

\texttt{/tcb/finish=\langle\texttt{graphical\ code}\rangle} (no default, initially unset)

Adds \langle\texttt{graphical\ code}\rangle to the box drawing process. This \langle\texttt{graphical\ code}\rangle is drawn after the text content.

\begin{verbatim}
\newtcolorbox{mybox}[1][]{enhanced,colback=red!5!white,
colbacktitle=red!85!black!50!white,colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries,
finish={\begin{tcbclipframe}
\path[bottom color=black,top color=black!50!white,opacity=0.1]
(frame.south west) -- (frame.south east) -- (frame.north east) -- cycle;
\path[top color=white,bottom color=black!50!white,opacity=0.1]
(frame.south west) -- (frame.north east) -- (frame.north west) -- cycle;
\end{tcbclipframe}},#1}
\begin{mybox}[title=My box]
\lipsum[2]
\end{mybox}
\end{verbatim}

\begin{verbatim}
\newtcolorbox{mybox}[1][]{enhanced,colback=red!5!white,
colbacktitle=red!85!black!50!white,colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries,
finish={\node[draw,fill=white,fill opacity=0.85,inner sep=5mm,rounded corners] at (frame.center) {\Huge\bfseries Finish!};},#1}
\begin{mybox}[title=My box]
\lipsum[2]
\end{mybox}
\end{verbatim}
/tcb/no finish (style, no default, initially set)

Removes the finish if set before.

/tcb/finish broken=(graphical code) (no default, initially unset)

If the box is set to be /tcb/breakable \textsuperscript{P.403} and is broken actually, then the (graphical code) is added to the box drawing process. /tcb/finish \textsuperscript{P.221} overwrites this key.

/tcb/finish unbroken=(graphical code) (no default, initially unset)

If the box is set to be /tcb/breakable \textsuperscript{P.403} but is not broken actually or if the box is set to be /tcb/unbreakable \textsuperscript{P.404}, then the (graphical code) is added to the box drawing process. /tcb/finish \textsuperscript{P.221} overwrites this key.

/tcb/no finish unbroken (style, no default, initially set)

Removes the unbroken finish if set before.

/tcb/finish first=(graphical code) (no default, initially unset)

If the box is set to be /tcb/breakable \textsuperscript{P.403} and is broken actually, then the (graphical code) is added to the box drawing process for the first part of the break sequence. /tcb/finish \textsuperscript{P.221} overwrites this key.

/tcb/no finish first (style, no default, initially set)

Removes the first finish if set before.

/tcb/finish middle=(graphical code) (no default, initially unset)

If the box is set to be /tcb/breakable \textsuperscript{P.403} and is broken actually, then the (graphical code) is added to the box drawing process for the middle parts (if any) of the break sequence. /tcb/finish \textsuperscript{P.221} overwrites this key.

/tcb/no finish middle (style, no default, initially set)

Removes the middle finish if set before.

/tcb/finish last=(graphical code) (no default, initially unset)

If the box is set to be /tcb/breakable \textsuperscript{P.403} and is broken actually, then the (graphical code) is added to the box drawing process for the last part of the break sequence. /tcb/finish \textsuperscript{P.221} overwrites this key.

/tcb/no finish last (style, no default, initially set)

Removes the last finish if set before.

/tcb/finish unbroken and first=(graphical code) (no default, initially unset)

This is an abbreviation for setting /tcb/finish unbroken and /tcb/finish first together. /tcb/finish \textsuperscript{P.221} overwrites this key.

/tcb/finish middle and last=(graphical code) (no default, initially unset)

This is an abbreviation for setting /tcb/finish middle and /tcb/finish last together. /tcb/finish \textsuperscript{P.221} overwrites this key.

/tcb/finish unbroken and last=(graphical code) (no default, initially unset)

This is an abbreviation for setting /tcb/finish unbroken and /tcb/finish last together. /tcb/finish \textsuperscript{P.221} overwrites this key.

/tcb/finish first and middle=(graphical code) (no default, initially unset)

This is an abbreviation for setting /tcb/finish first and /tcb/finish middle together. /tcb/finish \textsuperscript{P.221} overwrites this key.
10.10 Hyper Option Keys

All options of this section need the package \texttt{hyperref} \cite{hyperref} to be loaded separately. All these options are implemented as \texttt{/tcb/finish} \footnote{\texttt{P.221}} and can be disabled by \texttt{/tcb/no finish} \footnote{\texttt{P.222}}.

\begin{table}[h]
\centering
\begin{tabular}{|l|}
\hline
\textbf{Option} & Description \\
\hline
\texttt{/tcb/hyperref} & (no default, initially unset) \texttt{\langle marker \rangle} \\
& The whole frame of a \texttt{tcolorbox} is make an active hyperlink for a \texttt{\langle marker \rangle} which was given by \texttt{\label} or \texttt{/tcb/label} \footnote{\texttt{P.113}} or \texttt{/tcb/phantomlabel} \footnote{\texttt{P.113}}. Such, the \texttt{tcolorbox} is made a clickable button (depending on the previewer). \\
\hline
\texttt{/tcb/hyperref interior} & (no default, initially unset) \texttt{\langle marker \rangle} \\
& Identical to \texttt{/tcb/hyperref}, but only the interior of a \texttt{tcolorbox} is made a hyperlink (without frame and title). \\
\hline
\texttt{/tcb/hyperref title} & (no default, initially unset) \texttt{\langle marker \rangle} \\
& Identical to \texttt{/tcb/hyperref}, but only the title of a \texttt{tcolorbox} is made a hyperlink. \\
\hline
\texttt{/tcb/hyperref node} & (no default, initially unset) \texttt{\langle marker \rangle\{\langle node \rangle\}} \\
& Identical to \texttt{/tcb/hyperref}, but only the given \TeX\ \langle node \rangle is made a hyperlink. This \langle node \rangle may be \texttt{frame}, \texttt{interior}, \texttt{title}, or any other named node used for drawing the \texttt{tcolorbox}. The \langle node \rangle may be defined inside \texttt{/tcb/underlay} \footnote{\texttt{P.219}}, \texttt{/tcb/overlay} \footnote{\texttt{P.82}} or \texttt{/tcb/finish} \footnote{\texttt{P.221}}. If the later is used, define the node before \texttt{/tcb/hyperref node} is applied. \\
\hline
\texttt{/tcb/hyperlink} & (no default, initially unset) \texttt{\langle marker \rangle} \\
& The whole frame of a \texttt{tcolorbox} is make an active hyperlink for a \texttt{\langle marker \rangle} which was given by \texttt{\hypertarget} or \texttt{/tcb/hypertarget} \footnote{\texttt{P.116}}. Such, the \texttt{tcolorbox} is made a clickable button (depending on the previewer). \\
\end{tabular}
\caption{Hyper Option Keys}
\end{table}

% \section{Library skins}\label{sec:skins}\
\begin{tcolorbox}[beamer,colback=red!50,\hyperref=sec:skins]\
Jump to the heading of Section~\ref*{sec:skins}.\
\end{tcolorbox}

% \section{Library skins}\label{sec:skins}\
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,colback=yellow!10,\hypertarget=hypertwinB,\hyperlink=hypertwinA,\title=Box B]\
Click me to jump to Box A.\
\end{tcolorbox}

% \section{Library skins}\label{sec:skins}\
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,\colback=blue!10,\colframe=blue!50!black,\hypertarget=hypertwinB,\hyperlink=hypertwinA,\title=Box B]\
Click me to jump to Box A.\
\end{tcolorbox}

% \usepackage{hyperref}\
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,\colback=blue!10,\colframe=blue!50!black,\hypertarget=hypertwinB,\hyperlink=hypertwinA,\title=Box B]\
Click me to jump to Box A.\
\end{tcolorbox}

% \section{Library skins}\label{sec:skins}\
\begin{tcolorbox}[beamer,colback=red!50,\hyperref=sec:skins]\
Jump to the heading of Section~\ref*{sec:skins}.\
\end{tcolorbox}

% \section{Library skins}\label{sec:skins}\
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,colback=yellow!10,\hypertarget=hypertwinB,\hyperlink=hypertwinA,\title=Box B]\
Click me to jump to Box A.\
\end{tcolorbox}
Identical to /tcb/hyperlink \[P.223\], but only the \textit{interior} of a \texttt{tcolorbox} is made a hyperlink (without frame and title).

Identical to /tcb/hyperlink \[P.223\], but only the \textit{title} of a \texttt{tcolorbox} is made a hyperlink.

Identical to /tcb/hyperlink \[P.223\], but only the given \LaTeX{} \langle\texttt{node}\rangle is made a hyperlink. This \langle\texttt{node}\rangle may be \texttt{frame}, \texttt{interior}, \texttt{title}, or any other named node used for drawing the \texttt{tcolorbox}. The \langle\texttt{node}\rangle may be defined inside /tcb/underlay \[P.219\], /tcb/overlay \[P.82\] or /tcb/finish \[P.221\]. If the later is used, define the node before /tcb/hyperlink node is applied.

The whole \texttt{frame} of a \texttt{tcolorbox} is made an active hyperlink for an \langle\texttt{url}\rangle in the same manner as using \texttt{\href} or \texttt{\url}. Such, the \texttt{tcolorbox} is made a clickable button (depending on the previewer).
10.11 Jigsaw Skin Variants

As described in Section 9.1 on page 156, a tcolorbox is drawn by up to four engines. Typically, the frame engine fills the complete box area with color and the other engines fill certain areas with other colors. Finally, only the area which you see as frame of the box will display the frame color. For most applications, this is a good approach.

For certain boxes, a more delicate procedure is needed. E.g., if the box should be translucent, an already painted area cannot be made unpainted. Therefore, more elaborate frame engines saw holes into the frame where the interior area and optionally the title area will be painted. The resulting skins are called jigsaw skins. For standard \(^{\text{\ref{p.231}}}\), enhanced \(^{\text{\ref{p.233}}}\), and bicolor \(^{\text{\ref{p.245}}}\), there are variants called standard jigsaw \(^{\text{\ref{p.232}}}\), enhanced jigsaw \(^{\text{\ref{p.239}}}\), and bicolor jigsaw \(^{\text{\ref{p.252}}}\).

```
\newcommand{\ballexample}{\begin{tikzpicture}
\path[use as bounding box] (0,0.8) rectangle +(0.1,0.1);
\shadedraw [shading=ball] (0,0) circle (1cm);
\shadedraw [ball color=red] (3,-2.2) circle (1cm);
\end{tikzpicture}}
\tcbset{enhanced,colback=blue!5!white,
frame style={left color=red!75!black,right color=red!10!yellow},
fonttitle=\bfseries }
\ballexample
\begin{tcolorbox}[title=A normal box]
\lipsum[2]
\end{tcolorbox}
\ballexample

\begin{tcolorbox}[title=A translucent jigsaw box,
enhanced jigsaw,opacityback=0.35]
\lipsum[2]
\end{tcolorbox}
```

A normal box


A translucent jigsaw box

A normal box with hidden interior and title
This is a tcolorbox.

A jigsaw box with hidden interior and title
This is a tcolorbox.

\lipsum[2]
10.12 Draft Mode

To reduce the compilation time while drafting a document, the draft mode can be applied. Basically, it changes all skins to spartan \textsuperscript{P.277} and sets the /tcb/fit algorithm \textsuperscript{P.463} to squeeze. Especially, when fuzzy shadows are used, the speedup will be considerable.

It is strongly recommended that the draft mode is not used for the final document. Use spartan \textsuperscript{P.277} directly, if you want to stay with it. The draft mode implementation may change in future.

Normally, switching to the draft mode should not alter the geometry of your document. Since overlays are deactivated, any code placed there (e.g. counter changes) is not executed anymore! Also, /tcb/remember as \textsuperscript{P.218} will not have any effect. You may exclude critical code with \texttt{tcbinterruptdraftmode} / \texttt{tcbcontinuedraftmode} from converting to draft mode.

\texttt{tcbstartdraftmode}

Any following \texttt{tcolorbox} code is put into draft mode. All skin settings are overruled with spartan \textsuperscript{P.277}. Overlays, watermarks, shadows, borderlines, and rounded corners are deactivated for all \texttt{tcolorbox} layers.

\texttt{tcstopdraftmode}

The draft mode is deactivated for the following code.

\texttt{tcbinterruptdraftmode}

If the compilation is in draft mode, the draft mode is deactivated until a following \texttt{tcbcontinuedraftmode} is detected. If the compilation is not in draft mode, nothing happens and a following \texttt{tcbcontinuedraftmode} will not start the draft mode.

The pair \texttt{tcbinterruptdraftmode} and \texttt{tcbcontinuedraftmode} cannot be used nested.

\texttt{tcbcontinuedraftmode}

Continues the draft mode which was suspended by a preceding \texttt{tcbinterruptdraftmode}. Nothing happens, if there was no draft mode before \texttt{tcbinterruptdraftmode}.

Code, which is placed between \texttt{tcbinterruptdraftmode} and \texttt{tcbcontinuedraftmode} is shielded from draft mode.
If set to \texttt{true}, the \textit{draft mode} is started. If set to \texttt{false}, the \textit{draft mode} is stopped.

\begin{mybeamer}{Beamer box}
This box looks like a box provided by the \texttt{beamer} class.
\end{mybeamer}

\begin{mybeamer}[draftmode]{Beamer box}
This box looks like a box provided by the \texttt{beamer} class.
\end{mybeamer}
11 Library skins - Catalog of Skins

The skins library provides a catalog of skins to choose from which is documented in the following. The skins library has to be loaded by a package option or inside the preamble by:

\tcbuselibrary{skins}

See Section 10 on page 171 for the documentation of all other options of the skins library.

- In principle, a skin is applied by choosing a value for /tcb/skin\(^\text{P.156}\), e.g. enhanced. Since the parts of a breakable box should look different, there are individual skins for breakable boxes, also see Section 19.8 on page 417. Skins for breakable boxes derived from a base skin are called a skin family in the following.

- Instead of setting values for /tcb/skin\(^\text{P.156}\), equally named options can be used which are shortcuts and which sometimes also change some geometry or style settings. These are the intended options for normal users. Typically, one of the following options is sufficient to select a skin:

  - /tcb/standard\(^\text{P.231}\)
  - /tcb/standard jigsaw\(^\text{P.232}\)
  - /tcb/enhanced\(^\text{P.233}\)
  - /tcb/enhanced jigsaw\(^\text{P.239}\)
  - /tcb/enhanced standard\(^\text{P.235}\)
  - /tcb/enhanced standard jigsaw\(^\text{P.239}\)
  - /tcb/bicolor\(^\text{P.246}\)
  - /tcb/tile\(^\text{P.256}\)
  - /tcb/beamer\(^\text{P.260}\)
  - /tcb/widget\(^\text{P.264}\)
  - /tcb/empty\(^\text{P.267}\)
  - /tcb/spartan\(^\text{P.277}\)
  - /tcb/draft\(^\text{P.278}\)

Additionally, there are some special applications:

  - /tcb/marker\(^\text{P.241}\)
  - /tcb/blank\(^\text{P.235}\)
  - /tcb/blanker\(^\text{P.268}\)
  - /tcb/blankest\(^\text{P.269}\)
The auxiliary macro \texttt{\skinExampleSet} is used for the following examples to display skin applications. Note that \texttt{\skinExampleSet} is not part of the package, but is defined just for this documentation.

\begin{tcbbracket}[raster equal height,raster columns=3, colback=LightGreen,colframe=DarkGreen,colbacktitle=LimeGreen!75!DarkGreen, #1, left=1mm,right=1mm,top=1mm,bottom=1mm,middle=1mm, sidebyside gap=4mm]
\begin{tcolorbox}
This is my content.
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}
This is my content.
\tcblower
More content.
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[sidebyside]
My content.
\tcblower
More content.
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[adjusted title=My title]
This is my content.
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[adjusted title=My title]
This is my content.
\tcblower
More content.
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[adjusted title=My title,sidebyside]
My content.
\tcblower
More content.
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{tcbbracket}
11.1 Skin Family “standard”

Note that the option keys /tcb/frame style → P.171, /tcb/interior style → P.172, /tcb/segmentation style → P.174, and /tcb/title style → P.174 are not applicable to the standard skin. Also, watermarks (see Subsection 10.3) are not usable with the standard skin.

\texttt{/tcb/skin=standard} (skin)

This is the standard skin from the core package. All drawing engines are set to type \texttt{standard}. The drawing is based on \texttt{pgf} commands and does not need the \texttt{tikz} package.

Environment and engines for the skin “standard”

\texttt{/tcb/graphical environment → P.157: pgfpicture}
\texttt{/tcb/frame engine → P.157: standard}
\texttt{/tcb/interior titled engine → P.157: standard}
\texttt{/tcb/interior engine → P.158: standard}
\texttt{/tcb/segmentation engine → P.158: standard}
\texttt{/tcb/title engine → P.158: standard}

\texttt{/tcb/standard} (style, no value)

This is an abbreviation for setting \texttt{skin=standard}.

\texttt{\skinExampleSet{standard}}

This is my content.

\texttt{\skinExampleSet{standard}}

This is my content.

My content. More content.

My title

This is my content.

More content.

My title

This is my content.

More content.

My title

This is my content.

More content.
This is the standard jigsaw skin from the core package. It differs from the skin `standard` by its frame engine, see Section 10.11 on page 225.

**Environment and engines for the skin “standard jigsaw”**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Engine</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>/tcb/graphical environment</td>
<td>pgfpicture</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/tcb/frame engine</td>
<td>standardjigsaw</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/tcb/interior titled engine</td>
<td>standard</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/tcb/interior engine</td>
<td>standard</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/tcb/segmentation engine</td>
<td>standard</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/tcb/title engine</td>
<td>standard</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

This is an abbreviation for setting `skin=standard jigsaw`.

```latex
\skinExampleSet{standard jigsaw,  
opacityframe=0.5,opacityback=0.5,opacitybacktitle=0.5,}
```
11.2 Skin Family “enhanced”

If you like the standard appearance of a \texttt{tcolorbox} but you want to have some “enhanced” features, the \texttt{enhanced} skin is what you are looking for.

\texttt{/tcb/skin=enhanced} \hspace{1cm} (\texttt{skin})

This skin translates the drawing commands of the core package into \texttt{tikz} path commands. Therefore, it allows all \texttt{tikz} high level options for these paths and has more flexibility compared to the \texttt{standard} \texttt{\textsc{P.}231} skin. You pay for this with some prolonged compilation time. The \texttt{tikz} path options can be given with the option keys /tcb/frame style \texttt{\textsc{P.}171}, /tcb/interior style \texttt{\textsc{P.}172}, /tcb/segmentation style \texttt{\textsc{P.}174}, and /tcb/title style \texttt{\textsc{P.}174}.

Environment and engines for the skin “enhanced”

\begin{itemize}
\item /tcb/graphical environment \texttt{\textsc{P.}157}: \texttt{tikzpicture}
\item /tcb/frame engine \texttt{\textsc{P.}157}: \texttt{path}
\item /tcb/interior titled engine \texttt{\textsc{P.}157}: \texttt{path}
\item /tcb/interior engine \texttt{\textsc{P.}158}: \texttt{path}
\item /tcb/segmentation engine \texttt{\textsc{P.}158}: \texttt{path}
\item /tcb/title engine \texttt{\textsc{P.}158}: \texttt{path}
\end{itemize}

\texttt{/tcb/enhanced} \hspace{1cm} (\texttt{style}, no value)

This is an abbreviation for setting \texttt{skin=enhanced}.

\begin{itemize}
\item /\texttt{skinExampleSet\{enhanced\}}
\end{itemize}
With the “enhanced” skin, it is quite easy to produce fancy looking effects. Note that this is still a \texttt{tcolorbox}.
For unbreakable boxes, this is identical to using `/tcb/enhanced`\textsuperscript{P.233}. But, for breakable boxes, the \textit{break sequence} is identical to the \texttt{standard}\textsuperscript{P.231} skin, see Section 19.8 from page 417.

This style relies on the skin \texttt{enhanced}\textsuperscript{P.233}. All drawing operations are hidden and all margins are set to 0pt. See `/tcb/blanker`\textsuperscript{P.268} for switching off the drawing engines.

\begin{tcolorbox}[blank,watermark text=A blank box]
\lipsum[1]
\end{tcolorbox}

Sometimes, a line is only a line. With \texttt{tcbline}\textsuperscript{P.12} you separate the box content into two functional units. \texttt{tcbline} draws only a line which looks like the segmentation line between upper and lower part. Furthermore, you can use \texttt{tcbline} more than just once. \texttt{tcbline} always uses the path drawing engine. Therefore, the \texttt{/tcb/segmentation style}\textsuperscript{P.174} can be applied.

\begin{tcolorbox}[colupper=red!50!black,collower=green!50!black]
\lipsum[1]
\lipsum[2]
\lipsum[3]
\lipsum[4]
\end{tcolorbox}


\texttt{tcbline*}

Equivalent to \texttt{tcbline}, but in a breakable box, \texttt{tcbline*} is removed if at a page/box break. Also, it is removed at the end of a box.
This is a flavor of enhanced\(^{233}\) which is used as a first part in a break sequence for enhanced\(^{233}\). Nevertheless, this skin can be applied independently.

Environment and engines for the skin “enhancedfirst”

\begin{itemize}
  \item /tcb/graphical environment\(^{233}\): tikzpicture
  \item /tcb/frame engine\(^{233}\): pathfirst
  \item /tcb/interior titled engine\(^{233}\): pathfirst
  \item /tcb/interior engine\(^{233}\): pathfirst
  \item /tcb/segmentation engine\(^{233}\): path
  \item /tcb/title engine\(^{233}\): pathfirst
\end{itemize}

This is my content. More content. My content. More content.

My title
This is my content. More content.

Environment and engines for the skin “enhancedmiddle”

\begin{itemize}
  \item /tcb/graphical environment\(^{233}\): tikzpicture
  \item /tcb/frame engine\(^{233}\): pathmiddle
  \item /tcb/interior titled engine\(^{233}\): pathmiddle
  \item /tcb/interior engine\(^{233}\): pathmiddle
  \item /tcb/segmentation engine\(^{233}\): path
  \item /tcb/title engine\(^{233}\): pathmiddle
\end{itemize}

This is my content. More content. My content. More content.

My title
This is my content. More content.
This is a flavor of enhanced which is used as a last part in a break sequence for enhanced. Nevertheless, this skin can be applied independently.

Environment and engines for the skin “enhancedlast”

```
\skinExampleSet{skin=enhancedlast}
```

This is my content. This is my content. This is my content. My title

My title This is my content. My title

My title This is my content. My title

This is the jigsaw variant of skin \texttt{enhanced}\textsuperscript{P.233}. It differs by its frame engine, see Section 10.11 on page 225.

### Environment and engines for the skin “enhanced jigsaw”

- `/tcb/graphical environment`\textsuperscript{P.157} \texttt{tikzpicture}
- `/tcb/frame engine`\textsuperscript{P.157} \texttt{pathjigsaw}
- `/tcb/interior titled engine`\textsuperscript{P.157} \texttt{path}
- `/tcb/interior engine`\textsuperscript{P.158} \texttt{path}
- `/tcb/segmentation engine`\textsuperscript{P.158} \texttt{path}
- `/tcb/title engine`\textsuperscript{P.158} \texttt{path}

This is an abbreviation for setting \texttt{skin=enhanced_jigsaw}.

\begin{verbatim}
\skinExampleSet{enhanced_jigsaw, 
    opacityframe=0.5,opacityback=0.5,opacitybacktitle=0.5, 
}
\end{verbatim}

For unbreakable boxes, this is identical to using `/tcb/enhanced_jigsaw`. But, for breakable boxes, the \textit{break sequence} is identical to the \texttt{standard_jigsaw}\textsuperscript{P.232} skin, see Section 19.8 from page 417.
This is the jigsaw variant of skin `enhancedfirst` \(^{\text{P.237}}\). It differs by its frame engine, see Section 10.11 on page 225.

### Environment and engines for the skin “enhancedfirst jigsaw”

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Environment/Engine</th>
<th>Engine/Engine</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>/tcb/graphical environment</code></td>
<td><code>tikzpicture</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>/tcb/frame engine</code></td>
<td><code>pathfirstjigsaw</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>/tcb/interior titled engine</code></td>
<td><code>pathfirst</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>/tcb/interior engine</code></td>
<td><code>pathfirst</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>/tcb/segmentation engine</code></td>
<td><code>path</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>/tcb/title engine</code></td>
<td><code>pathfirst</code></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\skinExampleSet{skin=enhancedfirst jigsaw, opacityframe=0.5,opacityback=0.5,opacitybacktitle=0.5,}

My title

This is my content.

This is my content.

More content.

My content.

This is my content.

More content.

My title

This is my content.

More content.

My content.

More content.

240
This is the jigsaw variant of skin enhancedmiddle. It differs by its frame engine, see Section 10.11 on page 225.

Environment and engines for the skin “enhancedmiddle jigsaw”

\begin{tcolorbox}
\lipsum[2]
\end{tcolorbox}

This styles relies on the skin enhancedmiddle jigsaw. It is intended to be used as an optical marker like a highlighter pen.
This example demonstrates the creation of several text marker environments based on enhancedmiddle. P. 237.

\tcbset[textmarker/.style=%
  skin=enhancedmiddle jigsaw, breakable, parbox=false,
  boxrule=0mm, leftrule=5mm, rightrule=5mm, boxsep=0mm, arc=0mm,
  left=3mm, right=3mm, top=1mm, bottom=1mm, toptitle=1mm, bottomtitle=1mm, oversize)}

\newtcolorbox[yellow]{textmarker, colback=yellow!5!white, colframe=yellow}
\newtcolorbox[orange]{textmarker, colback=DarkOrange!5!white, colframe=DarkOrange!75!yellow}
\newtcolorbox[red]{textmarker, colback=red!5!white, colframe=red}
\newtcolorbox[blue]{textmarker, colback=DeepSkyBlue!5!white, colframe=DeepSkyBlue}
\newtcolorbox[green]{textmarker, colback=Chartreuse!5!white, colframe=Chartreuse}
\newtcolorbox[rainbow]{textmarker, interior hidden, frame style={top color=blue, bottom color=red, middle color=green}}

\begin{yellow}
\lipsum[1-3]
\end{yellow}

\begin{orange}
\lipsum[4]
\end{orange}

\begin{red}
\lipsum[5]
\end{red}

\begin{green}
\lipsum[6]
\end{green}

\begin{blue}
\lipsum[7]
\end{blue}

\begin{rainbow}
\lipsum[8]
\end{rainbow}


Nulla malesuada porttitor diam. Donec felis erat, congue non, volutpat at, tincidunt tristique,


This is the jigsaw variant of skin `enhancedlast`. It differs by its frame engine, see Section 10.11 on page 225.

Environment and engines for the skin “enhancedlast”

```
\skinExampleSet{skin=enhancedlast jigsaw, 
opacityframe=0.5,opacityback=0.5,opacitybacktitle=0.5, }
```

This is my content.

More content.
11.3 Skin Family “bicolor”

This skin is quite similar to the standard \textsuperscript{P.231} and enhanced \textsuperscript{P.233} skin. But instead of a segmentation line, the optional lower part of the box is filled with a different color or drawn with a different style.

### Environment and engines for the skin “bicolor”

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Environment/Engine</th>
<th>Engine Type</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>\texttt{/tcb/graphical environment} \textsuperscript{P.157}</td>
<td>\texttt{tikzpicture}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\texttt{/tcb/frame engine} \textsuperscript{P.157}</td>
<td>\texttt{path}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\texttt{/tcb/interior titled engine} \textsuperscript{P.157}</td>
<td>\texttt{special}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\texttt{/tcb/interior engine} \textsuperscript{P.158}</td>
<td>\texttt{special}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\texttt{/tcb/segmentation engine} \textsuperscript{P.158}</td>
<td>\texttt{special}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\texttt{/tcb/title engine} \textsuperscript{P.158}</td>
<td>\texttt{path}</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- The most basic usage of this skin is to set the background color of the lower part by \texttt{/tcb/colbacklower} \textsuperscript{P.247} and all other options like for the standard \textsuperscript{P.231} skin.

\begin{tcolorbox}[skin=bicolor,title=The title, colframe=FireBrick!75!black,colback=Salmon!50!white,colbacklower=Salmon]
The upper part.
\tcblower
The lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}

- The more advanced usage of this skin is to apply the \texttt{/tcb/frame style} \textsuperscript{P.171} and the \texttt{/tcb/interior style} \textsuperscript{P.172} like for the enhanced \textsuperscript{P.233} skin. Also, the \texttt{/tcb/segmentation style} \textsuperscript{P.174} can be used, but it is applied to the whole lower part.

\begin{tcolorbox}[skin=bicolor,title=The title, frame style={top color=FireBrick, bottom color=FireBrick!15!white,draw=black}, interior style={left color=Salmon,right color=Salmon!50!white}, segmentation style={right color=Salmon,left color=Salmon!50!white}]
The upper part.
\tcblower
The lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}
This is an abbreviation for setting `skin=bicolor`.

```latex
\skinExampleSet{bicolor, 
colbacklower=LimeGreen!75!LightGreen, }
```

This is my content.

More content.

My title

This is my content.

More content.

My content.

More content.

My title

This is my content.

More content.

My content.

More content.
The following options `/tcb/colbacklower` and `/tcb/opacitybacklower` are executed before `/tcb/segmentation style` P.174, i.e. `/tcb/segmentation style` P.174 overrules them.

`/tcb/colbacklower=(color)` (no default, initially black!15!white)
Sets the background ⟨color⟩ of the lower part. It depends on the skin, if this value is used.

\begin{tcblisting}{style={listing and comment,comment={#1},
   skin=bicolor,boxrule=1mm,fonttitle=\bfseries,coltitle=black,
   frame style={draw=black,left color=Gold,right color=Goldenrod!50!Gold},
   colback=black,colbacklower=Goldenrod!75!Gold,
   colupper=white,collower=black,
   listing options={language={bash},aboveskip=0pt,belowskip=0pt,nolol,
     basicstyle=\ttfamily\bfseries,extendedchars=true}}}
\begin{verbatim}
git commit
  git commit -a
  git commit -am 'changes to my example'
\end{verbatim}
\end{tcblisting}

Example for a semilucent lower part
This is the upper part.
And that is the lower part.

`/tcb/opacitybacklower=(fraction)` (no default, initially 1.0)
Sets the background opacity of the lower part to the given ⟨fraction⟩. It depends on the skin, if this value is used.

\begin{tcolorbox}[bicolor,
   frame style={preaction={fill=blue!50!black},
   pattern=checkerboard,pattern color=blue!50!gray},
   fonttitle=\bfseries, overlaplower=0mm,
   colback=blue!10, colbacklower=white, opacitybacklower=0.65,
   title={Example for a semilucent lower part}]
This is the upper part.
\tcblower
And that is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}
The backgrounds of the lower parts for the skin families “bicolor”, “tile”, and “beamer” are drawn differently than the backgrounds of the upper parts. If the distance between these backgrounds of upper and lower parts is \texttt{0pt}, some previewers show the frame color as thin line between upper and lower part. To avoid this glitch, the lower part is drawn with an overlap of \langle length \rangle over the upper part.

This value can be adapted for special applications. For example, semilucent lower parts better use \texttt{0pt}, see \texttt{/tcb/opacitybacklower}\texttt{→P.247}. Also see \texttt{\tcboverlaplower} for using a larger value.

Macro which contains the length value set by \texttt{/tcb/overlaplower}. May be used for fine positioning at the segmentation between upper and lower part and should be seen \textit{read-only}.

\begin{tcolorbox}[bicolor, sharp corners, colframe=blue!50!black, colback=blue!10, colbacklower=red!10, top=5mm, bottom=2mm, middle=3.5mm, overlaplower=1.5mm, underlay={
  \node[minimum width=1cm,minimum height=0.5cm,outer sep=auto, anchor=north east,fill=white] at (interior.north east) {\textitshape\small upper};
  \node[minimum width=1cm,minimum height=0.5cm,outer sep=auto, anchor=north east,fill=white] at ([yshift=\tcboverlaplower]segmentation.east) {\textitshape\small lower};
}]
\end{tcolorbox}

This is the upper part.
\tcblower
And that is the lower part.

This is the upper part.

And that is the lower part.
This is a flavor of \texttt{bicolor} which is used as a \textit{first} part in a break sequence for \texttt{bicolor}. Nevertheless, this skin can be applied independently.

### Environment and engines for the skin “bicolorfirst”

- \texttt{/tcb/graphical environment}\textsuperscript{P.157}: \texttt{tikzpicture}
- \texttt{/tcb/frame engine}\textsuperscript{P.157}: \texttt{pathfirst}
- \texttt{/tcb/interior titled engine}\textsuperscript{P.157}: \texttt{special}
- \texttt{/tcb/interior engine}\textsuperscript{P.158}: \texttt{special}
- \texttt{/tcb/segmentation engine}\textsuperscript{P.158}: \texttt{special}
- \texttt{/tcb/title engine}\textsuperscript{P.158}: \texttt{pathfirst}

\begin{verbatim}
\skinExampleSet{skin=bicolorfirst, colbacklower=LimeGreen!75!LightGreen, }
\end{verbatim}

This is my content.

More content.

My title

This is my content.

More content.

My title

This is my content.

More content.

My title

This is my content.

More content.
This is a flavor of bicolor\(^{P.245}\) which is used as a *middle* part in a break sequence for bicolor\(^{P.245}\). Nevertheless, this skin can be applied independently.

### Environment and engines for the skin “bicolormiddle”

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Engine Type</th>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>/tcb/graphical environment</td>
<td>tikzpicture</td>
<td>P.157</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/tcb/frame engine</td>
<td>pathmiddle</td>
<td>P.157</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/tcb/interior titled engine</td>
<td>special</td>
<td>P.157</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/tcb/interior engine</td>
<td>special</td>
<td>P.158</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/tcb/segmentation engine</td>
<td>special</td>
<td>P.158</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/tcb/title engine</td>
<td>pathmiddle</td>
<td>P.158</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

```latex
\skinExampleSet{skin=bicolormiddle, colbacklower=LimeGreen!75!LightGreen, }
```

This is my content. This is my content. My content. More content.

This is my content. More content.

My title

This is my content. This is my content. My content. More content.

My title

This is my content. More content.
This is a flavor of \texttt{bicolor}\textsuperscript{P.245} which is used as a \textit{last} part in a break sequence for \texttt{bicolor}\textsuperscript{P.245}. Nevertheless, this skin can be applied independently.

### Environment and engines for the skin “\texttt{bicolorlast}”

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Engine</th>
<th>Engine</th>
<th>Engine</th>
<th>Engine</th>
<th>Engine</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>\texttt{/tcb/graphical\ environment}</td>
<td>\texttt{tikzpicture}</td>
<td>\texttt{/tcb/frame engine}</td>
<td>\texttt{pathlast}</td>
<td>\texttt{/tcb/interior titled engine}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\texttt{/tcb/frame engine}</td>
<td>\texttt{pathlast}</td>
<td>\texttt{/tcb/interior engine}</td>
<td>\texttt{special}</td>
<td>\texttt{/tcb/segmentation engine}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\texttt{/tcb/interior engine}</td>
<td>\texttt{special}</td>
<td>\texttt{/tcb/segmentation engine}</td>
<td>\texttt{special}</td>
<td>\texttt{/tcb/title engine}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\texttt{/tcb/title engine}</td>
<td>\texttt{pathlast}</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\begin{verbatim}
\skinExampleSet{skin=bicolorlast, colbacklower=LimeGreen!75!LightGreen, }
\end{verbatim}

This is my content.
This is my content.
More content.
My content.  More content.

My title
This is my content.
This is my content.
More content.

My title
My content.  More content.
This is the jigsaw variant of skin bicolor \(^{245}\). It differs by its frame engine, see Section 10.11 on page 225.

### Environment and engines for the skin “bicolor jigsaw”

- /tcb/graphical environment \(^{157}\): \texttt{tikzpicture}
- /tcb/frame engine \(^{157}\): \texttt{pathjigsaw}
- /tcb/interior titled engine \(^{157}\): \texttt{special}
- /tcb/interior engine \(^{158}\): \texttt{special}
- /tcb/segmentation engine \(^{158}\): \texttt{special}
- /tcb/title engine \(^{158}\): \texttt{path}

This is an abbreviation for setting \texttt{skin=enhanced jigsaw}.

\begin{verbatim}
\input{customstyles}
\skinExampleSet{bicolor jigsaw,
colbacklower=LimeGreen!75!LightGreen,
opacityframe=0.5,opacityback=0.5,opacitybacktitle=0.5,
opacitybacklower=0.5,
}
\end{verbatim}

This is my content. More content.
My title
This is my content. More content.
This is my content. More content.
This is the jigsaw variant of skin \texttt{bicolorfirst} \textsuperscript{p.249}. It differs by its frame engine, see Section 10.11 on page 225.

\begin{tikzpicture}
\node at (0,0) {This is my content.};
\node at (1.5,0) {My content.};
\node at (0,-1.5) {My title};
\node at (1.5,-1.5) {My title};
\end{tikzpicture}

\begin{minipage}{0.3\textwidth}
\begin{verbatim}
\skinExampleSet{skin=bicolorfirst jigsaw, 
colbacklower=LimeGreen!75!LightGreen, 
opacityframe=0.5,opacityback=0.5,opacitybacktitle=0.5, 
opacitybacklower=0.5,}
\end{verbatim}
\end{minipage}
This is the jigsaw variant of skin `bicolormiddle`\textsuperscript{P.250}. It differs by its frame engine, see Section 10.11 on page 225.

### Environment and engines for the skin “bicolormiddle jigsaw”

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Engine Type</th>
<th>Engine Name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>graphical environment</td>
<td>tikzpicture</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>frame engine</td>
<td>pathmiddlejigsaw</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>interior titled engine</td>
<td>special</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>interior engine</td>
<td>special</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>segmentation engine</td>
<td>special</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>title engine</td>
<td>pathmiddle</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\begin{Verbatim}
\texttt{\skinExampleSet\{skin=bicolormiddle jigsaw,}
\texttt{colbacklower=LimeGreen!75!LightGreen,}
\texttt{opacityframe=0.5,opacityback=0.5,opacitybacktitle=0.5,}
\texttt{opacitybacklower=0.5,}
\texttt{}}
\end{Verbatim}
This is the jigsaw variant of skin \texttt{bicolorlast} \textsuperscript{P.251}. It differs by its frame engine, see Section 10.11 on page 225.

**Environment and engines for the skin “bicolorlast jigsaw”**

\begin{quote}
\begin{itemize}
\item /\texttt{tcb/graphical\ environment} \textsuperscript{P.157}: \texttt{tikzpicture}
\item /\texttt{tcb/frame\ engine} \textsuperscript{P.157}: \texttt{pathlastjigsaw}
\item /\texttt{tcb/interior\ titled\ engine} \textsuperscript{P.157}: \texttt{special}
\item /\texttt{tcb/interior\ engine} \textsuperscript{P.158}: \texttt{special}
\item /\texttt{tcb/segmentation\ engine} \textsuperscript{P.158}: \texttt{special}
\item /\texttt{tcb/title\ engine} \textsuperscript{P.158}: \texttt{pathlast}
\end{itemize}
\end{quote}

\begin{Verbatim}
\skinExampleSet{skin=bicolorlast jigsaw, 
colbacklower=LimeGreen!75!LightGreen, 
opacityframe=0.5, opacityback=0.5, opacitybacktitle=0.5, 
opacitybacklower=0.5, }
\end{Verbatim}

This is my content. More content. My content. More content.

My title 
This is my content. 

This is my content. More content. My content. More content.

My title 
This is my content. 

This is my content. More content. My content. More content.
11.4 Skin Family “tile”

This skin is a variant of skin bicolor\textsuperscript{P.245}. Especially, the optional lower part of the box is colored by /tcb/colbacklower\textsuperscript{P.247}. The main difference to bicolor\textsuperscript{P.245} is that tile has no frame.

Environment and engines for the skin “tile”

\begin{itemize}
\item /tcb/graphical environment\textsuperscript{P.157}: tikzpicture
\item /tcb/frame engine\textsuperscript{P.157}: empty
\item /tcb/interior titled engine\textsuperscript{P.157}: special
\item /tcb/interior engine\textsuperscript{P.158}: special
\item /tcb/segmentation engine\textsuperscript{P.158}: special
\item /tcb/title engine\textsuperscript{P.158}: path
\end{itemize}

This key applies skin=tile and in addition changes the geometry and some style options.

\begin{verbatim}
\skinExampleSet{tile, colbacklower=LimeGreen!75!LightGreen, }
\end{verbatim}

This is my content. This is my content. My content. More content.

My title
This is my content.

My title
This is my content.

My title
This is my content.

More content.
This is a flavor of \texttt{tile} which is used as a \textit{first} part in a break sequence for \texttt{tile}.

Nevertheless, this skin can be applied independently.

### Environment and engines for the skin “tilefirst”

- /tcb/graphical environment: \texttt{tikzpicture}
- /tcb/frame engine: \texttt{empty}
- /tcb/interior titled engine: \texttt{special}
- /tcb/interior engine: \texttt{special}
- /tcb/segmentation engine: \texttt{special}
- /tcb/title engine: \texttt{pathfirst}

\begin{verbatim}
\skinExampleSet{skin=tilefirst, colbacklower=LimeGreen!75!LightGreen, boxrule=0pt, }
\end{verbatim}

\begin{verbatim}
This is my content. This is my content. My content. More content.
This is my content. This is my content. My content. More content.
This is my content. This is my content. My title
\end{verbatim}
This is a flavor of \texttt{tile} \cite{P.256} which is used as a \textit{middle} part in a break sequence for \texttt{tile} \cite{P.256}. Nevertheless, this skin can be applied independently.

\subsection*{Environment and engines for the skin “tilemiddle”}

\begin{table}[h]
\begin{tabular}{ll}
\texttt{/tcb/graphical environment} & \texttt{tikzpicture} \\
\texttt{/tcb/frame engine} & \texttt{empty} \\
\texttt{/tcb/interior titled engine} & \texttt{special} \\
\texttt{/tcb/interior engine} & \texttt{special} \\
\texttt{/tcb/segmentation engine} & \texttt{special} \\
\texttt{/tcb/title engine} & \texttt{pathmiddle} \\
\end{tabular}
\end{table}

\begin{code}
\begin{Verbatim}
\input{example-set}
\end{Verbatim}
\end{code}
This is a flavor of tile\textsuperscript{P.256} which is used as a last part in a break sequence for tile\textsuperscript{P.256}. Nevertheless, this skin can be applied independently.

### Environment and engines for the skin "tilelast"

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Engine Type</th>
<th>Engine Name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>/tcb/graphical environment</td>
<td>tikzpicture</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/tcb/frame engine</td>
<td>empty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/tcb/interior titled engine</td>
<td>special</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/tcb/interior engine</td>
<td>special</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/tcb/segmentation engine</td>
<td>special</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/tcb/title engine</td>
<td>pathlast</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

```latex
\skinExampleSet{skin=tilelast, 
colbacklower=LimeGreen!75!LightGreen, 
boxrule=0pt, 
}
```

This is my content.

This is my content.

My content.

More content.

This is my content.

This is my content.

My title

More content.

This is my content.

This is my content.

My title

More content.

My title
11.5 Skin Family “beamer”

This skin resembles boxes known from the beamer class and therefore is called “beamer”. It uses the normal colors from the core package but shades them a little bit.

Environment and engines for the skin “beamer”

- /tcb/graphical environment \(\text{\texttt{tikzpicture}}\)
- /tcb/frame engine \(\text{\texttt{path}}\)
- /tcb/interior titled engine \(\text{\texttt{special}}\)
- /tcb/interior engine \(\text{\texttt{special}}\)
- /tcb/segmentation engine \(\text{\texttt{special}}\)
- /tcb/title engine \(\text{\texttt{path}}\)

This key applies skin=beamer and in addition changes the geometry and some style options.

```latex
\begin{tcolorbox}[	exttt{beamer},colback=Salmon!50!white,colframe=FireBrick!75!black,
adjusted title=A colored box with the \texttt{beamer} skin]
This box looks like a box provided by the \texttt{beamer} class.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

A colored box with the “beamer” skin

This box looks like a box provided by the beamer class.


This is a flavor of beamer\textsuperscript{P.260} which is used as a first part in a break sequence for beamer\textsuperscript{P.260}. Nevertheless, this skin can be applied independently.

### Environment and engines for the skin “beamerfirst”

\texttt{/tcb/graphical environment \textsuperscript{P.157}: tikzpicture}
\texttt{/tcb/frame engine \textsuperscript{P.157}: pathfirst}
\texttt{/tcb/interior titled engine \textsuperscript{P.157}: special}
\texttt{/tcb/interior engine \textsuperscript{P.158}: special}
\texttt{/tcb/segmentation engine \textsuperscript{P.158}: special}
\texttt{/tcb/title engine \textsuperscript{P.158}: pathfirst}

\begin{verbatim}
\skinExampleSet{beamer, title filled=false, skin=beamerfirst}
\end{verbatim}

This is my content.

More content.

My title

This is my content.

My title

This is my content.

More content.

My content.

More content.

My title

This is my content.

My title

This is my content.

More content.

My title

This is my content.

My title

This is my content.

More content.

My title

This is my content.

My title

This is my content.

More content.

My title

This is my content.

My title

This is my content.

More content.

My title

This is my content.

My title

This is my content.

More content.

My title

This is my content.

My title

This is my content.

More content.

My title

This is my content.

My title

This is my content.

More content.

My title

This is my content.

My title

This is my content.

More content.

My title

This is my content.

My title

This is my content.

More content.

My title

This is my content.

My title

This is my content.

More content.

My title

This is my content.

My title

This is my content.

More content.

My title

This is my content.

My title

This is my content.

More content.

My title

This is my content.

My title

This is my content.

More content.

My title

This is my content.

My title

This is my content.

More content.

My title

This is my content.

My title

This is my content.

More content.

My title

This is my content.

My title

This is my content.

More content.

My title

This is my content.

My title

This is my content.

More content.

My title

This is my content.

My title

This is my content.

More content.

My title

This is my content.

My title

This is my content.

More content.

My title

This is my content.

My title

This is my content.

More content.

My title

This is my content.

My title

This is my content.

More content.

My title

This is my content.

My title

This is my content.

More content.

My title

This is my content.

My title

This is my content.

More content.

My title

This is my content.

My title

This is my content.

More content.

My title

This is my content.

My title

This is my content.

More content.

My title

This is my content.

My title

This is my content.

More content.

My title

This is my content.

My title

This is my content.

More content.

My title

This is my content.

My title

This is my content.

More content.

My title

This is my content.

My title

This is my content.

More content.

My title

This is my content.

My title

This is my content.

More content.

My title

This is my content.

My title

This is my content.

More content.

My title

This is my content.

My title

This is my content.

More content.

My title

This is my content.

My title

This is my content.

More content.

My title

This is my content.

My title

This is my content.

More content.

My title

This is my content.

My title

This is my content.

More content.
This is a flavor of \texttt{beamer} which is used as a last part in a break sequence for \texttt{beamer}. Nevertheless, this skin can be applied independently.

Environment and engines for the skin “beamerlast”

\begin{itemize}
\item \texttt{/tcb/graphical environment}\textsuperscript{P.157}: \texttt{tikzpicture}
\item \texttt{/tcb/frame engine}\textsuperscript{P.157}: \texttt{pathlast}
\item \texttt{/tcb/interior titled engine}\textsuperscript{P.157}: \texttt{special}
\item \texttt{/tcb/interior engine}\textsuperscript{P.158}: \texttt{special}
\item \texttt{/tcb/segmentation engine}\textsuperscript{P.158}: \texttt{special}
\item \texttt{/tcb/title engine}\textsuperscript{P.158}: \texttt{pathlast}
\end{itemize}

\begin{tcbexample}
\skinExampleSet{beamer,title filled=false,skin=beamerlast}
\end{tcbexample}
11.6 Skin Family “widget”

This skin uses the normal colors from the core package but shades them a little bit. The appearance of the skin can be controlled by \texttt{/tcb/frame style} \textsuperscript{P.171}, \texttt{/tcb/interior style} \textsuperscript{P.172}, and \texttt{/tcb/segmentation style} \textsuperscript{P.174}, if needed.

Environment and engines for the skin “widget”

\begin{itemize}
  \item \texttt{/tcb/graphical environment} \textsuperscript{P.157}: \texttt{tikzpicture}
  \item \texttt{/tcb/frame engine} \textsuperscript{P.157}: \texttt{path}
  \item \texttt{/tcb/interior titled engine} \textsuperscript{P.157}: \texttt{path}
  \item \texttt{/tcb/interior engine} \textsuperscript{P.158}: \texttt{path}
  \item \texttt{/tcb/segmentation engine} \textsuperscript{P.158}: \texttt{special}
  \item \texttt{/tcb/title engine} \textsuperscript{P.158}: \texttt{special}
\end{itemize}

\begin{tcolorbox}[widget,colback=Salmon!50!white,colframe=FireBrick!75!black, adjusted title=A colored box with the \enquote{widget} skin]
This is my content.
\end{tcolorbox}

A colored box with the “widget” skin

This is my content.
This is a flavor of \textit{widget}^\textsuperscript{P.264} which is used as a \textit{first} part in a break sequence for \textit{widget}^\textsuperscript{P.264}. Nevertheless, this skin can be applied independently.

\begin{tabular}{l}
\textbf{Environment and engines for the skin “widgetfirst”}
\end{tabular}

\begin{itemize}
\item \texttt{/tcb/graphical environment}\textsuperscript{P.157}: \texttt{tikzpicture}
\item \texttt{/tcb/frame engine}\textsuperscript{P.157}: \texttt{pathfirst}
\item \texttt{/tcb/interior titled engine}\textsuperscript{P.157}: \texttt{pathfirst}
\item \texttt{/tcb/interior engine}\textsuperscript{P.158}: \texttt{pathfirst}
\item \texttt{/tcb/segmentation engine}\textsuperscript{P.158}: \texttt{special}
\item \texttt{/tcb/title engine}\textsuperscript{P.158}: \texttt{special}
\end{itemize}

\begin{tabular}{l}
\texttt{\skinExampleSet{widget,skin=widgetfirst}}
\end{tabular}

This is my content. \hspace{1cm} This is my content. \hspace{1cm} My content. \hspace{1cm} More content.

More content. \hspace{1cm} This is my content. \hspace{1cm} My title \hspace{1cm} More content.

My title \hspace{1cm} This is my content. \hspace{1cm} My title \hspace{1cm} More content.

\begin{tabular}{l}
\textbf{/tcbskin=widgetmiddle} \hspace{1cm} (skin)
\end{tabular}

This is a flavor of \textit{widget}^\textsuperscript{P.264} which is used as a \textit{middle} part in a break sequence for \textit{widget}^\textsuperscript{P.264}. Nevertheless, this skin can be applied independently.

\begin{tabular}{l}
\textbf{Environment and engines for the skin “widgetmiddle”}
\end{tabular}

\begin{itemize}
\item \texttt{/tcb/graphical environment}\textsuperscript{P.157}: \texttt{tikzpicture}
\item \texttt{/tcb/frame engine}\textsuperscript{P.157}: \texttt{pathmiddle}
\item \texttt{/tcb/interior titled engine}\textsuperscript{P.157}: \texttt{pathmiddle}
\item \texttt{/tcb/interior engine}\textsuperscript{P.158}: \texttt{pathmiddle}
\item \texttt{/tcb/segmentation engine}\textsuperscript{P.158}: \texttt{special}
\item \texttt{/tcb/title engine}\textsuperscript{P.158}: \texttt{special}
\end{itemize}

\begin{tabular}{l}
\texttt{\skinExampleSet{widget,skin=widgetmiddle}}
\end{tabular}

This is my content. \hspace{1cm} This is my content. \hspace{1cm} My content. \hspace{1cm} More content.

More content. \hspace{1cm} This is my content. \hspace{1cm} My title \hspace{1cm} More content.

My title \hspace{1cm} This is my content. \hspace{1cm} My title \hspace{1cm} More content.
This is a flavor of \texttt{widget} which is used as a last part in a break sequence for \texttt{widget}. Nevertheless, this skin can be applied independently.

\textbf{Environment and engines for the skin “\texttt{widgetlast}”}

\begin{itemize}
\item \texttt{/tcb/graphical environment}: \texttt{tikzpicture}
\item \texttt{/tcb/frame engine}: \texttt{pathlast}
\item \texttt{/tcb/interior titled engine}: \texttt{pathlast}
\item \texttt{/tcb/interior engine}: \texttt{pathlast}
\item \texttt{/tcb/segmentation engine}: \texttt{special}
\item \texttt{/tcb/title engine}: \texttt{special}
\end{itemize}

\texttt{\skinExampleSet{widget,skin=widgetlast}}

This is my content.
This is my content.
More content.

My title
This is my content.
This is my content.
More content.

My title
My content. More content.
11.7 Skin Family “empty”

\[\text{/tcb/skin=empty}\]

This skin sets all engines to \texttt{empty}, i.e. nothing is drawn at all. Therefore, this skin is a good starting point to create a complete new style by yourself.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Environment and engines for the skin “empty”</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>\text{/tcb/graphical environment} \textsuperscript{P.157}: \texttt{tikzpicture}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\text{/tcb/frame engine} \textsuperscript{P.157}: \texttt{empty}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\text{/tcb/interior titled engine} \textsuperscript{P.157}: \texttt{empty}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\text{/tcb/interior engine} \textsuperscript{P.158}: \texttt{empty}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\text{/tcb/segmentation engine} \textsuperscript{P.158}: \texttt{empty}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\text{/tcb/title engine} \textsuperscript{P.158}: \texttt{empty}</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note that the text colors stay unchanged when a skin is applied. Since the standard title color is white, the title of a box with skin \texttt{empty} becomes invisible, if not set to another color by \text{/tcb/coltitle} \textsuperscript{P.34}.

\[\text{/tcb/empty}\]

This is an abbreviation for setting \texttt{skin=empty}.

\begin{Verbatim}
\texttt{\skinExampleSet\{empty,
    coltitle=Navy, borderline={2pt}{0pt}{black!10!white},
}\}
\end{Verbatim}

This is my content.  
This is my content.  
My content.  
More content.  

This is my content.  
This is my content.

My title
This is my content.  
My content.  
More content.

My title
My title
My content.  
More content.
This style relies on the skin `empty`\(^{P.267}\). All engines are set to empty and all margins are set to `0pt`. In contrast to `\tcb{blank}`\(^{P.235}\), the graphical paths are not constructed with exception of the geometry nodes.

```latex
\begin{tcolorbox}[blanker,watermark text=A blank box]
\lipsum[1]
\end{tcolorbox}
```

A blank box


```
% \tcbuselibrary{fitting}
\newtcbfit{\mybox}{blanker,width=4cm,height=7cm,top=4pt,watermark text=#1}

\begin{tabular}{|c|c|c|}
\hline
A & B & C \\
\hline
\mybox{A}{\lipsum[1]} & \mybox{B}{\lipsum[2]} & \mybox{C}{\lipsum[3]} \\
\hline
\end{tabular}
```

A & B & C

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>A</th>
<th>B</th>
<th>C</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

268
This style extends /tcb/blankest \textsuperscript{P.268}. All engines are set to empty and all margins are set to 0pt. In contrast to /tcb/blanker \textsuperscript{P.268}, also title, shadow, underlay, overlay, finish and borderline are removed.

% \tcbuselibrary{raster}
\begin{tcbraster}[raster columns=3,raster equal height, title=Box \theocrbasternum, enhanced,size=small,colframe=red!50!black,colback=red!10!white, coltitle=yellow!85!black, drop fuzzy shadow,watermark text={Box \theocrbasternum}, borderline={.25mm}{-0.5mm}{green!40!black}, finish={\begin{tcbclipframe}\draw[blue,opacity=0.1,line width=1cm](frame.south west) -- (frame.north east);\end{tcbclipframe}},]
\begin{tcolorbox}\lipsum[4]\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[blanker]\lipsum[4]\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[blankest]\lipsum[4]\end{tcolorbox}
\end{tcbraster}


This is a flavor of empty which is used as a first part in a break sequence for empty. Nevertheless, this skin can be applied independently.

Environment and engines for the skin “emptyfirst”

- /tcb/graphical environment: \texttt{tikzpicture}
- /tcb/frame engine: \texttt{empty}
- /tcb/interior titled engine: \texttt{empty}
- /tcb/interior engine: \texttt{empty}
- /tcb/segmentation engine: \texttt{empty}
- /tcb/title engine: \texttt{empty}

\small
\begin{verbatim}
\skinExampleSet{skin=emptyfirst, coltitle=Navy,borderline={2pt}{0pt}{black!10!white}, }
\end{verbatim}

This is my content.

This is my content.

My content. More content.

My title

This is my content.

This is my content.

My title

My content. More content.
This is a flavor of empty which is used as a middle part in a break sequence for empty. Nevertheless, this skin can be applied independently.

Environment and engines for the skin “emptymiddle”

- /tcb/graphical environment: tikzpicture
- /tcb/frame engine: empty
- /tcb/interior titled engine: empty
- /tcb/interior engine: empty
- /tcb/segmentation engine: empty
- /tcb/title engine: empty

\skinExampleSet{skin=emptymiddle,
  coltitle=Navy,borderline={2pt}{0pt}{black!10!white},
}

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>This is my content.</th>
<th>This is my content.</th>
<th>My content.</th>
<th>More content.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>My title</td>
<td>My title</td>
<td>My title</td>
<td>My content.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>This is my content.</td>
<td>This is my content.</td>
<td></td>
<td>More content.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
This is a flavor of `empty` which is used as a last part in a break sequence for `empty`. Nevertheless, this skin can be applied independently.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Environment and engines for the skin “emptylast”</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>/tcb/graphical environment → P.157: tikzpicture</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/tcb/frame engine → P.157: empty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/tcb/interior titled engine → P.157: empty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/tcb/interior engine → P.158: empty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/tcb/segmentation engine → P.158: empty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/tcb/title engine → P.158: empty</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\skinExampleSet{skin=emptylast,\par
coltitle=Navy,\PAR
borderline={2pt}{0pt}{black!10!white},\PAR
}

| This is my content. | This is my content. | My content. | More content. | My title | This is my content. | My title | My content. | More content. |
This example demonstrates a breakable customized box. Here, we define an environment `freebox`. The first application of `freebox` produces an unbroken `tcolorbox`. The box is drawn by the code given by `/tcb/frame code` and `/tcb/interior code`. The second application of `freebox` is broken into several parts which are drawn by the codes given by `/tcb/skin first is subskin of`, `/tcb/skin middle is subskin of`, and `/tcb/skin last is subskin of`.

\begin{verbatim}
\usepackage{tikz,lipsum}
%\tcbuselibrary{skins,breakable}
\tikzset{coltria/.style={fill=red!15!white}}
\newtcolorbox{freebox}[1][{}]{empty, breakable, height fixed for=first and middle, leftrule=5mm, left=2mm, frame style={fill, top color=red!75!black, bottom color=red!75!black, middle color=red}, colback=yellow!50!white, watermark color=red!50!yellow!75!white, watermark text on=unbroken is unbroken box, watermark text on=first is first part, watermark text on=middle is middle part, watermark text on=last is last part, % code for unbroken boxes: frame code={\path[yshift=-5mm] (frame.south west)--(frame.north west) --([xshift=-5mm] frame.north east) --(frame.north east) --(frame.south east)--cycle; }, interior code={\path[yshift=-4.8mm] (interior.south west) --(interior.north west) --(interior.north east)--(interior.south east) --cycle; }, % code for the first part of a break sequence: skin first is subskin of={emptyfirst}{% frame code={\path[yshift=-5mm] (frame.north west)--(frame.north east) --([yshift=-5mm] frame.north east) --(frame.south east)--cycle; \path[coltria] ([xshift=2.5mm,yshift=1mm] frame.north west) --+(240:2mm) --+(300:2mm) -- cycle; }, interior code={\path[yshift=-4.8mm] (interior.north east)--(interior.south east)|-frame.south) --cycle; }, % code for the middle part of a break sequence: skin middle is subskin of={emptymiddle}{% frame code={\path[yshift=-5mm] (frame.north west)--(frame.north east) --([yshift=-5mm] frame.north east) --(frame.south east)--cycle; \path[coltria] ([xshift=2.5mm,yshift=1mm] frame.north west) --+(240:2mm) --+(300:2mm) -- cycle; }, interior code={\path[yshift=-4.8mm] (interior.north east)--(interior.south east)|-frame.south) --cycle; }, % code for the last part of a break sequence: skin last is subskin of={emptylast}{% frame code={\path[yshift=-5mm] (frame.north west)--(frame.north east) --([yshift=-5mm] frame.north east) --(frame.south east)--cycle; \path[coltria] ([xshift=2.5mm,yshift=1mm] frame.north west) --+(240:2mm) --+(300:2mm) -- cycle; }
\end{verbatim}

273


11.8 Skin “spartan”

\tcb/skin=spartan

This skin is quite ... spartan. It supports no rounded corners, no overlays, no shadows, no
borderlines, and no finishes. The only exception are underlays. One cannot do very fancy
things with this skin, but it compiles very fast. Therefore, the spartan skin is used for the
draft mode, see Section 10.12 on page 227. Nevertheless, it can be used as a normal skin.

Environment and engines for the skin “spartan”

\tcb/graphical environment \( \rightarrow \) P.157: \texttt{tikzpicture}
\tcb/frame engine \( \rightarrow \) P.157: \texttt{spartan}
\tcb/interior titled engine \( \rightarrow \) P.157: \texttt{spartan}
\tcb/interior engine \( \rightarrow \) P.158: \texttt{spartan}
\tcb/segmentation engine \( \rightarrow \) P.158: \texttt{spartan}
\tcb/title engine \( \rightarrow \) P.158: \texttt{spartan}

\tcb/spartan

This is an abbreviation for setting \texttt{skin=spartan}.

\texttt{\skinExampleSet{spartan}}

This is my content. This is my content. My content. More content.

More content. My title

This is my content. This is my content. My title

My title

This is my content. My content. More content.

More content.
11.9 Skin “draft”

This skin is intended to be used while drafting new geometric settings for a tcolorbox.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Environment and engines for the skin “draft”</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>/tcb/graphical environment → P.157: tikzpicture</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/tcb/frame engine → P.157: special</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/tcb/interior titled engine → P.157: special</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/tcb/interior engine → P.158: special</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/tcb/segmentation engine → P.158: path</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/tcb/title engine → P.158: path</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

This is an abbreviation for setting skin=draft.

\skinExampleSet{draft}

This is my content.

This is my content.

My title

This is my content.

More content.

My title

My content. More content.


11.10 Skin Family “freelance”

This skin family “freelance” is deprecated with \texttt{tcolorbox} 3.00. It is not longer needed, because \texttt{/tcb/frame code}\footnote[p=160]{}, \texttt{/tcb/interior code}\footnote[p=161]{}, \texttt{/tcb/interior titled code}\footnote[p=160]{}, and \texttt{/tcb/title code}\footnote[p=162]{} can be applied to every skin now. In this sense, everything has become \textit{freelance} now.

For users of \texttt{/tcb/freelance}: Old code should continue to work. There may be exceptions for breakable freelance boxes under certain circumstances. For new code, use \texttt{/tcb/empty}\footnote[p=267]{} or \texttt{/tcb/enhanced}\footnote[p=233]{} where you would have used \texttt{/tcb/freelance} before.

\texttt{/tcb/skin=freelance} \hspace{1cm} (skin)

This skin gives full freedom for the appearance of the \texttt{tcolorbox}. All drawing engines are set to type \textit{freelance}; they use the \texttt{tikz} package and compute the \texttt{/tcb/geometry nodes}\footnote[p=159]{}.

\begin{center}
\begin{tabular}{l}
\texttt{/tcb/graphical environment}\footnote[p=157]{}: tikzpicture \\
\texttt{/tcb/frame engine}\footnote[p=157]{}: freelance \\
\texttt{/tcb/interior titled engine}\footnote[p=157]{}: freelance \\
\texttt{/tcb/interior engine}\footnote[p=158]{}: freelance \\
\texttt{/tcb/segmentation engine}\footnote[p=158]{}: freelance \\
\texttt{/tcb/title engine}\footnote[p=158]{}: freelance \\
\end{tabular}
\end{center}

\texttt{/tcb/freelance} \hspace{1cm} (style, no value)

This is an abbreviation for setting \texttt{skin=freelance}.

\texttt{/tcb/skin=freelancefirst} \hspace{1cm} (skin)

This skin equals \textit{freelance} with exception of the break sequence, see Section 19.8 on page 417.

\texttt{/tcb/skin=freelancemiddle} \hspace{1cm} (skin)

This skin equals \textit{freelance} with exception of the break sequence, see Section 19.8 on page 417.

\texttt{/tcb/skin=freelancelast} \hspace{1cm} (skin)

This skin equals \textit{freelance} with exception of the break sequence, see Section 19.8 on page 417.

\texttt{/tcb/extend freelance=\langle options\rangle} \hspace{1cm} (no default, initially empty)

The \langle\textit{options}\rangle are added to the skin definition of \textit{freelance}.

\texttt{/tcb/extend freelancefirst=\langle options\rangle} \hspace{1cm} (no default, initially empty)

The \langle\textit{options}\rangle are added to the skin definition of \textit{freelancefirst} which is used as first part of the break sequence of \textit{freelance}. See \texttt{/tcb/skin first is subskin of}\footnote[p=163]{} for a substitute of this key.

\texttt{/tcb/extend freelancemiddle=\langle options\rangle} \hspace{1cm} (no default, initially empty)

The \langle\textit{options}\rangle are added to the skin definition of \textit{freelancemiddle} which is used as middle part of the break sequence of \textit{freelance}. See \texttt{/tcb/skin middle is subskin of}\footnote[p=163]{} for a substitute of this key.

\texttt{/tcb/extend freelancelast=\langle options\rangle} \hspace{1cm} (no default, initially empty)

The \langle\textit{options}\rangle are added to the skin definition of \textit{freelancelast} which is used as last part of the break sequence of \textit{freelance}. See \texttt{/tcb/skin last is subskin of}\footnote[p=163]{} for a substitute of this key.

280
The skins library adds some commands to conveniently include boxed image files. For the following macros and options, the skins library has to be loaded by a package option or inside the preamble by:

\tcbuselibrary{skins}

See Section 10 on page 171 for the documentation of all other options of the skins library.

12.1 Macros

\tcbincludegraphics{(options)}{(file name)}

In principle, this macro includes an image file denoted by \textit{(file name)} using the standard \texttt{\includegraphics} and puts it into a \texttt{tcolorbox} \pageref{p.12}. The \textit{(options)} are \texttt{tcolorbox} keys to set up the colored box. Use \texttt{/tcb/graphics options} \pageref{p.284} to specify options for the underlying \texttt{\includegraphics}. Some \texttt{tcolorbox} option keys are automatically set, namely \texttt{/tcb/enhanced} \pageref{p.235} and options to center the image inside the box.

The sizing of the included image is done depending on the following:

- If a \texttt{/tcb/width} \pageref{p.40} is specified, but no fixed \texttt{/tcb/height} \pageref{p.59}, the image is sized to fill the inner width of the box. The height of the box adapts to the image.
- If a fixed \texttt{/tcb/height} \pageref{p.59} is specified, the image is sized to fill the fixed inner area of the box.
- If the \texttt{/tcb/capture} \pageref{p.108} mode \texttt{/tcb/hbox} \pageref{p.108} is specified, the image is sized according to given \texttt{\includegraphics} options only. The box adapts to the image.

\begin{tcbraster}
\[raster columns=3, raster force size=false, size=fbox, colframe=red!50!black, colback=red!20!black, fonttitle=\textbf, center title, drop fuzzy shadow\]
\tcbincludegraphics\[title=Normal\]{goldshade.png}
\tcbincludegraphics\[title=Fixed height, height=3cm\]{goldshade.png}
\tcbincludegraphics\[title=hbox mode, hbox, graphics options={width=3cm}\]{goldshade.png}
\end{tcbraster}

\% \tcbuselibrary{raster}
\begin{tcbraster}{raster columns=3, raster force size=false, size=fbox, colframe=red!50!black, colback=red!20!black, fonttitle=\textbf, center title, drop fuzzy shadow}
\tcbincludegraphics\[title=Normal\]{goldshade.png}
\tcbincludegraphics\[title=Fixed height, height=3cm\]{goldshade.png}
\tcbincludegraphics\[title=hbox mode, hbox, graphics options={width=3cm}\]{goldshade.png}
\end{tcbraster}
The auxiliary macro `\imagine` may be used inside `\tcbincludegraphics` to display the name of the file. `\imagine` is already partially detokenized and is allowed to contain special characters like the underscore. Note that an appropriate font is required to display such characters.
This is a generalized version of \tcbincludetexgraphics\textsuperscript{\textsuperscript{P.281}} which allows to include a complete PDF file denoted by \texttt{(file name)}. Every page is boxed into an own \texttt{tcolorbox}\textsuperscript{\textsuperscript{P.12}} customized by the given \texttt{(options)}. It is reasonable to put such a series of boxes inside a \texttt{tcbexample}\textsuperscript{\textsuperscript{P.309}} for alignment.

Use \texttt{/tcb/graphics pages}\textsuperscript{\textsuperscript{P.284}} to use a selection of pages instead of using the whole file. The auxiliary macro \texttt{\imagepage} may be used inside \texttt{tcbincludetexpdf} to display the current page number.

\texttt{\% \tcbsusetexlibrary{raster}}
\begin{tcbexample}[raster columns=3,colframe=blue,colback=white, colbacktitle=blue!50!white,fonttitle=\small\bfseries\ttfamily, left=0pt,right=0pt,top=0pt,bottom=0pt,boxsep=0pt,boxrule=0.6pt, topp=1mm,bottomtitle=1mm,drop lifted shadow,center title, graphics pages={1,...,6},title={\imagepage}]
\tcbincludetexpdf{tcolorbox-example.pdf}
\end{tcbexample}
12.2 Option Keys

\texttt{/tcb/graphics options=(options)} (no default, initially empty)

Used for \texttt{\textbackslash tcbincludelgraphics} \textsuperscript{P.281} and \texttt{\textbackslash tcbincludetilde} \textsuperscript{P.283} to specify \texttt{\textbackslash includelgraphics} \texttt{(options)}. Note that \texttt{(options)} will be fully expanded.

\begin{center}
\begin{tcbraster}[raster columns=3,size=fbox,raster equal height, colframe=red!50!black,colback=red!20!black,drop fuzzy shadow]
\tcbincludelgraphics{goldshade.png}
\newcommand{\myangle}{angle=20}\%
\tcbincludelgraphics[\texttt{\textbackslash graphics options=\myangle}]{goldshade.png}
\tcbincludelgraphics[\texttt{\textbackslash graphics options={viewport=0cm 0cm 8cm 4cm,clip}}]{goldshade.png}
\end{tcbraster}
\end{center}

\texttt{/tcb/graphics directory=(directory)} (no default, initially empty)

Used for \texttt{\textbackslash tcbincludelgraphics} \textsuperscript{P.281} and \texttt{\textbackslash tcbincludetilde} \textsuperscript{P.283} to specify a file system \texttt{(directory)} where the image files are located.

\begin{center}
\begin{verbatim}
\tcset{
  graphics directory=.,
  graphics directory={examples},
  graphics directory={../../pictures},
}
\end{verbatim}
\end{center}

\textbf{!} The \texttt{\textbackslash graphicspath} macro from the \texttt{graphics} package is superior to this option.

\texttt{/tcb/graphics directory} may be used especially for \texttt{\textbackslash tcbincludetilde} \textsuperscript{P.283}.

\texttt{/tcb/graphics pages=(selection)} (no default, initially 1,...,\texttt{\textbackslash pdfpages})

Used for \texttt{\textbackslash tcbincludetilde} \textsuperscript{P.283} to specify a \texttt{(selection)} of pages to be included. The largest page number is accessible by \texttt{\textbackslash pdfpages}. The \texttt{(selection)} has to be given using the \texttt{\textbackslash foreach} syntax of \texttt{TikZ}.

\begin{center}
\begin{verbatim}
\tcset{
  graphics pages=(1,3,7),
  graphics pages=(1,...,10),
  graphics pages=(1,3,...,18),
  graphics pages={100,...,\texttt{\textbackslash pdfpages}},
}
\end{verbatim}
\end{center}
/tcb\textbf{graphics orientation}=(orientation) (no default, initially \textit{as-is})

Used for \texttt{\tcbincludegraphics}→P.281 and \texttt{\tcbincludepdf}→P.283 to guarantee a certain \textit{(orientation)} of the included image. After all other options for the image are processed, the result is possibly rotated to be in landscape or portrait mode.

Feasible values for \textit{(orientation)} are:

- \texttt{as-is}: no rotation of the processed image.
- \texttt{landscape}: the processed image is possibly rotated by 90 degrees to ensure that the final width is not smaller than the final height.
- \texttt{landscape*}: the processed image is possibly rotated by -90 degrees to ensure that the final width is not smaller than the final height.
- \texttt{portrait}: the processed image is possibly rotated by 90 degrees to ensure that the final height is not smaller than the final width.
- \texttt{portrait*}: the processed image is possibly rotated by -90 degrees to ensure that the final height is not smaller than the final width.

% \tcbuselibrary{raster}
\begin{tcbraster}[raster columns=6,size=fbox,raster equal height,
    colframe=red!50!black,colback=red!20!black,drop fuzzy shadow]
\tcbincludegraphics{Basilica_5.png}
\tcbincludegraphics[graphics orientation=landscape]{Basilica_5.png}
\tcbincludegraphics[graphics orientation=portrait]{Basilica_5.png}
\tcbincludegraphics[graphics orientation=portrait*]{Basilica_5.png}
\tcbincludegraphics[graphics options={viewport=0cm 0cm 2cm 3cm,clip}]{goldshade.png}
\tcbincludegraphics[graphics options={viewport=0cm 0cm 2cm 3cm,clip},
    graphics orientation=landscape]{goldshade.png}
\end{tcbraster}
The \texttt{skins} library adds some auxiliary options to the vast option set of \LaTeX{} \cite{23}. These options can be used in any \texttt{tikzpicture}. For the following options, the \texttt{skins} library has to be loaded by a package option or inside the preamble by:

\begin{verbatim}
\tcbuselibrary{skins}
\end{verbatim}

See Section 10 on page 171 for the documentation of all other options of the \texttt{skins} library.

Up to version 5.1.1 (2022/06/24) of \texttt{tcolorbox}, \LaTeX{} image and picture fill extensions were documented here. These extensions are now separate \LaTeX{} libraries and part of the \texttt{tikzfill} package where they are documented now.

## 13.1 Straightening of the Arcs

This patch is considered as an experimental feature. It changes some of the original \LaTeX{} code. This change may break with future updates of \LaTeX{}.

\begin{verbatim}
\tcbpatcharcangular
\end{verbatim}

The \LaTeX{} package provides a nice \texttt{rounded corners} option to replace all corners by little arcs. \texttt{\tcbpatcharcangular} is a patch which straightens the arcs. To say it more prosaic, the little arcs are replaced by little straight lines.

\begin{verbatim}
\begin{tikzpicture}
\draw[thick,rounded corners=8pt]
 (0,0) -- (0,2) -- (1,3.25) -- (2,2) -- (2,0)
 -- (0,2) -- (2,2) -- (0,0) -- (2,0);
\tcbpatcharcangular
\draw[thick,rounded corners=8pt,xshift=2.5cm]
 (0,0) -- (0,2) -- (1,3.25) -- (2,2) -- (2,0)
 -- (0,2) -- (2,2) -- (0,0) -- (2,0);
\end{tikzpicture}
\end{verbatim}

\begin{verbatim}
\tcbpatcharcround
\end{verbatim}

This macro reverts \texttt{\tcbpatcharcangular}, i.e., the patch from \texttt{\tcbpatcharcangular} is replaced by the original code.
13.2 Extracting Node Dimensions

The following auxiliary macros are defined by the \texttt{skins} library. They allow to determine the width and height of an arbitrary Ti\textsc{k}Z node. To be more specific, they determine the east-to-west and the north-to-south dimensions which may be not the maximal dimensions for a non-rectangular node. Note that the following dimensions are measured exactly including the line width of the border line. If a new rectangle or node with the same dimensions and a border is to be drawn, this border width has to be substracted.

\begin{verbatim}
\cbsettowidthofnode{⟨register⟩}{⟨node⟩}
    Sets the east-to-west dimension of the given ⟨node⟩ to the \TeX ⟨register⟩.
\cbsetmacrotowidthofnode{⟨macro⟩}{⟨node⟩}
    Defines ⟨macro⟩ as the east-to-west dimension of the given ⟨node⟩.
\cbsettoheightofnode{⟨register⟩}{⟨node⟩}
    Sets the north-to-south dimension of the given ⟨node⟩ to the \TeX ⟨register⟩.
\cbsetmacrootoheightofnode{⟨macro⟩}{⟨node⟩}
    Defines ⟨macro⟩ as the north-to-south dimension of the given ⟨node⟩.
\end{verbatim}

\begin{tikzpicture}
    \node[align=center,draw=red,fill=yellow] (A) {This is my\ example node};
    \cbsettowidthofnode{mywidth}{A}
    \cbsetmacrootoheightofnode{myheight}{A}
    \path[fill=blue!25!white]
        % rectangle with out border
        (\[xshift=2mm\]A.south east) rectangle node{Copy} + (mywidth,myheight);
    \node[draw=blue,fill=blue!25!white,
        % standard border width 0.4pt
        minimum width=mywidth-0.4pt,  % minus width of border
        minimum height=myheight-0.4pt % minus height of border
    ]
        at ([xshift=5cm]A) {Copy 2};
\end{tikzpicture}

13.3 Hyper Nodes

The following auxiliary macro is defined by the \texttt{skins} library.

\begin{verbatim}
\cbhyperform{⟨macro⟩}{⟨node⟩}
    Applies a hyperlink creating ⟨macro⟩ from the package hyperref \cite{hyperref} to an existing tikz ⟨node⟩. \cbhyperform can only be used inside a tikzpicture environment. The last argument of the ⟨macro⟩ is to be omitted and should stand for an object (text) which is to be made a hyperlink. For example, use \texttt{\hyperref[\texttt{name}]} instead of \texttt{\hyperref[\texttt{name}]{text}}.
\end{verbatim}

\begin{tikzpicture}
    \node[align=center,draw=red,fill=red!5] (mybutton) {Click me to jump to Section~\ref*{sec:tikzimagefilling}};
    \cbhyperform{\hyperref[sec:tikzimagefilling]}{mybutton}
\end{tikzpicture}

Click me to jump to Section 13
14 Beamer Support

The skins library adds some supporting options for the beamer package [24]. For the following options, the skins library has to be loaded by a package option or inside the preamble by:

\tcbuselibrary{skins}

See Section 10 on page 171 for the documentation of all other options of the skins library.

N 2015-01-09
U 2019-03-01

/ \tcb/only=<\langle overlay specification\rangle>\{(options)\} (style, no default, initially unset)

Sets the given tcolorbox (options) in dependency of a beamer (overlay specification). Note that this needs the beamer class [24]. The (options) will only be used on the specified beamer frames.

\documentclass{beamer}
\usepackage[many]{tcolorbox}
\begin{document}
\begin{frame}
\begin{tcolorbox}[title=My title,fonttitle=bfseries,enhanced,colframe=red!50!black,colback=red!10,colbacktitle=red,sidebyside,righthand width=3cm,lowerbox=invisible,lower separated=false,drop lifted shadow,only=<1>{colbacktitle=yellow,coltitle=red!50!black,colframe=red},only=<3>{colback=yellow!50,watermark text={Attention!}},only=<3->{lowerbox=visible}]
This is a test.
\begin{itemize}[<+->]
\item One
\item Two
\item \alert<3>{Three}
\item Four
\end{itemize}
\tcblower
\begin{equation*}
\int\limits_{1}^{x} \frac{1}{t} \, dt = \ln(x).
\end{equation*}
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{frame}
\end{document}
\documentclass{beamer}
\usepackage[most]{tcolorbox}
\begin{document}
\begin{frame}[fragile]
\begin{tcblisting}{beamer,colback=blue!5,colframe=blue!20!gray,coltitle=yellow,
title=Example,
only=<1>{lowerbox=invisible},only=<2>{}
}
This is an \textbf{example listing}
\end{tcblisting}
\end{frame}
\end{document}

The option /tcb/only \textsuperscript{P.288} belonged to the base package before version 4.20.

\texttt{/tcb\textbackslash hide=<\langle overlay specification\rangle> \textsuperscript{(style, no default, initially unset)}}

Sets the /tcb/beamer hidden style in dependency of a \texttt{beamer (overlay specification)}. /tcb/beamer hidden can be redefined for customization.

\texttt{/tcb/beamer hidden \textsuperscript{(style, no options, initially nirvana)}}

This style is not intended to be used directly, but in concealed way by applying /tcb/hide. The style can be redefined.

\begin{verbatim}
\tcbset{
    beamer hidden/.style={invisible,interior hidden,colframe=blue!20!gray!15},
}
\end{verbatim}
\texttt{/tcb/alert=<\{overlay \ specification\}>}

(style, no default, initially unset)

Sets the \texttt{/tcb/beamer \ alerted} style in dependency of a \texttt{beamer \langle overlay \ specification\rangle}. \texttt{/tcb/beamer \ alerted} can be redefined for customization.

\texttt{/tcb/beamer \ alerted}

(style, no options, initially \texttt{fuzzy \ halo})

This style is not intended to be used directly, but in concealed way by applying \texttt{/tcb/alert}. The style can be redefined.

\begin{verbatim}
\tcbset{
  beamer alerted/.style={colframe=red!50!gray},
}
\end{verbatim}

The following examples use \texttt{tcbitemize} \(^\text{P.310}\) from \texttt{raster} for convenient use of a list of boxes which are uncovered one by one.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>One</th>
<th>First Statement</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Two</td>
<td>Second Statement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Three</td>
<td>Test</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Four</td>
<td>\begin{equation*} \int_{1}^{x} \frac{1}{t} , dt = \ln(x). \end{equation*}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Five</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Six</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\documentclass{beamer}
\usepackage[most]{tcolorbox}
\begin{document}
\begin{frame}
\begin{tcbitemize}[raster equal height=rows,
enhanced,colback=blue!5,colframe=blue!20!gray,coltitle=yellow,beamer hidden/.style={invisible,interior hidden,colframe=blue!20!gray!15},beamer alerted/.style={colframe=red!50!gray},]
\tcbitem[title=One,alert=<1>]
First Statement
\tcbitem[title=Two,hide=<-1>,alert=<2>]
Second Statement
\tcbitem[title=Three,hide=<-2>,alert=<3>]
Test
\tcbitem[title=Four,hide=<-3>,alert=<4>]
\begin{equation*}
\int_{1}^{x} \frac{1}{t} \, dt = \ln(x).
\end{equation*}
\tcbitem[title=Five,hide=<-4>,alert=<5>]
\includegraphics[width=1cm]{goldshade.png}
\tcbitem[title=Six,hide=<-5>,alert=<6>]
Test
\end{tcbitemize}
\end{frame}
\end{document}
\begin{frame}
\begin{tcbitemize}[raster equal height=rows,
beamer,colback=blue!5,colframe=blue!20!gray,coltitle=yellow,beamer]
\item[title=One,alert=<1>]
First Statement
\item[title=Two,hide=<-1>,alert=<2>]
Second Statement
\item[title=Three,hide=<-2>,alert=<3>]
\end{tcbitemize}
\end{frame}
\[\int_{1}^{x} \frac{1}{t} \, dt = \ln(x).\]
\begin{equation*}
\int_{1}^{x} \frac{1}{t} \, dt = \ln(x).
\end{equation*}
The library is loaded by a package option or inside the preamble by:

\tcbuselibrary{vignette}

This also loads the skins library, see Section 10 on page 171, and the fadings library of tikz [23].

15.1 Vignette Drawing

\tcbvignette{⟨options⟩}

In this context, a vignette is a four part rectangular frame. It is constructed as several Ti\textsc{k}Z paths and, therefore, can only be used inside a \texttt{tikzpicture} environment or inside \texttt{tcolorbox} \textsuperscript{\ref{page:12}} options.

The ⟨options⟩ control position, size and style settings of the vignette. Theses options have the common key path /tcb/vig/ and are described in the following.

The next examples show direct \tcbvignette usage without a \texttt{tcolorbox} \textsuperscript{\ref{page:12}}.

\begin{tikzpicture}
\tcbvignette{}
\end{tikzpicture}

\begin{tikzpicture}
\node[draw,fill=blue!15!white] (A) {Test};
\tcbvignette{outside node=A,raised color=blue}
\end{tikzpicture}

\begin{tikzpicture}
\node[draw,fill=blue!15!white] (A) {Another Test};
\tcbvignette{size=3mm,outside node=A, 
north style=red,east style=yellow, 
south style=blue,west style=green}
\end{tikzpicture}

\begin{tikzpicture}
\node[inner sep=3mm,fill=red!75] (A) {Test};
\tcbvignette{over node=A,fade in}
\end{tikzpicture}

\texttt{tcbvignette} can be used directly inside appropriate options keys for \texttt{tcolorbox} \textsuperscript{\ref{page:12}}. Note that options like /tcb/underlay \textsuperscript{\ref{page:219}} need /tcb/enhanced \textsuperscript{\ref{page:253}} or similar settings.

\begin{tcolorbox}\\[enhanced, size=small,sharp corners, 
colback=green!10,colframe=green!50!black, 
boxrule=1mm,titelrule=0mm, 
title=My title,center title,fonttitle=\bfseries, 
underlay=\{tcbvignette{size=1mm,inside node=frame, 
raised color=green!50!black}\}\\
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}
Mostly, convenient short cuts like /tcb/underlay vignette\textsuperscript{P.302} can be used to add a vignette to a tcolorbox\textsuperscript{P.12}. Here, /tcbvignette is used internally.

\begin{tcolorbox}
[enhanced, size=small, sharp corners, 
colback=green!10, colframe=green!50!black, 
boxrule=1mm, titlerule=0mm, 
title=My title, center title, fonttitle=\textbf{series}, 
underlay vignette]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}

\subsection{15.2 Generic Geometry Settings}

\noindent\texttt{N 2016-04-22 /tcb/vig/xmin=⟨length⟩} (no default, initially 0pt)

Sets the lower horizontal limit of a \texttt{tcbvignette}\textsuperscript{P.294}.

\noindent\texttt{N 2016-04-22 /tcb/vig/xmax=⟨length⟩} (no default, initially 1cm)

Sets the upper horizontal limit of a \texttt{tcbvignette}\textsuperscript{P.294}.

\noindent\texttt{N 2016-04-22 /tcb/vig/ymin=⟨length⟩} (no default, initially 0pt)

Sets the lower vertical limit of a \texttt{tcbvignette}\textsuperscript{P.294}.

\noindent\texttt{N 2016-04-22 /tcb/vig/ymax=⟨length⟩} (no default, initially 1cm)

Sets the upper vertical limit of a \texttt{tcbvignette}\textsuperscript{P.294}.

\begin{tikzpicture}
\fill [black!20] (0,0) rectangle (3,2);
\path [pattern=checkerboard, pattern color=black!30]
(0,0) rectangle (3,2);
\tcbvignette{xmin=1cm, xmax=2.5cm, ymin=0.5cm, ymax=1.75cm}
\end{tikzpicture}

\noindent\texttt{N 2016-04-22 /tcb/vig/lower left corner=⟨coordinates⟩} (style, initially 0,0)

Sets the lower left corner of a \texttt{tcbvignette}\textsuperscript{P.294}. This style sets /tcb/vig/xmin and /tcb/vig/ymin.

\noindent\texttt{N 2016-04-22 /tcb/vig/upper right corner=⟨coordinates⟩} (style, initially 1,1)

Sets the upper right corner of a \texttt{tcbvignette}\textsuperscript{P.294}. This style sets /tcb/vig/xmax and /tcb/vig/ymax.

\begin{tikzpicture}
\fill [black!20] (0,0) rectangle (3,2);
\path [pattern=checkerboard, pattern color=black!30]
(0,0) rectangle (3,2);
\tcbvignette{lower left corner={1,0.5},
upper right corner={2.5,1.75}}
\end{tikzpicture}

\noindent\texttt{N 2016-04-22 /tcb/vig/inside node=⟨name⟩} (style, initially unset)

Places the \texttt{tcbvignette}\textsuperscript{P.294} inside the node with the given \texttt{⟨name⟩}. The outer limits of the \texttt{vignette} are adapted to the node geometry.

\begin{tikzpicture}
\node[minimum width=2cm, minimum height=1cm] (A) {Node A};
\tcbvignette{inside node=A}
\draw[very thick] (A.south west) rectangle (A.north east);
\end{tikzpicture}
\begin{tikzpicture}
\node[minimum width=2cm,minimum height=1cm] (A) {Node A};
\tcbvignette{outside node=A}
\draw[very thick] (A.south west) rectangle (A.north east);
\end{tikzpicture}

\begin{tikzpicture}
\node[minimum width=2cm,minimum height=1cm] (A) {Node A};
\tcbvignette{over node offset=1mm,over node=A}
\draw[very thick] (A.south west) rectangle (A.north east);
\end{tikzpicture}

\begin{tikzpicture}
\tcbvignette{north size=4mm}
\end{tikzpicture}

\begin{tikzpicture}
\tcbvignette{south size=4mm}
\end{tikzpicture}

\begin{tikzpicture}
\tcbvignette{east size=4mm}
\end{tikzpicture}

\begin{tikzpicture}
\tcbvignette{west size=4mm}
\end{tikzpicture}

\begin{tikzpicture}
\node[minimum width=2cm,minimum height=1cm] (A) {Node A};
\tcbvignette{outside node=A}
\draw[very thick] (A.south west) rectangle (A.north east);
\end{tikzpicture}
Sets `/tcb/vig/north size` $\rightarrow$ P.296 and `/tcb/vig/south size` $\rightarrow$ P.296, to the given $\langle$ length $\rangle$.

\begin{tikzpicture}
\tcbvignette{vertical size=4mm}
\end{tikzpicture}

Sets `/tcb/vig/east size` $\rightarrow$ P.296 and `/tcb/vig/west size` $\rightarrow$ P.296, to the given $\langle$ length $\rangle$.

\begin{tikzpicture}
\tcbvignette{horizontal size=4mm}
\end{tikzpicture}

Sets `/tcb/vig/north size` $\rightarrow$ P.296, `/tcb/vig/south size` $\rightarrow$ P.296, `/tcb/vig/east size` $\rightarrow$ P.296, and `/tcb/vig/west size` $\rightarrow$ P.296 to the given $\langle$ length $\rangle$.

\begin{tikzpicture}
\tcbvignette{size=4mm}
\end{tikzpicture}

/tcb/vig/north size $\rightarrow$ P.296, /tcb/vig/south size $\rightarrow$ P.296, etc. have to be set before /tcb/vig/outside node $\rightarrow$ P.296 is used.

15.3 Generic Color and Style Settings

Sets TikZ $\langle$ style $\rangle$ options for the north vignette part.

\begin{tikzpicture}
\tcbvignette{north style=blue}
\end{tikzpicture}

Sets TikZ $\langle$ style $\rangle$ options for the south vignette part.

\begin{tikzpicture}
\tcbvignette{south style={draw=blue,fill=yellow}}
\end{tikzpicture}

Sets TikZ $\langle$ style $\rangle$ options for the east vignette part.

\begin{tikzpicture}
\tcbvignette{east style={left color=yellow!75!black, right color=blue!75!black}}
\end{tikzpicture}
Sets TikZ \langle style \rangle options for the west vignette part.

```
\begin{tikzpicture}
  \tcbvignette{west style={preaction={fill=black!20},
    pattern=checkerboard,
    pattern color=black!30}}
\end{tikzpicture}
```

The four vignette parts are drawn inside a TikZ scope environment which takes the given \langle style \rangle as option.

```
\begin{tikzpicture}
  \tcbvignette{scope={transparency group,opacity=0.25}}
\end{tikzpicture}
```

Creates a raised frame impression by setting the four style options /tcb/vig/north style→P.297, /tcb/vig/south style→P.297, /tcb/vig/east style→P.297, and /tcb/vig/west style to darkened and lightened variations of the given \langle color \rangle.

```
\begin{tikzpicture}
  \tcbvignette{raised color=blue}
\end{tikzpicture}
```

Creates a lowered frame impression by setting the four style options /tcb/vig/north style→P.297, /tcb/vig/south style→P.297, /tcb/vig/east style→P.297, and /tcb/vig/west style to darkened and lightened variations of the given \langle color \rangle.

```
\begin{tikzpicture}
  \tcbvignette{lowered color=green!75!black}
\end{tikzpicture}
```

Sets the four style options /tcb/vig/north style→P.297, /tcb/vig/south style→P.297, /tcb/vig/east style→P.297, and /tcb/vig/west style such that the color shades from the \langle inner \rangle color to the \langle outer \rangle color.

```
\begin{tikzpicture}
  \tcbvignette{color from=red to blue!50}
\end{tikzpicture}
```

Sets the base color for /tcb/vig/raised color, /tcb/vig/lowered color, /tcb/finish fading vignette→P.305. Typically, this value has not to be set directly.
Especially, if shadings or fadings are used, the drawn vignette graphs are displayed sometimes not as perfect as expected. Glitches and imperfections are very dependent on the previewer software. The `/tcb/vig/draw method` intends to give a choice of alternative drawing methods.

- **direct**: The vignette parts are drawn/filled by using a single TikZ graph. This is the preferred (and default) method for solid color graphs.
- **clipped**: The vignette parts are drawn somewhat oversized and are clipped to the intended region. In combination with shadings and fadings this seems to give a better/different optical result (depends on the previewer).

\begin{tikzpicture}
\tcbvignette[color from=red to yellow]
\end{tikzpicture}

\begin{tikzpicture}
\tcbvignette[color from=red to yellow, draw method=clipped]
\end{tikzpicture}

This option is a stopgap and may be changed or preferably removed in future.

### 15.4 Generic Fading Settings

The `fadings` library of `tikz`\(^2\) is loaded automatically by the `vignette` library. Amongst others, the fadings `west`, `east`, `north`, and `south` are defined inside the `fadings` library.

The `vignette` library adds some more fadings called `semi west`, `semi east`, `semi north`, and `semi south`. These fadings are much *weaker* than the normal fadings.

\begin{tikzpicture}
\fill [black!20] (0,0) rectangle (1,1);
\path [pattern=checkerboard, pattern color=black!30] (0,0) rectangle (1,1);
\fill [path fading=semi west, blue] (0,0) rectangle (1,1);
\end{tikzpicture}

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Comparison of the Fadings</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>west</td>
<td>east</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>north</td>
<td>south</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>semi west</td>
<td>semi east</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>semi north</td>
<td>semi south</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
/tcb/vig/fade in={⟨style⟩}  (style, default white)

Sets the four style options /tcb/vig/north style → P.297, /tcb/vig/south style → P.297, /tcb/vig/east style → P.297, and /tcb/vig/west style → P.298 such that the paths fade from outside to inside.

\begin{tikzpicture}
\fill [black!20] (-0.5,-0.5) rectangle (1.5,1.5);
\path [pattern=checkerboard,pattern color=black!30]
(-0.5,-0.5) rectangle (1.5,1.5);
\tcbvignette{fade in=blue}
\end{tikzpicture}

/tcb/vig/fade out={⟨style⟩}  (style, default white)

Sets the four style options /tcb/vig/north style → P.297, /tcb/vig/south style → P.297, /tcb/vig/east style → P.297, and /tcb/vig/west style → P.298 such that the paths fade from inside to outside.

\begin{tikzpicture}
\fill [black!20] (-0.5,-0.5) rectangle (1.5,1.5);
\path [pattern=checkerboard,pattern color=black!30]
(-0.5,-0.5) rectangle (1.5,1.5);
\tcbvignette{fade out=blue}
\end{tikzpicture}

/tcb/vig/semi fade in={⟨style⟩}  (style, default white)

Sets the four style options /tcb/vig/north style → P.297, /tcb/vig/south style → P.297, /tcb/vig/east style → P.297, and /tcb/vig/west style → P.298 such that the paths fade weak from outside to inside.

\begin{tikzpicture}
\fill [black!20] (-0.5,-0.5) rectangle (1.5,1.5);
\path [pattern=checkerboard,pattern color=black!30]
(-0.5,-0.5) rectangle (1.5,1.5);
\tcbvignette{semi fade in=blue}
\end{tikzpicture}

/tcb/vig/semi fade out={⟨style⟩}  (style, default white)

Sets the four style options /tcb/vig/north style → P.297, /tcb/vig/south style → P.297, /tcb/vig/east style → P.297, and /tcb/vig/west style → P.298 such that the paths fade weak from inside to outside.

\begin{tikzpicture}
\fill [black!20] (-0.5,-0.5) rectangle (1.5,1.5);
\path [pattern=checkerboard,pattern color=black!30]
(-0.5,-0.5) rectangle (1.5,1.5);
\tcbvignette{semi fade out=blue}
\end{tikzpicture}
It is possible to assign different fadings for each side of the vignette, if needed. Therefore, the fadings have to be applied individually with the four style options `/tcb/vig/north style` → P.297, `/tcb/vig/south style` → P.297, `/tcb/vig/east style` → P.297, and `/tcb/vig/west style` → P.298.

\begin{tikzpicture}
\fill [black!20] (-0.5,-0.5) rectangle (1.5,1.5);
\path [pattern=checkerboard,pattern color=black!30]
(-0.5,-0.5) rectangle (1.5,1.5);
\tcbvignette{
  north style={blue,path fading=south},
  east style ={blue,path fading=semi west},
  south style={blue,path fading=semi north},
  west style ={blue,path fading=east}
}
\end{tikzpicture}

\begin{tikzpicture}
\fill [black!20] (-0.5,-0.5) rectangle (1.5,1.5);
\path [pattern=checkerboard,pattern color=black!30]
(-0.5,-0.5) rectangle (1.5,1.5);
\tcbvignette{
  north style={blue,path fading=west},
  east style ={blue,path fading=south},
  south style={red,path fading=east},
  west style ={red,path fading=north}
}
\end{tikzpicture}
15.5 Vignette as Underlay

\tcb/underlay\vignette={(options)} (style, no default)

This puts a \tcbvignette{\vignette} with the given \vignette\options as \tcb/underlay\vignette to a \tcolorbox\vignette. The dimensions of the \vignette\ are matched to the dimensions of the \tcolorbox\vignette. For example, \tcb/leftrule\vignette\size is used as \tcb/vig/west size \tcbvignette\vignette\size. Also, \tcb/colframe\vignette\size is used as \tcb/vig/raised color \tcbvignette\vignette\size.

For a \tcb/breakable\tcolorbox, the \vignette\ is also been broken. Alternatively, \tcbvignette\vignette\size could be used directly inside an \tcb/underlay\vignette\size with appropriate settings.

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,size=small,sharp corners,  
  colback=green!10,colframe=green!50!black,  
  boxrule=2mm,titlerule=0mm,  
  title=My title,center title,fonttitle=\bfseries,  
  underlay vignette]  
  This is a tcolorbox.  
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,size=small,arc=0pt,  
  colback=blue!10,colframe=blue,boxrule=2mm,  
  underlay vignette={size=1.5mm}]  
  This is a tcolorbox.  
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,size=small,sharp corners,  
  colframe=red,interior hidden,boxrule=2mm,  
  colupper=white,center upper,fontupper=\bfseries,  
  underlay vignette]  
  This is a tcolorbox.  
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,size=small,sharp corners,  
  colback=red!50!yellow,frame hidden,boxrule=2mm,  
  underlay vignette={color from=red!50!yellow to white,  
  draw method=clipped,size=2.1mm}]  
  This is a tcolorbox.  
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,sharp corners,colour=red!10,colour=red]  
  \vignette\{Test\}  
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,sharp corners,colour=red!10,colour=red,  
  underlay vignette]  
  \vignette\{Test\}  
\end{tcolorbox}
This is a special style derived from \texttt{/tcb/underlay vignette} \textsuperscript{→} P.302, where the frame color is shaded to create a soft raised frame impression.

\begin{tcolorbox}
[enhanced,sharp corners, 
  colback=green!10, 
  colframe=green!50!black, 
  size=small,boxrule=2mm,titlerule=0mm, 
  title=My title,center title,fonttitle=\bfseries, 
  underlay raised shading vignette] 
  This is a tcolorbox. 
\end{tcolorbox}

This style gives a similar effect as \texttt{/tcb/underlay raised shading vignette}, but a path fading is used here. Different optical impression are very previewer-dependent.

\begin{tcolorbox}
[enhanced,sharp corners, 
  colback=green!10, 
  colframe=green!50!black, 
  size=small,boxrule=2mm,titlerule=0mm, 
  title=My title,center title,fonttitle=\bfseries, 
  underlay raised fading vignette] 
  This is a tcolorbox. 
\end{tcolorbox}

This is a special style derived from \texttt{/tcb/underlay vignette} \textsuperscript{→} P.302, where the frame color is shaded into the interior color.

\begin{tcolorbox}
[enhanced,sharp corners,frame hidden, 
  colback=green!10, 
  colframe=green!50!black, 
  size=small,boxrule=2mm,titlerule=0mm, 
  underlay shade in vignette] 
  This is a tcolorbox. 
\end{tcolorbox}
15.6 Vignette as Finish

This puts a \texttt{\textbackslash tcbvignette} with the given \texttt{(options)} as \texttt{/tcb/finish} to a \texttt{tcolorbox}. The default style settings create a raised frame impression by drawing black and white color parts with reduced opacity.

\begin{tcolorbox}[
  enhanced, size=small, 
  colback=green!10, colframe=green!50!black, 
  boxrule=0.5mm, titlerule=0mm, 
  title=My title, center title, fonttitle=\textbf{series}, 
  finish vignette={size=1mm}] 
  This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}

\tcbincludegraphics[blankest, width=3cm, 
  finish vignette={size=3mm}]{pink_marble.png}

This puts a \texttt{\textbackslash tcbvignette} with the given \texttt{(options)} as \texttt{/tcb/finish} to a \texttt{tcolorbox}. The default style settings create a soft raised frame impression by drawing fading black and white color parts.

\begin{tcolorbox}[
  enhanced, size=small, 
  colback=green!10, colframe=green!50!black, 
  boxrule=0.5mm, titlerule=0mm, 
  title=My title, center title, fonttitle=\textbf{series}, 
  finish raised fading vignette={size=1mm}] 
  This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}

\tcbincludegraphics[blankest, width=3cm, 
  finish raised fading vignette={size=3mm}]{pink_marble.png}
This puts a `\tcbvignette` with the given \textit{options} as `\tcb/finish` to a `\tcolorbox`. The default style settings fade the box into white from inside to outside. Note that `/tcb/vig/over node` is used here. `/tcb/vig/over node offset` can be adapted to overlap the box more or less. The fade color can be set using `/tcb/vig/base color`.

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,size=small, colback=green!10,colframe=green!50!black, boxrule=0.5mm,titlerule=0mm, title=My title,center title,fonttitle=\bfseries, finish fading vignette={size=2mm}]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[colback=blue!50!black,size=small, title=Example]
\tcbincludegraphics[blankest,width=3cm, finish fading vignette={size=3mm}]{pink_marble.png}
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[colback=blue!50!black,size=small, title=Example]
\tcbincludegraphics[blankest, finish fading vignette={base color=blue!50!black,size=3mm, over node offset=0.2mm}]{pink_marble.png}
\end{tcolorbox}
The library is loaded by a package option or inside the preamble by:

```latex
\tcbuselibrary{raster}
```

### 16.1 Concept of Rasters

A *raster* is used to align several colored boxes in a regular way. It can be seen as a far related counterpart to the `matrix` construct of TikZ, but it differs in many aspects.

In principle, `tcolorbox`es are arranged in rows and columns when put inside a `tcbraster` environment. The boxes are fluently added to the raster like adding text to a paragraph. Especially, line/row breaks are done automatically and one cannot end a line/row ahead of schedule. Further, a *raster* is not restricted to a single page but may break into an arbitrary series of pages.


16.2 Macros of the Library

\begin{tcbraster}\[options\] \\langle environment content \rangle \end{tcbraster}

A raster arranges enclosed boxes in a regular way, mainly into rows and columns. The \langle options \rangle are used to control the raster parameters and to set the properties for the enclosed boxes.

- The raster is only allowed to contain a series of \texttt{tcolorbox} environments or derived constructs. With some small restrictions, boxes created with \texttt{tcboxfit} can also be added. Boxes created with \texttt{tcbox} are not reasonable here, but may be used to a certain degree.
- Do not add anything else between the boxes inside the raster with exception of whitespace. Especially, do not use \texttt{\backslash\backslash} or \texttt{\backslash\backslash\par} to end a row; row breaks are done automatically.
- The boxes inside a raster are numbered automatically. \texttt{\thetcbrasternum} may be used inside a box to access this number. The \LaTeX\ counter \texttt{tcbrastercolumn} holds the current column, the counter \texttt{tcbrasterrow} holds the current row, and the counter \texttt{tcbrasternum} holds the current box number.

\begin{tcbraster}[raster columns=3, raster equal height, size=small,colframe=red!50!black,colback=red!10!white,colbacktitle=red!50!white, title={Box \thetcbrasternum}]
\begin{tcolorbox}First box\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}Second box\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}This is a box with a second line\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}Another box\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}A box again\end{tcolorbox}
\end{tcbraster}

\begin{tcbraster}
\begin{tcolorbox}First box\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}Second box\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}This is a box with a second line\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}Another box\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}A box again\end{tcolorbox}
\end{tcbraster}

Box # 1  Box # 2  Box # 3
First box  Second box  This is a box with a second line

Box # 4  Box # 5
Another box  A box again

Box # 1  Box # 2  Box # 3
First box  Second box  This is a box with a second line

Box # 4  Box # 5
This is a box with a second line  Another box
This is a special case of a `tcbraster` \(\rightarrow\) P.309 with the given (options).

- Here, the enclosed boxes are created using \texttt{\textbackslash tcbitem}.
- There has to be at least one \texttt{\textbackslash tcbitem}.
- One cannot use anything else than \texttt{\textbackslash tcbitem} to add something to the \textit{raster}.

This leads to a very compact syntax.

\begin{tcbitemize}[raster columns=2, raster equal height=rows, size=small,colframe=red!50!black,colback=red!10!white,colbacktitle=red!50!white, title={Box \# \texttt{\textbackslash thetcbrasternum}}]
  \tcbitem First box
  \tcbitem Second box
  \tcbitem This is a box\ with a second line
  \tcbitem[\texttt{colback=yellow,\textbackslash colbacktitle=yellow!50!black}] Another box
  \tcbitem A box again
\end{tcbitemize}

Box # 1
First box

Box # 2
Second box

Box # 3
This is a box
with a second line

Box # 4
Another box

Box # 5
A box again

\begin{tcbitemize}
\tcbitemize has more restrictions than \texttt{tcbraster}\(\rightarrow\) P.309. Especially, the \texttt{/tcb/capture} \(\rightarrow\) P.108 mode has to be \texttt{minipage}. For example, \texttt{/tcb/fit} \(\rightarrow\) P.457 cannot be used safely. If \texttt{/tcb/fit} \(\rightarrow\) P.457 should be used, turn over to \texttt{tcbraster} \(\rightarrow\) P.309.

\end{tcbitemize}

\begin{tcbitemize}[\texttt{options}]
  \tcbitem Used inside \texttt{tcbitemize} to create a new \texttt{tcolorbox} \(\rightarrow\) P.12 with the given (options).
This is a convenience environment which combines a \texttt{tcolorbox}\textsuperscript{P.12} with an embedded \texttt{tcbraster}\textsuperscript{P.309}. The \texttt{\{box options\}} are given to the outer \texttt{tcolorbox}\textsuperscript{P.12}, while the \texttt{\{raster options\}} are given to the embedded \texttt{tcbraster}\textsuperscript{P.309}. This environment is especially useful for rasters inside rasters.

\begin{tcboxedraster}
\[raster columns=3, raster equal height, 
size=small, colframe=red!50!black, colback=red!10!white, colbacktitle=red!50!white, 
title={Box \# \texttt{tcbrasternum}}\]
\{colback=yellow!10, fonttitle=\bfseries, title=Boxed Raster\}
\begin{tcolorbox}First box\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}Second box\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}This is a box with a second line\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}Another box\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}A box again\end{tcolorbox}
\end{tcboxedraster}

\begin{tcbraster}
\[raster columns=2, raster equal height, 
raster every box/.style={size=small, colframe=red!50!black, colback=red!10!white, 
valign=center, halign=center}\]
\begin{tcolorbox}One\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}Two\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcboxedraster}{blankest}
\begin{tcolorbox}Three\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}Four\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}Five\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}Six\end{tcolorbox}
\end{tcboxedraster}
\begin{tcolorbox}Seven\end{tcolorbox}
\end{tcbraster}
This is a convenience environment which combines a `\tcolorbox`\textsuperscript{P.12} with an embedded `\tcbitemize`\textsuperscript{P.310}. The \textit{(box options)} are given to the outer `\tcolorbox`, while the \textit{(raster options)} are given to the embedded `\tcbitemize`. This environment is especially useful for rasters inside rasters.

\begin{tcboxeditemize}[(raster options)]\{\langle box options\rangle\}
\begin{tcboxeditemize}
\begin{tcboxitemize}
\item First box
\item Second box
\item This is a box with a second line
\item Another box
\item A box again
\end{tcboxitemize}
\end{tcboxeditemize}
\end{tcboxeditemize}
16.3 Option Keys of the Library

\texttt{/tcb/raster columns=\langle number\rangle} \hspace{1cm} (no default, initially 2)

Sets the \langle number\rangle of columns for a \textit{raster}.

\begin{tcbitemize}
raster columns=3, \itemize\itemize\itemize\itemize
\item One
\item Two
\item Three
\item Four
\end{tcbitemize}

\begin{tcbitemize}
raster columns=4, \itemize\itemize\itemize\itemize
\item One
\item Two
\item Three
\item Four
\end{tcbitemize}

\texttt{/tcb/raster rows=\langle number\rangle} \hspace{1cm} (no default, initially 2)

Sets the \langle number\rangle of rows for a \textit{raster}. Note that this is only relevant in connection with setting \texttt{/tcb/raster height} \textsuperscript{P.315} to a value greater than 0pt. Then, it defines the number of rows \textit{per} given height.

\texttt{/tcb/raster width=\langle length\rangle} \hspace{1cm} (no default, initially \texttt{\linewidth})

Sets the total raster width to the given \langle length\rangle. \texttt{/tcb/raster left skip} \textsuperscript{P.316} and \texttt{/tcb/raster right skip} \textsuperscript{P.316} are part of the total width. Note that both skip values are not changed by this option.

\begin{tcbitemize}
raster width=\texttt{\linewidth}/2, \itemize\itemize\itemize\itemize
\item One
\item Two
\item Three
\item Four
\end{tcbitemize}
/tcb/raster width flush left=⟨length⟩ (style, no default)

Sets the total /tcb/raster width \textsuperscript{P.313} to \texttt{\textbackslash linewidth} and adapts /tcb/raster left skip \textsuperscript{P.316} and /tcb/raster right skip \textsuperscript{P.316} to place the raster on the left hand side with a visual width of the given \texttt{⟨length⟩}.

\begin{tcbitemize}[raster width flush left=\texttt{\textbackslash linewidth}/2, size=small,colframe=red!50!black,colback=red!10!white]
  \tcbitem One
  \tcbitem Two
  \tcbitem Three
  \tcbitem Four
\end{tcbitemize}

Note that the results of /tcb/raster width \textsuperscript{P.313} and /tcb/raster width flush left look identical, but differ on technical side since the later always fills the available \texttt{\textbackslash linewidth}.

/tcb/raster width center=⟨length⟩ (style, no default)

Sets the total /tcb/raster width \textsuperscript{P.313} to \texttt{\textbackslash linewidth} and adapts /tcb/raster left skip \textsuperscript{P.316} and /tcb/raster right skip \textsuperscript{P.316} to center the raster with a visual width of the given \texttt{⟨length⟩}.

\begin{tcbitemize}[raster width center=\texttt{\textbackslash linewidth}/2, size=small,colframe=red!50!black,colback=red!10!white]
  \tcbitem One
  \tcbitem Two
  \tcbitem Three
  \tcbitem Four
\end{tcbitemize}

/tcb/raster width flush right=⟨length⟩ (style, no default)

Sets the total /tcb/raster width \textsuperscript{P.313} to \texttt{\textbackslash linewidth} and adapts /tcb/raster left skip \textsuperscript{P.316} and /tcb/raster right skip \textsuperscript{P.316} to place the raster on the right hand side with a visual width of the given \texttt{⟨length⟩}.

\begin{tcbitemize}[raster width flush right=\texttt{\textbackslash linewidth}/2, size=small,colframe=red!50!black,colback=red!10!white]
  \tcbitem One
  \tcbitem Two
  \tcbitem Three
  \tcbitem Four
\end{tcbitemize}
/tcb/raster height=(length)  
(no default, initially 0pt)

Sets the raster height per /tcb/raster rows → P.313 to the given ⟨length⟩. This forces an appropriate height for the enclosed boxes. /tcb/raster before skip and /tcb/raster after skip are not part of this calculation. If the ⟨length⟩ is set to 0pt, this feature is deactivated.

\begin{tcbitemize}[raster height=4cm, raster rows=2,  
size=small,colframe=red!50!black,colback=red!10!white]  
\tcbitem One  
\tcbitem Two  
\tcbitem[enhanced,  
\hspace{15mm}finish=\draw[blue,very thick,<->] (frame.south)  
\hspace{15mm}-- node[right, pos=.75] {4cm} +(0,4); ]  
\hspace{15mm}Three  
\tcbitem Four  
\tcbitem Five  
\end{tcbitemize}

\begin{tcbitemize}
\item One \item Two \item Three \item Four \item Five
\end{tcbitemize}

/tcb/raster before skip=(glue)  
(no default, initially 2mm)

Space of the given ⟨glue⟩ is inserted vertically before the raster. This space is discardable.

/tcb/raster after skip=(glue)  
(no default, initially 2mm)

Space of the given ⟨glue⟩ is inserted vertically after the raster. This space is discardable.

/tcb/raster equal skip=(length)  
(style, no default)

Shortcut to set /tcb/raster before skip, /tcb/raster after skip, /tcb/raster column skip → P.316, and /tcb/raster row skip → P.316 to the same ⟨length⟩ value.

\begin{tcbitemize}[raster equal skip=4mm,  
size=small,colframe=red!50!black,colback=red!10!white]  
\tcbitem One  
\tcbitem Two  
\tcbitem Three  
\tcbitem Four  
\end{tcbitemize}

\begin{tcbitemize}
\item One \item Two \item Three \item Four
\end{tcbitemize}

315
/tcb/raster left skip = (\texttt{length})
(no default, initially 0pt)
Space of the given $\langle$\texttt{length}$\rangle$ is inserted horizontally left of the \texttt{raster}.

\begin{tcbitemize}[raster left skip=2cm, size=small,colframe=red!50!black,colback=red!10!white]
\tcbitem One
\tcbitem Two
\tcbitem Three
\tcbitem Four
\end{tcbitemize}

/tcb/raster right skip = (\texttt{length})
(no default, initially 0pt)
Space of the given $\langle$\texttt{length}$\rangle$ is inserted horizontally right of the \texttt{raster}.

\begin{tcbitemize}[raster right skip=2cm, size=small,colframe=red!50!black,colback=red!10!white]
\tcbitem One
\tcbitem Two
\tcbitem Three
\tcbitem Four
\end{tcbitemize}

/tcb/raster column skip = (\texttt{length})
(no default, initially 2mm)
Space of the given $\langle$\texttt{length}$\rangle$ is inserted horizontally between the columns.

\begin{tcbitemize}[raster column skip=2cm, size=small,colframe=red!50!black,colback=red!10!white]
\tcbitem One
\tcbitem Two
\tcbitem Three
\tcbitem Four
\end{tcbitemize}

/tcb/raster row skip = (\texttt{length})
(no default, initially 2mm)
Space of the given $\langle$\texttt{length}$\rangle$ is inserted vertically between the rows.

\begin{tcbitemize}[raster row skip=0pt, size=small,colframe=red!50!black,colback=red!10!white]
\tcbitem One
\tcbitem Two
\tcbitem Three
\tcbitem Four
\end{tcbitemize}
/tcb/raster halign=(alignment)  (no default, initially left)

Defines the horizontal alignment for the boxes of the rows of a raster, if these rows are not completely filled (mainly: the last one).

Feasible values for \langle alignment \rangle are:
- \textbf{left}: align to the left side,
- \textbf{center}: align to the center,
- \textbf{right}: align to the right side.

\begin{tcbitemize}[raster halign=center, size=small,colframe=red!50!black,colback=red!10!white]
\tcbitem One
\tcbitem Two
\tcbitem Three
\end{tcbitemize}

/tcb/raster valign=(alignment)  (no default, initially center)

Defines the vertical alignment for the boxes of a row, if the boxes do not have equal height. This sets the /tcb/box align ~P.94 option.

Feasible values for \langle alignment \rangle are:
- \textbf{top}: align to the top side,
- \textbf{center}: align to the center,
- \textbf{bottom}: align to the bottom side.

\begin{tcbitemize}[raster valign=top, raster columns=3, size=small,colframe=red!50!black,colback=red!10!white]
\tcbitem \Huge One
\tcbitem \Large Two
\tcbitem Three
\end{tcbitemize}

\begin{tcbitemize}[raster valign=center, raster columns=3, size=small,colframe=blue!50!black,colback=blue!10!white]
\tcbitem \Huge One
\tcbitem \Large Two
\tcbitem Three
\end{tcbitemize}

\begin{tcbitemize}[raster valign=bottom, raster columns=3, size=small,colframe=green!50!black,colback=green!10!white]
\tcbitem \Huge One
\tcbitem \Large Two
\tcbitem Three
\end{tcbitemize}
/tcb/raster equal height = \langle \text{type} \rangle  

(default all, initially none)

Puts the enclosed boxes into a common /tcb/equal height group\(^{P.67}\). The \langle \text{id} \rangle of the equal height group is chosen automatically, but it may be set manually by /tcb/raster equal height group. Also see /tcb/minimum for current equal height group\(^{P.68}\).

Feasible values for \langle \text{type} \rangle are:

- none: no equal height setting,
- rows: all boxes in a row are set to equal height,
- all: all boxes in the raster are set to equal height.

Note that you have to compile twice to see changes.

\begin{tcbitemize}
  \[ \text{raster equal height=rows,} \\
  \text{size=small,colframe=red!50!black,colback=red!10!white} \]
  \text{\textit{One}} \\
  \text{\textit{Huge Two}} \\
  \text{Three} \\
  \text{Four} \\
\end{tcbitemize}

\begin{tcbitemize}
  \[ \text{raster equal height,} \\
  \text{size=small,colframe=red!50!black,colback=red!10!white} \]
  \text{\textit{One}} \\
  \text{\textit{Huge Two}} \\
  \text{Three} \\
  \text{Four} \\
\end{tcbitemize}

\begin{tcbitemize}
  \text{\textit{One}} \\
  \text{\textit{Two}} \\
  \text{Three} \\
  \text{Four} \\
\end{tcbitemize}

\begin{tcbitemize}
  \[ \text{raster equal height group=raster-manual-id} \]
  \text{\textit{One}} \\
  \text{\textit{Huge Two}} \\
\end{tcbitemize}

\begin{tcbitemize}
  \[ \text{raster equal height group=raster-manual-id} \]
  \text{\textit{One}} \\
  \text{\textit{Two}} \\
\end{tcbitemize}

\begin{tcbitemize}
  \text{\textit{One}} \\
  \text{\textit{Two}} \\
\end{tcbitemize}

\begin{tcbitemize}
  \[ \text{equal height group=raster-manual-id} \]
  \text{A single box} \\
\end{tcbitemize}

\begin{tcbitemize}
  \[ \text{raster equal height=raster equal height group=raster-manual-id} \]
  \text{\textit{One}} \\
  \text{\textit{Huge Two}} \\
\end{tcbitemize}

\begin{tcbitemize}
  \text{\textit{One}} \\
  \text{\textit{Two}} \\
\end{tcbitemize}

318
/tcb/raster force size=true|false  (default true, initially true)

Enforces the raster size computations onto the enclosed boxes. If set to false, individual settings can be used (for the better or worse).

\begin{tcbitemize}[raster force size=false, raster halign=center, size=small,colframe=red!50!black,colback=red!10!white]
  \tcbitem One
  \tcbitem Two
  \tcbitem[add to width=-3cm] Three
  \tcbitem[add to width=-3cm] Four
  \tcbitem[add to width=-3cm] Five
  \tcbitem[add to width=3cm] Six
\end{tcbitemize}

/tcb/raster reset  (no value)

Sets all raster settings back to their default values. Note that /tcb/reset \textsuperscript{P.122} does not execute this option. Style settings like /tcb/raster odd column etc. are not touched by /tcb/raster reset.

16.4 Adding Styles for Specific Boxes

The following styles can be defined to address certain boxes inside a raster. Note that such style definitions are not removed by /tcb/reset \textsuperscript{P.122} or /tcb/raster reset. The style definitions are used in the order given below.

/tcb/raster every box  (style)

This style is used for every box.

/tcb/raster odd column  (style)

This style is used for every box in an odd column.

/\begin{tcbitemize}[size=small,colframe=red!50!black,colback=red!10!white, raster odd column/.style={colframe=blue!50!black,colback=blue!10!white}]
  \tcbitem One
  \tcbitem Two
  \tcbitem Three
  \tcbitem Four
\end{tcbitemize}

/tcb/raster even column  (style)

This style is used for every box in an even column.

/tcb/raster column n  (style)

This style is used for every box in the n-th column. n has to be replaced by a number.

/tcb/raster odd row  (style)

This style is used for every box in an odd row.
### tcb/raster even row
This style is used for every box in an even row.

```latex
\begin{tcbitemize}[size=small,colframe=red!50!black,colback=red!10!white, raster row 2/.style={colframe=blue!50!black,colback=blue!10!white}]
  \tcbitem One
  \tcbitem Two
  \tcbitem Three
  \tcbitem Four
\end{tcbitemize}
```

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>One</th>
<th>Two</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Three</td>
<td>Four</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### tcb/raster row m
This style is used for every box in the m-th row. m has to be replaced by a number.

```latex
\begin{tcbitemize}[size=small,colframe=red!50!black,colback=red!10!white, raster row m/.style={colframe=blue!50!black,colback=blue!10!white}]
  \tcbitem One
  \tcbitem Two
  \tcbitem Three
  \tcbitem Four
\end{tcbitemize}
```

### tcb/raster odd number
This style is used for every box with an odd number.

```latex
\begin{tcbitemize}[size=small,colframe=red!50!black,colback=red!10!white, raster odd number/.style={colframe=blue!50!black,colback=blue!10!white}]
  \tcbitem One
  \tcbitem Two
  \tcbitem Three
  \tcbitem Four
\end{tcbitemize}
```

### tcb/raster even number
This style is used for every box with an even number.

```latex
\begin{tcbitemize}[size=small,colframe=red!50!black,colback=red!10!white, raster even number/.style={colframe=blue!50!black,colback=blue!10!white}]
  \tcbitem One
  \tcbitem Two
  \tcbitem Three
  \tcbitem Four
\end{tcbitemize}
```

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>One</th>
<th>Two</th>
<th>Three</th>
<th>Four</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Four</td>
<td>Five</td>
<td>Six</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### tcb/raster row m column n
This style is used for the box in the m-th row and n-th column. m and n have to be replaced by numbers.

```latex
\begin{tcbitemize}[size=small,colframe=red!50!black,colback=red!10!white, raster row m column n/.style={colframe=blue!50!black,colback=blue!10!white}]
  \tcbitem One
  \tcbitem Two
  \tcbitem Three
  \tcbitem Four
\end{tcbitemize}
```

### tcb/raster number n
This style is used for the box with number n. n has to be replaced by a number.

```latex
\begin{tcbitemize}[size=small,colframe=red!50!black,colback=red!10!white, raster number n/.style={colframe=blue!50!black,colback=blue!10!white}]
  \tcbitem One
  \tcbitem Two
  \tcbitem Three
  \tcbitem Four
\end{tcbitemize}
```

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>One</th>
<th>Two</th>
<th>Three</th>
<th>Four</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Three</td>
<td>Four</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

320
16.5 Combining Columns or Rows

\texttt{/tcb/raster\ multicolumn=\langle number\rangle} (no default, initially unset)

This option has to be set inside the option list of a \texttt{tcolorbox} \textit{P.12} inside a \texttt{tcbraster} \textit{P.309} or inside \texttt{\tcbitem \textit{P.310} inside \tcbitemize \textit{P.310}}. It merges the given \langle number\rangle of boxes into one single box on the same line. The resulting box gets the \texttt{\the\tcbbrasternum} of the first box. If there are not enough boxes available on the current line, this option is ignored and a warning is given.

\begin{tcbitemize}
\begin{itemize}
  \item \texttt{\tcbitem \texttt{\colframe=blue!50!black,\colback=blue!10!white,\tcbmulticolumn=1}}
  \item \texttt{\tcbitem \tcbitem \tcbitem \tcbitem \tcbitem \tcbitem \tcbitem \tcbitem \tcbitem \tcbitem \tcbitem \tcbitem \tcbitem \tcbitem \tcbitem \tcbitem \tcbitem \tcbitem \tcbitem \tcbitem}
\end{itemize}
\end{tcbitemize}
/tcb/raster multirow=(number) (no default, initially unset)

This option has to be set inside the option list of a \texttt{tcolorbox} \textsuperscript{P.12} inside a \texttt{tcbraster} \textsuperscript{P.309} or inside \texttt{\tcitem} \textsuperscript{P.310} inside \texttt{tcbitemize} \textsuperscript{P.310}. This option not really merges boxes, but simply sizes the current box to fit the space of \texttt{\langle number\rangle} rows.

/tcb/raster multirow needs /tcb/raster height \textsuperscript{P.315} to be set. How to achieve a similar result for boxes without fixed /tcb/raster height \textsuperscript{P.315} is shown afterwards.

\begin{tcbitemize}[raster rows=3,raster columns=3,raster height=6cm, raster every box/.style={colframe=red!50!black,colback=red!10!white}]
  \tcitem
  \tcitem
  \tcitem
  \tcitem
  \tcitem[colframe=blue!50!black,colback=blue!10!white,raster multirow=2]
  \tcitem
  \tcitem[\begin{tcbitemize}[raster rows=2,raster columns=2,raster height=\text{\tcb\textwidth}]
    \tcitem
    \tcitem
    \tcitem
    \tcitem
  \end{tcbitemize}]
\end{tcbitemize}

\begin{tcbitemize}[raster multicolumn=2,raster multirow=2,blankest]
  \begin{tcbitemize}[raster rows=2,raster columns=2,raster height=\text{\tcb\textwidth}]
    \tcitem
    \tcitem
    \tcitem
    \tcitem
  \end{tcbitemize}
\end{tcbitemize}
For rasters without fixed \texttt{raster height} \textsuperscript{P.315}, \texttt{raster multirow} \textsuperscript{P.322} cannot be used. Note that \texttt{tcbtextheight} \textsuperscript{P.170} also cannot be used like in the previous example.

But, with combination of \texttt{raster equal height} \textsuperscript{P.318} and \texttt{space to} \textsuperscript{P.65}, a similar effect can be created:

\begin{tcbitemize}[
\texttt{raster columns}=3,\texttt{raster equal height}=\texttt{rows},
\texttt{raster every box}/.style={\texttt{colframe}=red!50!black,\texttt{colback}=red!10!white}]
\tcbitem
\tcbitem
\tcbitem[\texttt{colframe}=blue!50!black,\texttt{colback}=blue!10!white]
\lipsum[2]
\tcbitem[\texttt{raster multicolumn}=2,\texttt{blankest},\texttt{space to}=\texttt{myspace}]
\begin{tcbitemize}
\texttt{raster columns}=2
\tcbitem
\tcbitem[\texttt{height}=\texttt{myspace}]
\tcbitem[\texttt{height}=\texttt{myspace}]
\end{tcbitemize}
\end{tcbitemize}
16.6 Rasters inside Rasters

A raster inside a raster cannot be used directly, because a raster can only contain a \texttt{tcolorbox} or something derived from a \texttt{tcolorbox}. So, a raster can be put inside a \texttt{tcolorbox} inside a raster.

Some examples for such constructions can be found at \texttt{tcboxedraster} \textsuperscript{125}, /\texttt{tcb/raster multicolumn} \textsuperscript{126}, /\texttt{tcb/raster multirow} \textsuperscript{127}.

### 16.6.1 Raster Setup

The intermediating \texttt{tcolorbox} \textsuperscript{128} can be made invisible by using /\texttt{tcb/blankest} \textsuperscript{129}.

```
\begin{tcbraster}[raster equal height=rows,
   raster every box/.style={colframe=red!50!black,colback=red!10!white}]
   \begin{tcolorbox}[blankest]
      \begin{tcbraster}[raster columns=1]
         \begin{tcolorbox}One\end{tcolorbox}
         \begin{tcolorbox}Two\end{tcolorbox}
      \end{tcbraster}
   \end{tcolorbox}
   \begin{tcolorbox}raster+tcolorbox+raster\end{tcolorbox}
\end{tcbraster}
```

```
\begin{tcbraster}[raster equal height=rows,
   raster every box/.style={colframe=red!50!black,colback=red!10!white}]
   \begin{tcboxedraster}[raster columns=1]{blankest}
      \begin{tcolorbox}One\end{tcolorbox}
      \begin{tcolorbox}Two\end{tcolorbox}
   \end{tcboxedraster}
   \begin{tcolorbox}raster+tcboxedraster\end{tcolorbox}
\end{tcbraster}
```

```
\begin{tcbraster}[raster equal height=rows,
   raster every box/.style={colframe=red!50!black,colback=red!10!white}]
   \begin{tcbitemize}[raster equal height=rows,
   \begin{tcbitemize}[raster columns=1]
      \tcbitem One
      \tcbitem Two
   \end{tcbitemize}
   \tcbitem tcbitemize+tcbitem+tcbitemize
```

```
\begin{tcbraster}[raster equal height=rows,
   raster every box/.style={colframe=red!50!black,colback=red!10!white}]
   \begin{tcbitemize}[raster columns=1]
      \tcitem One
      \tcitem Two
   \end{tcbitemize}
   \tcitem tcbitemize+tcbitem+tcbitemize
```

One Two raster+tcolorbox+raster

One Two raster+tcboxedraster

One Two tcbitemize+tcbitem+tcbitemize
16.6.2 Placing Spaces

If the heights of boxes inside staggered rasters should be matched, the space has to be distributed accordingly.

- For fixed height boxes/rasters using \texttt{/tcb/raster height}→P.315, the height of boxes is available by \texttt{\tcbtextheight}→P.170. This can be used to size deeper layered boxes/rasters.

- For boxes/rasters laid out using \texttt{/tcb/raster equal height}→P.318, space can be distributed by \texttt{/tcb/space to}→P.65. It can take several compilations until all spaces are distributed correctly.

\begin{tcbitemize}[raster rows=2,raster height=6cm,\raster every box/.style={colframe=red!50!black,colback=red!10!white}]
\item[\blankest] \begin{tcbitemize}[raster columns=1,raster rows=2,raster height=\texttt{\tcbtextheight}]
  \item One
  \item Two
\end{tcbitemize}
\item This is a fixed height box.
\item Three
\item Four
\end{tcbitemize}
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Box</th>
<th>Box</th>
<th>Box</th>
<th>Box</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>One</td>
<td>Two</td>
<td>Three</td>
<td>Four</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Twelve</td>
<td>Eleven</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Five</td>
<td>Six</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ten</td>
<td>Nine</td>
<td>Eight</td>
<td>Seven</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

This is an example with fixed height boxes.
One

This box will adapt its height.

17 Libraries \texttt{listings}, \texttt{listingsutf8}, and \texttt{minted}

17.1 Loading the Libraries

In contrast to other \texttt{tcolorbox} libraries, the libraries \texttt{listings}, \texttt{listingsutf8}, and \texttt{minted} are concurrent in the sense that they all do the same thing, i.e. displaying listings with or without typesetting the listing in \LaTeX parallel. The difference is the underlying \LaTeX package which does the core job for displaying a listing. So, typically, you need just one of these libraries. If you do not have a clue which one of them you should use and you are using \texttt{pdflatex}, you should take \texttt{listingsutf8}. If you are using \texttt{xelatex} or \texttt{lualatex}, you should take \texttt{listings} as \texttt{xelatex} and \texttt{lualatex} are not compatible with \texttt{listingsutf8}.

The order in which the libraries are included influences the default settings and the \texttt{/tcb/reset} behavior. The settings of a later loaded library overwrite the settings of a previous loaded library. A library is never loaded twice.

17.1.1 Loading \texttt{listings}

This library uses the package \texttt{listings} \cite{6} to typeset listings. It is loaded by a package option or inside the preamble by:

\begin{verbatim}
\tcbuselibrary{listings}
\end{verbatim}

This also loads the package \texttt{listings} \cite{6}.

The \texttt{/tcb/listing engine} \cite{344} is set to \texttt{listings} by the library. To reactivate this setting, if overwritten by other libraries, use

\begin{verbatim}
\tcbset{listing engine=listings}
\end{verbatim}

17.1.2 Loading \texttt{listingsutf8}

This library is not needed (and troublesome) when using \texttt{XeLaTeX} or \texttt{LuaLaTeX}. Therefore, loading this library is automatically replaced by loading \texttt{listings} only, if \texttt{pdflatex} is not used.

To extend \texttt{listings} for UTF-8 encoded sources, you can use the support from the package \texttt{listingsutf8} \cite{10} by loading the library variant \texttt{listingsutf8}.

\begin{verbatim}
\tcbuselibrary{listingsutf8}
\tcbset{listing utf8=latin1}% optional; 'latin1' is the default.
\end{verbatim}

This also loads the library \texttt{listings} and the packages \texttt{listings} \cite{6} and \texttt{listingsutf8} \cite{10}.

The \texttt{/tcb/listing engine} \cite{344} is set to \texttt{listings} by the library. To reactivate this setting, if overwritten by other libraries, use

\begin{verbatim}
\tcbset{listing engine=listings}
\end{verbatim}
17.1.3 Loading \minted

This library uses the package \minted{13} to typeset listings. It is loaded by a package option or inside the preamble by:

\begin{tcblisting}{\langle options\rangle}
\langle environment content \rangle
\end{tcblisting}

This also loads the package \minted{13}.

The \minted{} package uses the external tool \Pygments{15} to apply syntax highlighting. It has to be installed and set up, before the library can be used, see \cite{13} and \cite{15}. The \tcolorbox{12} library \minted{} does not work, if the package \minted{13} does not work.

The /tcb/listing engine {P.344} is set to \minted{} by the library. To reactivate this setting, if overwritten by other libraries, use

\\begin{tcbset}{\langle options\rangle}
\langle environment content \rangle
\end{tcbset}

17.2 Common Macros of the Libraries

\begin{tcblisting}{\langle options\rangle}
\langle environment content \rangle
\end{tcblisting}

Creates a colored box based on a \tcolorbox{12}. Controlled by the given \langle options\rangle, the environment content is typeset normally and/or as a listing. Furthermore, the \langle options\rangle control appearance and functions of the \tcolorbox{12}. By default, the listing is interpreted as a \LaTeX{} listing.

\begin{tcblisting}{\langle options\rangle}
\langle environment content \rangle
\end{tcblisting}

This is a \LaTeX{} example which displays the text as source code and in compiled form.

This is a \LaTeX{} example which displays the text as source code and in compiled form.
\begin{tcboutputlisting}
\begin{environment content} \end{environment content} \end{tcboutputlisting}

Saves the environment content to a file which is named by the key value of \texttt{/tcb/listing file} → P.344. Later, this file can be loaded by \texttt{tcbinputlisting} or \texttt{tcbuselistingtext} or \texttt{tcbuselistinglisting}.

\begin{tcboutputlisting}
This \textbf{text} is written to a standardized file for later usage. \end{tcboutputlisting}

\texttt{tcbinputlisting\{(options)\}}

Creates a colored boxed based on a \texttt{tcolorbox} → P.12. The text content is read from a file named by the key value of \texttt{/tcb/listing file} → P.344. Apart from that, the function is equal to that of \texttt{tcblisting} → P.330.

\begin{tcbinputlisting}
\texttt{\{}\texttt{colback=red!5\!white, colframe=red!75\!black, text only}\texttt{}}
\begin{tcbinputlisting}
\texttt{\{}\texttt{colback=green!5, colframe=green!75\!black, listing only}\texttt{}}

\begin{tcbinputlisting}
\begin{tikzpicture}
\fill[red] (0,0) rectangle (1,1);
\end{tikzpicture}
\end{tcbinputlisting}

\texttt{tcbuselistingtext}

Loads text from a file named by the key value of \texttt{/tcb/listing file} → P.344.

\begin{tcbuselistingtext}

\end{tcbuselistingtext}

\texttt{tcbuselistinglisting}

Typesets text as listing from a file named by the key value of \texttt{/tcb/listing file} → P.344.

\begin{tcbuselistinglisting}
\begin{tikzpicture}
\fill[red] (0,0) rectangle (1,1);
\end{tikzpicture}
\end{tcbuselistinglisting}

\texttt{tcbusetemplisting}

Typesets text as listing from a temporary file which was written by \texttt{tcbwritetemp} → P.147.

\begin{tcbusetemplisting}
\begin{tikzpicture}
\fill[red] (0,0) rectangle (1,1);
\end{tikzpicture}
\end{tcbusetemplisting}
17.3 Producing tcblisting Environments

\newtcblisting[(init options)]{(name)}{(number)}{(default)}{(options)}

Creates a new environment (name) based on \texttt{tcblisting}. Basically, \texttt{\newtcblisting} operates like \texttt{\newenvironment}. This means, the new environment (name) optionally takes (number) arguments, where (default) is the default value for the optional first argument. The (options) are given to the underlying \texttt{tcblisting}. Note that \texttt{/tcb/savedelimiter} is set to the given (name) automatically. The (init options) allow setting up automatic numbering, see Section 5 from page 127.

\begin{verbatim}
\newtcblisting{mybox}{\%
 colback=red!5!white,
 colframe=red!75!black}
\begin{mybox}
This is my \LaTeX\ box.
\end{mybox}
\newtcblisting{mybox}[1]{\%
 colback=red!5!white,
 colframe=red!75!black,
 fonttitle=\bfseries,
 title={#1}}
\begin{mybox}{Listing Box}
This is my \LaTeX\ box.
\end{mybox}
\newtcblisting{mybox}[2][]{\%
 colback=red!5!white,
 colframe=red!75!black,
 fonttitle=\bfseries,
 title={#2},#1}
\begin{mybox}[listing only]
{Listing Box}
This is my \LaTeX\ box.
\end{mybox}
\begin{mybox}[listing side text]
{Listing Box}
This is my \LaTeX\ box.
\end{mybox}\\
\end{verbatim}
Definition in the preamble:
\newtcblisting{auto counter}{mybox}[1]{%
colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries,
title=Listing \thetcbcounter: #1}

\begin{mycbox}{Listing Box}
This is my \LaTeX\ box.
\end{mycbox}

\renewtcblisting{⟨init options⟩}{⟨name⟩}{⟨number⟩}{⟨default⟩}{⟨options⟩}
Operates like \newtcblisting → P.333, but based on \renewenvironment instead of \newenvironment. An existing environment is redefined.
\NewTCBListing[(init options)]{⟨name⟩}{⟨specification⟩}{⟨options⟩}

Creates a new environment ⟨name⟩ based on \texttt{tcblisting} \textsuperscript{-P.330}.

Basically, \texttt{\textbackslash NewTCBListing} operates like \texttt{\textbackslash NewDocumentEnvironment}. This means, the new environment ⟨name⟩ is constructed with the given argument ⟨specification⟩. An error is issued if ⟨name⟩ has already been defined. The ⟨options⟩ are given to the underlying \texttt{tcblisting} \textsuperscript{-P.330}.

Note that \texttt{/tcb/savedelimiter} \textsuperscript{-P.32} is set to the given ⟨name⟩ automatically.

The ⟨init options⟩ allow setting up automatic numbering, see Section 5 from page 127.

\RenewTCBListing[(init options)]{⟨name⟩}{⟨specification⟩}{⟨options⟩}

Operates like \texttt{\textbackslash NewTCBListing}, but based on \texttt{\textbackslash RenewDocumentEnvironment} instead of \texttt{\textbackslash NewDocumentEnvironment}. An existing environment is redefined.

\ProvideTCBListing[(init options)]{⟨name⟩}{⟨specification⟩}{⟨options⟩}

Operates like \texttt{\textbackslash NewTCBListing}, but based on \texttt{\textbackslash ProvideDocumentEnvironment} instead of \texttt{\textbackslash NewDocumentEnvironment}. The environment ⟨name⟩ is only created if it is not already defined.

\DeclareTCBListing[(init options)]{⟨name⟩}{⟨specification⟩}{⟨options⟩}

Operates like \texttt{\textbackslash NewTCBListing}, but based on \texttt{\textbackslash DeclareDocumentEnvironment} instead of \texttt{\textbackslash NewDocumentEnvironment}. The new environment is always created, irrespective of an already existing environment with the same name.

\begin{mybox}{Listing Box}
This is my \LaTeX\ box.
\end{mybox}
\bigskip
\begin{mybox}{Listing Box}
This is my \LaTeX\ box.
\end{mybox}
\bigskip
\begin{mybox}[colback=yellow]
Listing Box
This is my \LaTeX\ box.
\end{mybox}
With date of 2018-05-12, the *xparse* package changed the argument collection process (now part of the LaTeX kernel). Spaces are ignored which leads to a serious change for listing environments ending with an optional argument like \texttt{O{}}. The former behavior of respecting spaces can be preserved by adding a «!». Note that the following code uses \texttt{!O{}} now.

- For older *xparse* versions, the following code is correct when using \texttt{O{}}.
- For *xparse* of 2018-05-12, only the first two examples of the following code using \texttt{O{}} are really «good» – all others do not work.
- For *xparse* of 2018-05-12 and later, the following code is correct when using \texttt{!O{}}.

Caveats of using an environment ending with an optional argument

\begin{verbatim}
\DeclareTCBListing{mybox}{ !O{} }{listing only,#1}
\begin{mybox}[colframe=red]
good
\end{mybox}
\begin{mybox}[colframe=red]\good\end{mybox}
\begin{mybox}
good
\end{mybox}
\begin{mybox} \good\end{mybox}
\begin{mybox} \bad!\end{mybox}
\begin{mybox}
[\good]
\end{mybox}
\begin{mybox} [\good]\end{mybox}
\begin{mybox}[\bad!]\end{mybox}
\end{verbatim}
17.4 Producing \textbf{\texttt{\textbackslash{newtcbinputlisting}}} Commands

\texttt{\textbackslash{newtcbinputlisting}}\[\langle \texttt{init options} \rangle\]{{\langle \texttt{name} \rangle}}\[\langle \texttt{number} \rangle\]{{\langle \texttt{default} \rangle}}\{\langle \texttt{options} \rangle\}

Creates a new macro \langle \texttt{name} \rangle based on \texttt{\textbackslash{tcbinputlisting}} \textsuperscript{P.332}. Basically, \texttt{\textbackslash{newtcbinputlisting}} operates like \texttt{\textbackslash{newcommand}}. The new macro \langle \texttt{name} \rangle optionally takes \langle \texttt{number} \rangle arguments, where \langle \texttt{default} \rangle is the default value for the optional first argument. The \langle \texttt{options} \rangle are given to the underlying \texttt{\textbackslash{tcbinputlisting}} \textsuperscript{P.332}. The \langle \texttt{init options} \rangle allow setting up automatic numbering, see Section 5 from page 127.

\begin{itemize}
  \item \texttt{\textbackslash{newtcbinputlisting}}\[\texttt{use counter from=mycbox}\]{{\langle \texttt{mylisting} \rangle}}\[\langle \texttt{2} \rangle\]\{\%
    \texttt{listing file=\#2},
    \texttt{title=Listing (\thetcbcounter) of \texttt{\#2}},
    \texttt{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=bfseries},
    \texttt{listing only,breakable,\#1}
  \}

  \texttt{\textbackslash{mylisting}}\{before upper=\textit{This is the included file content:}\}
    \{\texttt{\jobname.tcbtemp}\}

\end{itemize}

Listing (2) of \texttt{tcolorbox.tcbtemp}

This is the included file content:

\begin{itemize}
  \item \texttt{\textbackslash{newtcbinputlisting}}\[\texttt{use counter from=mycbox}\]{{\langle \texttt{mylisting} \rangle}}\[\langle \texttt{2} \rangle\]\{\%
    \texttt{listing file=\#2},
    \texttt{title=Listing (\thetcbcounter) of \texttt{\#2}},
    \texttt{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=bfseries},
    \texttt{listing only,breakable,\#1}
  \}

  \texttt{\textbackslash{mylisting}}\{before upper=\textit{This is the included file content:}\}
    \{\texttt{\jobname.tcbtemp}\}

\end{itemize}

Listing (3) of \texttt{tcolorbox.tcbtemp}

This is the included file content:

\begin{itemize}
  \item \texttt{\textbackslash{newtcbinputlisting}}\[\texttt{use counter from=mycbox}\]{{\langle \texttt{mylisting} \rangle}}\[\langle \texttt{2} \rangle\]\{\%
    \texttt{listing engine=minted,minted language=latex,minted style=colorful,}
    \texttt{listing file=\#2},
    \texttt{title=Listing (\thetcbcounter) of \texttt{\#2}},
    \texttt{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=bfseries},
    \texttt{listing only,breakable,\#1}
  \}

  \texttt{\textbackslash{mylisting}}\{before upper=\textit{This is the included file content:}\}
    \{\texttt{\jobname.tcbtemp}\}

\end{itemize}

\texttt{\textbackslash{renewtcbinputlisting}}\[\langle \texttt{init options} \rangle\]{{\langle \texttt{name} \rangle}}\[\langle \texttt{number} \rangle\]{{\langle \texttt{default} \rangle}}\{\langle \texttt{options} \rangle\}

Operates like \texttt{\textbackslash{newtcbinputlisting}}, but based on \texttt{\textbackslash{renewcommand}} instead of \texttt{\textbackslash{newcommand}}. An existing macro is redefined.
\NewTCBInputListing[(init options)]\{(name)\}{(specification)\}{(options)\

Creates a new command \(\text{name}\) based on \texttt{tcbinputlisting} \textsuperscript{P.332}. Basically, \texttt{\NewTCBInputListing} operates like \texttt{\NewDocumentCommand}. This means, the new command \(\text{name}\) is constructed with the given argument \(\text{specification}\). An error is issued if \(\text{name}\) has already been defined. The \(\text{options}\) are given to the underlying \texttt{tcbinputlisting} \textsuperscript{P.332}. The \(\text{init options}\) allow setting up automatic numbering, see Section 5 from page 127.

\begin{lstlisting}[language=tex]
\% counter from previous example
\NewTCBInputListing[use counter from=pabox]{\mylisting}{ \{0\} 0\{red\} m }{%
listing file={#3},title=Listing:\thetcbcounter,
colback=#2!5!white,colframe=#2!50!black,colbacktitle=#2!75!black,
fonttitle=\bfseries,listing only,#1}
\mylisting[before upper=\textit{This is the included file content:}]{\jobname.tcbtemp}
\end{lstlisting}

\begin{lstlisting}[language=tex]
Listing 17.1
This is the included file content:
% counter from previous example
\NewTCBInputListing[use counter from=pabox]{\mylisting}{ \{0\} 0\{red\} m }{%
listing file={#3},title=Listing:\thetcbcounter,
colback=#2!5!white,colframe=#2!50!black,colbacktitle=#2!75!black,
fonttitle=\bfseries,listing only,#1}
\mylisting[before upper=\textit{This is the included file content:}]{\jobname.tcbtemp}
\end{lstlisting}

\RenewTCBInputListing[(init options)]\{(name)\}{(specification)\}{(options)\

Operates like \texttt{\NewTCBInputListing}, but based on \texttt{\RenewDocumentCommand} instead of \texttt{\NewDocumentCommand}. An existing command is redefined.

\ProvideTCBInputListing[(init options)]\{(name)\}{(specification)\}{(options)\

Operates like \texttt{\NewTCBInputListing}, but based on \texttt{\ProvideDocumentCommand} instead of \texttt{\NewDocumentCommand}. The command \(\text{name}\) is only created if it is not already defined.

\DeclareTCBInputListing[(init options)]\{(name)\}{(specification)\}{(options)\

Operates like \texttt{\NewTCBInputListing}, but based on \texttt{\DeclareDocumentCommand} instead of \texttt{\NewDocumentCommand}. The new command is always created, irrespective of an already existing command with the same name.
17.5 Option Keys of the \textcolor{red}{listings} Library

\texttt{/tcb/listing options}=\texttt{(key list)} \hspace{1cm} (no default, initially \texttt{style=tcblatex})

Sets the options from the package \texttt{listings} [6] which are used during typesetting of the listing. For \LaTeX\ listings, there is a predefined \texttt{listings} style named \texttt{tcblatex} which can be used.

\begin{tcblisting}{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!25,left=6mm,listing options={style=tcblatex,numbers=left,numberstyle=\tiny\color{red!75!black}}}
This is a \LaTeX\ example which displays the text as source code and in compiled form. Additionally, we use line numbers here.
\end{tcblisting}

\texttt{/tcb/no listing options} \hspace{1cm} (no value, initially unset)

Abbreviation for \texttt{listing options=\{\}}. This removes all options for the \texttt{listings} package. This includes the \texttt{tcblisting} → P.330 standard style \texttt{tcblatex} and the encoding presets. Use this option, if you want to set the \texttt{listings} options outside of \texttt{tcblisting} → P.330, e.g. globally in the preamble.

\begin{tcblisting}{no listing options}
All \texttt{\textit{listings}} options removed.
\end{tcblisting}

\texttt{/tcb/listing style}=\texttt{(style)} \hspace{1cm} (no default, initially \texttt{tcblatex})

Abbreviation for \texttt{listing options=\{style=\ldots\}}. This key sets a \texttt{\langle style \rangle} for the \texttt{listings} package, see [6]. For \LaTeX, there is a predefined style named \texttt{tcblatex}.

\begin{tcblisting}{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,listing style=tcblatex}
Here, we use the predefined style.
\end{tcblisting}
/tcb/listing inputencoding\{encoding\}

Sets the input encoding value for the predefined listing style \tcblatex and \tcbdocumentation from the library \documentclass. The initial value is derived from the package \inputenc if used.

/tcb/listing remove caption=\text{true|false} \text{(default true, initially true)}

If set to \text{true}, some part of the caption building code of the listings package is silenced to prevent some unwanted interaction with the \hyperref package resulting in additional vertical space. If set to \text{false}, the listings package code is kept unchanged. Note that listings outside \text{tcblisting} \text{→ P.330} and \text{\tcbinputlisting} \text{→ P.332} are always processed normally. Typically, a user is not expected to use this key at all.

/tcb/every listing line=\langle text\rangle \text{(no default, initially unset/empty)}

Inserts some \langle text\rangle to the begin of every line of a listing. Note that this a hack of the listings package code. This may become unusable or superfluous in the future.

\newtcblisting{commandshell}{colback=black,colupper=white,colframe=yellow!75!black, listing only,listing options={style=tcblatex,language=sh}, every listing line={\textcolor{red}{\small \ttfamily \bfseries root \$> \}}}\begin{commandshell}\ls -al \cd /usr/lib\end{commandshell}

\text{root $> \ls -al}
\text{root $> \cd /usr/lib}

/tcb/every listing line*=\langle text\rangle \text{(no default, initially unset/empty)}

Identical to /tcb/every listing line plus additional enlargement of /tcb/rightupper \text{→ P.47} by the width of \langle text\rangle. Therefore, this option has to be used after the geometry settings are done. This option is intended to be used in conjunction with \tcb/hbox \text{→ P.108}.

\newtcblisting{commandshell}{colback=black,colupper=white,colframe=yellow!75!black, listing only,listing options={style=tcblatex,language=sh},hbox, every listing line*={\textcolor{red}{\small \ttfamily \bfseries root \$> \}}}\begin{commandshell}\ls -al \cd /usr/lib\end{commandshell}

\text{root $> \ls -al}
\text{root $> \cd /usr/lib}

See further options in Section 17.8 on page 344.

\textbf{For an combined example of using \lstinline inside a \tcolorbox \text{→ P.12}, see \DeclareTotalTCBox \text{→ P.22}.}
17.6 Option Keys of the Listingsutf8 Library

The listingsutf8 library is not needed (and troublesome) when using XeLaTeX or LuaLaTeX. Therefore, loading this library is automatically replaced by loading listings only, if pdflatex is not used.

The listingsutf8 library is an extension of the listings library, so all options from Section 17.5 on page 339 are applicable.

/tcb/listing utf8=(one-byte-encoding)  (style, no default, initially latin1)

Abbreviation for using /tcb/listing inputencoding \[P.340\] together with UTF-8 support from the package listingsutf8 [10]. This option is available only for the library variant listingsutf8. The (one-byte-encoding) is one of the applicable encodings from [10], e.g. latin1 which is the default.

Be aware that this means restriction to this specific (one-byte-encoding): e.g. latin1 comprises umlauts and other accented characters, but not the Euro sign. If you want to use the listings package and «real» UTF-8 source code, then do not use listingsutf8 but listings with /tcb/listing inputencoding \[P.340\]=utf8 and with specific manual hacks for specific UTF-8-encoded characters.

See further options in Section 17.8 on page 344.
17.7 Option Keys of the \minted Library

\minted{language}{programming language}{no default, initially latex}

Sets a \langle programming language \rangle known to Pygments [15].

\begin{tcblisting}{listing engine=minted,minted style=trac, minted language=java, colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,listing only}
public class HelloWorld {
    // A 'Hello World' in Java
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        System.out.println("Hello World!");
    }
}
\end{tcblisting}

public class HelloWorld {
    // A 'Hello World' in Java
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        System.out.println("Hello World!");
    }
}

\minted{language}{programming language}{no default, initially latex}

Sets the options from the package \texttt{minted} [13] which are used during typesetting of the listing. Also see /tcb/minted options app $^*$P.478 and /tcb/minted options pre $^*$P.478.

\begin{myjava}{listing engine=minted,minted style=colorful, minted language=java, minted options={fontsize=\small,breaklines,autogobble,linenos,numbersep=3mm}, colback=blue!5!white,colframe=blue!75!black,listing only, left=5mm,enhanced, overlay={\begin{tcbclipinterior}\fill[red!20!blue!20!white] (frame.south west) rectangle ([xshift=5mm]frame.north west);\end{tcbclipinterior}}}
public class HelloWorld {
    // A 'Hello World' in Java
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        System.out.println("Hello World!");
    }
}
\end{myjava}

\begin{myjava}
public class HelloWorld {
    // A 'Hello World' in Java
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        System.out.println("Hello World!");
    }
}
\end{myjava}
/tcb/default minted options={key list} (no default, initially \texttt{tabsize=2,\texttt{fontsize=\small, breaklines,autogobble}})

Sets the options from the package \texttt{minted} \cite{minted} which are used during typesetting of the listing, if \texttt{/tcb/minted options} \cite{minted} are not used. The intended use is inside the preamble to change the default behavior. Note that setting \texttt{/tcb/default minted options} also resets \texttt{/tcb/minted options} \cite{minted}. Since \texttt{minted} \cite{minted} v2.6 set \texttt{stripnl=false}, adding \texttt{stripnl} could be helpful to remove leading and trailing blank lines.

\begin{verbatim}
\% inside the preamble
\tcbset{%
  default minted options={tabsize=4,\texttt{fontsize=\normalsize}},
}
\end{verbatim}

/tcb/minted style=\texttt{(style)} (no default, initially unset)

Sets a \texttt{(style)} known to \texttt{Pygments} \cite{pygments}. This is independent from \texttt{/tcb/minted options} \cite{minted}. Note that styles are always applied globally; all following examples will be set in the given \texttt{(style)} until a new style is set. Also note that setting \texttt{\usemintedstyle{(style)}} only once per document is more economic, if all styles in a document are the same. For examples of different styles, see \texttt{/tcb/minted language} \cite{minted} and \texttt{/tcb/minted options} \cite{minted}.

See further options in Section 17.8 on the following page.
17.8 Common Option Keys of all Libraries

For the \{options\} in \texttt{tcblisting} \textsuperscript{P.330} respectively \texttt{tcbinputlisting} \textsuperscript{P.332} the following \texttt{pgf} keys can be applied. The key tree path /tcb/ is not to be used inside these macros.

\begin{itemize}
\item \texttt{/tcb/listing engine=⟨engine⟩} (no default)
  \begin{itemize}
  \item Sets the \{engine\} which typesets the listings. Feasible values are
    \begin{itemize}
    \item \texttt{listings}, if library \texttt{listings} or \texttt{listingsutf8} is loaded.
    \item \texttt{minted}, if library \texttt{minted} is loaded.
    \end{itemize}
  \end{itemize}
\item \texttt{/tcb/listing file=⟨file name⟩} (no default, initially \texttt{\jobname.listing})
  \begin{itemize}
  \item Sets the \{file name\} of the file which is used to save listings.
  \end{itemize}
\item \texttt{/tcb/listing and text} (no value, initially set)
  \begin{itemize}
  \item Typesets the environment content as listing in the upper part and as compiled text in the lower part.
  \end{itemize}
\item \texttt{/tcb/text and listing} (no value)
  \begin{itemize}
  \item Typesets the environment content as compiled text in the upper part and as listing in the lower part.
  \end{itemize}
\item \texttt{/tcb/listing only} (no value)
  \begin{itemize}
  \item Typesets the environment content as listing.
  \end{itemize}
\end{itemize}
/tcb/text only  (no value)

Typesets the environment content as compiled text.

\begin{tcblisting}{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,text only}
This is a \LaTeX\ example.
\end{tcblisting}

This is a \LaTeX\ example.

/tcb/comment=(text)  (no default, initially empty)

Records a comment with \langle text\rangle as content. The comment is displayed e.g. in conjunction with /tcb/listing and comment \rightarrow P.348 and /tcb/comment and listing \rightarrow P.348.

\begin{tcblisting}{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,comment={This comment is really only a comment},}
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcblisting}

This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.

This is a tcolorbox.

/tcb/comment only  (no value)

Typesets the environment content with the comment text.

\begin{tcblisting}{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,comment only,}
comment={This is a comment.},
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcblisting}

This is a comment.

/tcb/image comment={\langle options\rangle}{\langle filename\rangle}  (style, no default, initially unset)

Uses an image denoted by \langle filename\rangle as comment for the listing. The image is included by the standard \includegraphics macro with given \langle options\rangle.

\begin{tcblisting}{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,listing side comment,}
image comment={width=2.5cm}{example-image-a.pdf},center lower
This is a \LaTeX\ example.
\end{tcblisting}

This is a \LaTeX\ example.

A
\texttt{/tcb/tcbimage comment=\langle filename \rangle} \quad \text{(style, no default, initially unset)}

Uses an image denoted by \langle filename \rangle as \textit{comment} for the listing. The image is included by the \texttt{\textbackslash tcbincludegraphics} \textsuperscript{\textit{P. 281}} macro. The inclusion can be customized by \texttt{/tcb/comment style} \textsuperscript{\textit{P. 348}}.

\begin{tcblisting}{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,listing side comment, righthand width=3cm,lower separated=false, tcbimage comment=\langle example-image-a.pdf \rangle, comment style=\{size=fbox,colframe=blue,colback=blue!50,sharp corners, drop fuzzy shadow\}}

This is a \LaTeX\ example.

\end{tcblisting}

\% \texttt{\textbackslash tcbuselibrary\{skins\}}
\begin{tcblisting}\begin{tcblistering}\textbackslash colback=red!5!white,\textbackslash colframe=red!75!black,\textbackslash listing side comment,\textbackslash righthand width=3cm,\textbackslash lower separated=false,\texttt{\textbackslash tcbimage comment}={\texttt{\langle example-image-a.pdf \rangle}},\texttt{\textbackslash comment style}={\texttt{\{size=fbox,\textbackslash colframe=blue,\textbackslash colback=blue!50,\textbackslash sharp corners,\texttt{\textbackslash drop fuzzy shadow}\}}} 

This is a \LaTeX\ example.
\end{tcblistering}\end{tcblisting}

\begin{tcblisting}This is a \LaTeX\ example.\end{tcblisting}
The libraries \texttt{skins} and \texttt{raster} are needed to apply this option.

\begin{tcblisting}{
    colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,
    listing and comment,
    % \tcbuselibrary{skins,raster}
    righthand width=3cm,
    lower separated=false,middle=1mm,
    pdf comment={tcolorbox-example.pdf},
    comment style={raster columns=3,graphics pages={1,2,3},
    colframe=blue,drop fuzzy shadow}
}
This is a \LaTeX\ example.
\end{tcblisting}
/tcb/pdf extension=⟨extension⟩ (no default, initially pdf)

Sets the PDF file name extension for /tcb/pdf comment → P.347 to ⟨extension⟩. Note that ⟨extension⟩ always overwrites any actual extension given inside /tcb/pdf comment → P.347.

/tcb/comment style=⟨options⟩ (no default, initially empty)

Sets the ⟨options⟩ for /tcb/tcbiname comment → P.346 and /tcb/pdf comment → P.347. These are tcolorbox → P.12 options to customize the colored box drawn around the image(s), also image options encapsulated by /tcb/graphics options → P.284, and tcbraster → P.309 options for /tcb/pdf comment → P.347.

/tcb/listing and comment (no value)

Typesets the environment content as listing in the upper part and a given comment in the lower part.

\begin{tcblisting}{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,listing and comment, comment={This is my comment. It may contain line breaks.\par It can even use the environment content «This is a \TeX example.»}}
\end{tcblisting}

This is a \LaTeX\ example.

This is my comment. It may contain line breaks. It can even use the environment content «This is a \TeX example.»

/tcb/comment and listing (no value)

Typesets a given comment in the upper part and the environment content as listing in the lower part.

\begin{tcblisting}{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,comment and listing, comment={This is my comment.}}
\end{tcblisting}

This is a \LaTeX\ example.

This is my comment.
/tcb/listing side text

Typesets the environment content side by side as listing in the left (upper) part and as compiled text in the right (lower) part. This is a shortcut for setting /tcb/listing and text → P.344 and /tcb/sidebyside → P.137.

\begin{tcblisting}{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,listing side text}
This is a \LaTeX\ example.
\end{tcblisting}

This is a \LaTeX\ example. This is a \LaTeX\ example.

Note that sidebyside=false has to be added, if the setting of /tcb/listing side text is to be annihilated.

/tcb/text side listing

Typesets the environment content side by side as compiled text in the left (upper) part and as listing in the right (lower) part. This is a shortcut for setting /tcb/text and listing → P.344 and /tcb/sidebyside → P.137.

\begin{tcblisting}{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,text side listing}
This is a \LaTeX\ example.
\end{tcblisting}

This is a \LaTeX\ example. This is a \LaTeX\ example.

/tcb/listing outside text

Typesets the environment content side by side as listing in a tcolorbox → P.12 and as compiled text outside the box in the right part of the page. Nevertheless, the outside text is treated as lower part of the tcolorbox → P.12 and can be formatted with all lower part options. The space partitioning is done with the side by side options from Section 6 on page 137.

\begin{tcblisting}{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,listing outside text}
This is a \LaTeX\ example.
\end{tcblisting}

This is a \LaTeX\ example. This is a \LaTeX\ example.
Typesets the environment content side by side as listing in a `tcolorbox` \(^{\text{P.12}}\) and as compiled text outside the box in the left part of the page. Nevertheless, the outside text is treated as `lower` part of the `tcolorbox` \(^{\text{P.12}}\) and can be formatted with all lower part options. The space partitioning is done with the side by side options from Section 6 on page 137.

\begin{tcblisting}{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,\text outside listing}
This is a \LaTeX\ example.
\end{tcblisting}

This is a \LaTeX\ example.

**/tcb/listing side comment** \hspace{1cm} (style, no value)

Typesets the environment content side by side as listing in the left (upper) part and a given comment in the right (lower) part. This is a shortcut for setting `/tcb/listing` and `/tcb/comment \(^{\text{P.348}}\)` and `/tcb/sidebyside \(^{\text{P.137}}\)`.

\begin{tcblisting}{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,listing side comment, righthand width=1.5cm,image comment={width=1.5cm}{example-image-a.pdf}}
This is a \LaTeX\ example.
\end{tcblisting}

This is a \LaTeX\ example.

This is a \LaTeX\ example.

**/tcb/comment side listing** \hspace{1cm} (style, no value)

Typesets the environment content side by side with a given comment in the left (upper) part and as listing in the right (lower) part. This is a shortcut for setting `/tcb/comment` and `/tcb/listing \(^{\text{P.348}}\)` and `/tcb/sidebyside \(^{\text{P.137}}\)`.

\begin{tcblisting}{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,comment side listing, lefthand width=1.5cm,image comment={width=1.5cm}{example-image-a.pdf}}
This is a \LaTeX\ example.
\end{tcblisting}

This is a \LaTeX\ example.
Typesets the environment content side by side as listing in a `tcolorbox` and a given comment outside the box in the right part of the page. Nevertheless, the outside text is treated as `lower` part of the `tcolorbox` and can be formatted with all lower part options. The space partitioning is done with the side by side options from Section 6 on page 137.

```latex
\begin{tcblisting}{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,listing outside comment, righthand width=1.5cm,image comment={width=1.5cm}{example-image-a.pdf}}
This is a \LaTeX\ example.
\end{tcblisting}
```

This is a `\LaTeX\` example.

Typesets the environment content side by side as listing in a `tcolorbox` and a given comment outside the box in the left part of the page. Nevertheless, the outside text is treated as `lower` part of the `tcolorbox` and can be formatted with all lower part options. The space partitioning is done with the side by side options from Section 6 on page 137.

```latex
\begin{tcblisting}{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,comment outside listing, lefthand width=1.5cm,image comment={width=1.5cm}{example-image-a.pdf}}
This is a \LaTeX\ example.
\end{tcblisting}
```

This is a `\LaTeX\` example.

Typesets the environment content as listing in a `tcolorbox` and as compiled text outside and below the box. The outside text is treated as `lower` part of the `tcolorbox` and can be formatted with all lower part options. The distance between box and text is controlled by `/tcb/middle`.

```latex
\begin{tcblisting}{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,listing above text}
This is a \LaTeX\ example.
\end{tcblisting}
```

This is a `\LaTeX\` example.

Widely equal to `/tcb/listing above text`, but the outside text is not formatted with the lower part options. Also, it is not put into a minipage and it may span several pages. The distance between box and text is controlled by `/tcb/after`.

```latex
\begin{tcblisting}{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,listing above* text}
This is a \LaTeX\ example.
\end{tcblisting}
```

This is a `\LaTeX\` example.
/tcb/text above listing
Typesets the environment content as listing in a \texttt{tcolorbox}\(^{P.12}\) and as compiled text outside and above the box. The outside text is treated as \textit{lower} part of the \texttt{tcolorbox}\(^{P.12}\) and can be formatted with all lower part options. The distance between box and text is controlled by /tcb/middle\(^{P.49}\).

\begin{tcblisting}{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,text above listing}
\begin{verbatim}
This is a \LaTeX\ example.
\end{verbatim}
\end{tcblisting}

This is a \TeX\ example.

/tcb/text above* listing
Widely equal to /tcb/text above listing, but the outside text is not formatted with the lower part options. Also, it is not put into a minipage and it may span several pages. The distance between box and text is controlled by /tcb/before\(^{P.89}\).

\begin{tcblisting}{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,listing above comment,center lower,image comment={width=3cm}{example-image-a.pdf}}
\begin{verbatim}
This is a \LaTeX\ example.
\end{verbatim}
\end{tcblisting}

This is a \TeX\ example.

/tcb/listing above comment
Typesets the environment content as listing in a \texttt{tcolorbox}\(^{P.12}\) and a given comment outside and below the box. The outside text is treated as \textit{lower} part of the \texttt{tcolorbox}\(^{P.12}\) and can be formatted with all lower part options. The distance between box and comment is controlled by /tcb/middle\(^{P.49}\).

\begin{tcblisting}{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,listing above comment,center lower,image comment={width=3cm}{example-image-a.pdf}}
\begin{verbatim}
This is a \LaTeX\ example.
\end{verbatim}
\end{tcblisting}

This is a \TeX\ example.

/tcb/listing above* comment
Widely equal to /tcb/listing above comment, but the outside comment is not formatted with the lower part options. Also, it is not put into a minipage and it may span several pages. The distance between box and comment is controlled by /tcb/after\(^{P.89}\).

\begin{tcblisting}{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,listing above comment,center lower,image comment={width=3cm}{example-image-a.pdf}}
\begin{verbatim}
This is a \LaTeX\ example.
\end{verbatim}
\end{tcblisting}

This is a \TeX\ example.
\begin{tcblisting}{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,comment above listing, center lower,image comment={width=3cm}{example-image-a.pdf}}
This is a \LaTeX\ example.
\end{tcblisting}

This is a \LaTeX\ example.

\begin{tcblisting}{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,comment above listing, center lower,image comment={width=3cm}{example-image-a.pdf}}
This is a \LaTeX\ example.
\end{tcblisting}

Widely equal to /tcb/comment above listing, but the outside comment is not formatted with the lower part options. Also, it is not put into a minipage and it may span several pages. The distance between box and comment is controlled by /tcb/before^\textsuperscript{P.89}. 
17.9 Option Keys for Processing and Full Document Examples

A complete \LaTeX document including \texttt{\documentclass}, \texttt{\begin{document}} and \texttt{\end{document}} cannot be processed directly by \texttt{tcolorbox} \textsuperscript{P.12}. It always has to be compiled separately. There are two methods supported by the package to process and display such a full document example:

- Prepare and compile the example document independent from your main document. The source file and the resulting PDF file can be included into the main document afterwards. This is the most economic way since the example document can be left untouched after the example is complete.

- The other possibility is to compile the example on the fly while the main document is compiled. This way has some charm, because the example can be edited inside the main document. But be aware that the compilation of the example is issued on every run of the main document. Also, there are fewer degrees of freedom how the example is compiled.

For both methods, the resulting example PDF file can be included as a /tcb/pdf comment \textsuperscript{P.347}.

The following example shows how to apply the first method. There already is a file \texttt{tcolorbox-example.tex} and a PDF file \texttt{tcolorbox-example.pdf}. Both of them are input partly by the following:

```latex
\begin{tcolorbox}
My box.
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[colback=blue!5!white,colframe=blue!75!black,title=My title]
My box with my title.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

---

---
3.2 Theorem (Summation of Numbers):
For all natural number $n$ it holds:
\[
\sum_{i=1}^n i = \frac{n(n + 1)}{2}.
\]
Removes all processing commands if set before.

Add(s) \textit{⟨code⟩} which is executed during \texttt{\textbackslash tcbininputlisting} and \texttt{\textbackslash tcblisting}. At the time of executing the given \textit{⟨code⟩}, the listing is already written to \texttt{/tcb/listing file}, but the colored box is not constructed yet. Its intended use is to process the listing somehow before displaying. The processing result can be used inside a \texttt{\textbackslash tcb/comment}. Several \texttt{/tcb/process code} options can be given which are processed in the given order. Typically, \textit{⟨code⟩} is added by using the following styles \texttt{/tcb/run system command}, \texttt{/tcb/run pdflatex}, etc.

To use the further options, the compiler has to be called with the \texttt{-shell-escape} permission to authorize potentially dangerous system calls. Be warned that this is a security risk. Anyway, it’s more economic to compile examples independent from the main document and to include them as shown in the previous pages.

Runs a \textit{⟨system command⟩}, if the document is compiled with the \texttt{-shell-escape} permission. The current listing file can be accessed as \texttt{\jobname@area\jobname@base\jobname@ext}. This \textit{⟨system command⟩} is added to \texttt{/tcb/process code}.

The default \texttt{/tcb/listing file} setting cannot be used to compile a listing, since the base name equals the \texttt{\jobname} and the included PDF files should be unique. Therefore, to use \texttt{/tcb/run pdflatex} etc., the \texttt{/tcb/listing file} has to be set to a unique value. One may use \texttt{/tcb/compilable listing} for this purpose.

Issues a \texttt{pdflatex} compilation of the listing with the given \textit{⟨arguments⟩}.

- The main document has to be compiled with the \texttt{-shell-escape} permission.
- The \texttt{/tcb/listing file} has to be unique for the listing.
- If the listing has to be compiled twice, add \texttt{run pdflatex} two times to the option list.
\begin{block}{Hello World}
\begin{itemize}
\item One
\item Two
\end{itemize}
\end{block}

\begin{alertblock}{Integral}
\begin{equation}
\int_{1}^{x} \frac{1}{t} \, dt = \ln(x). \quad (1)
\end{equation}
\end{alertblock}
\begin{document}
\psset{unit=3}
\multido{\nHue=0.01+0.01}{100}{
\definecolor{MyColor}{hsb}{\nHue,1,1}
\pscircle[linewidth=0.01,linecolor=MyColor]{\nHue}}
\end{document}

PSTricks with pdflatex

\begin{document}
\psset{unit=3}
\multido{\nHue=0.01+0.01}{100}{
\definecolor{MyColor}{hsb}{\nHue,1,1}
\pscircle[linewidth=0.01,linecolor=MyColor]{\nHue}}
\end{document}
For most applications, you will like to add /tcb/freeze pdf as option, since the included pdf file is only refreshed, if the source for this file has changed.

/tcb/freeze file=(file)  (no default, initially unset)

Observes some ⟨file⟩, usually the final file produced by /tcb/process code →P.357, /tcb/run system command →P.357, /tcb/run pdflatex →P.357, etc. If the MD5 checksum of the current /tcb/listing file →P.344 is unchanged and ⟨file⟩ exists, the processing is skipped and the ⟨file⟩ is kept (frozen). Typically, the style /tcb/freeze pdf can be used for convenience.

/tcb/freeze none  (no default, initially set)

Freeze no file and always execute the given process commands.

/tcb/freeze extension=(text)  (style, no default)

Calls /tcb/freeze file with the current /tcb/listing file →P.344 stripped with its extension plus ⟨text⟩ as new extension.

... 
listing file=myfile.tex, freeze extension=-modified.pdf, % -> myfile-modified.pdf is observed ...

/tcb/freeze pdf  (no value)

Calls /tcb/freeze file with the current /tcb/listing file →P.344 stripped with its extension plus .pdf as new extension.

/tcb/freeze png  (no value)

Calls /tcb/freeze file with the current /tcb/listing file →P.344 stripped with its extension plus .png as new extension. See the examples for /tcb/run pdflatex →P.357 and /tcb/run ps2pdf →P.359.

/tcb/freeze jpg  (no value)

Calls /tcb/freeze file with the current /tcb/listing file →P.344 stripped with its extension plus .jpg as new extension.
17.10  Creation of \LaTeX\ Tutorials

The following source code gives a guideline for the creation of \LaTeX\ tutorials. In the next section, a framework for \LaTeX\ exercises is described. All examples shall be numbered optionally.

Firstly, some additional \texttt{tcb} keys are defined for the appearance. For the examples, three environments \texttt{texexp}, \texttt{texexptitled}, and \texttt{texexptitledspec} are defined with automatic numbering.

- \texttt{texexp} is used for untitled examples,
- \texttt{texexptitled} is used for titled examples,
- \texttt{texexptitledspec} is used for titled examples with special treatment.

\textit{Definition in the preamble:}

\begin{verbatim}
\tcbset{
  texexp/.style={colframe=red!50!yellow!50!black, colback=red!50!yellow!5!white, 
  coltitle=red!50!yellow!3!white, 
  fonttitle=\small\sffamily\bfseries, fontupper=\small, fontlower=\small, 
  example/.style 2 args={texexp, 
    title={Example \thetcbcounter: #1},label={#2}}, 
}
\newtcblisting{texexp}{[1]{texexp,#1}
\newtcblisting[auto counter,number within=section]{texexptitled}{[3][]{% 
  example=(#2)(#3),#1}
\newtcolorbox[use counter from=texexptitled]{texexptitledspec}{[3][]{% 
  example=(#2)(#3),#1}
\begin{tcblisting}{texexp}
This is a \LaTeX\ example which displays the text as source code 
and in compiled form.
\end{tcblisting}

This is a \LaTeX\ example which displays the text as source code 
and in compiled form.

This is a \LaTeX\ example which displays the text as source code and in compiled form.
\begin{texexptitled}{First example with a title line}{firstExample}
Here, we use Example \ref{firstExample} with a title line.
\end{texexptitled}

Example 17.1: First example with a title line

Here, we use Example \ref{firstExample} with a title line.

Here, we use Example 17.1 with a title line.
\end{verbatim}
This is a LaTeX example which displays the text as source code and in compiled form.

Here, we see Example 17.2.
The keys can be used in combination. Here, an example with a heading line and source code only is given.

Example 17.3: Another Example with a Heading

The keys can be used in combination. Here, an example with a heading line and source code only is given.

Example 17.4: A floating Example with a Heading

This is another \LaTeX\ example with numbered heading line. But now, the box is a floating object.

The floating box of the last example is seen as Example \ref{heading3} on page \pageref{heading3}.

Example 17.5: Special application

Some \LaTeX\ source code.

For special cases, the environment \texttt{tcolorbox} with style \texttt{example} can be used directly. As one can see, the upper and the lower part of the box can be used uncoupled also.

The following series of examples demonstrate the application of \texttt{tcolorbox}\textsuperscript{-p.12} options for diversification.
Example 17.6: How to use options (1):
The basic example

\begin{tikzpicture}
\path[fill=yellow!50!white] (0,0) circle (11mm);
\path[fill=white] (0,0) circle (9mm);
\foreach \w/\c in {90/red,210/green,330/blue}
{\path[shading=ball,ball color=\c] (\w:1cm) circle (7mm);}
\end{tikzpicture}

Example 17.7: How to use options (2):
The text output is centered and the segmentation line has vanished.

\begin{tikzpicture}
\path[fill=yellow!50!white] (0,0) circle (11mm);
\path[fill=white] (0,0) circle (9mm);
\foreach \w/\c in {90/red,210/green,330/blue}
{\path[shading=ball,ball color=\c] (\w:1cm) circle (7mm);}
\end{tikzpicture}
Example 17.8: How to use options (3):
Here, the \texttt{tikzpicture} is totally hidden. The \texttt{bicolor} skin highlights the output.

\begin{verbatim}
\path[fill=yellow!50!white] (0,0) circle (11mm);
\path[fill=white] (0,0) circle (9mm);
\foreach \w/\c in {90/red,210/green,330/blue}
{\path[shading=ball,ball color=\c] (\w:1cm) circle (7mm);}
\end{verbatim}

Example 17.9: How to use options (4):
The \texttt{bicolor} skin also works with side by side mode.

\begin{verbatim}
\begin{tikzpicture}
\path[fill=yellow!50!white] (0,0) circle (11mm);
\path[fill=white] (0,0) circle (9mm);
\foreach \w/\c in {90/red,210/green,330/blue}
{\path[shading=ball,ball color=\c] (\w:1cm) circle (7mm);}
\end{tikzpicture}
\end{verbatim}
Example 17.10: How to use options (5):
Putting our picture outside is just a matter of one word.

\begin{tikzpicture}
\path[fill=yellow!50!white] (0,0) circle (11mm);
\path[fill=white] (0,0) circle (9mm);
\foreach \w/\c in {90/red,210/green,330/blue}
{\path[shading=ball,ball color=\c]
 (\w:1cm) circle (7mm);}
\end{tikzpicture}

Example 17.11: How to use options (6):
The picture may also be put above the listing box.

\begin{tikzpicture}
\path[fill=yellow!50!white] (0,0) circle (11mm);
\path[fill=white] (0,0) circle (9mm);
\foreach \w/\c in {90/red,210/green,330/blue}
{\path[shading=ball,ball color=\c]
 (\w:1cm) circle (7mm);}
\end{tikzpicture}
Example 17.12: How to use options (7): Our style is easily transformed into a beamerish one.

\begin{tikzpicture}
\path[fill=yellow!50!white] (0,0) circle (11mm);
\path[fill=white] (0,0) circle (9mm);
\foreach \w/\c in {90/red,210/green,330/blue}
{\path[shading=ball,ball color=\c]
 (\w:1cm) circle (7mm);}
\end{tikzpicture}
17.11 Creation of \LaTeX\ Exercises

In the following, a guideline is given for the creation of \LaTeX\ exercises with solutions. These solutions are saved to disk for application at a place of choice. Therefore, all used exercises are logged to a file $\texttt{jobname.records}$ for automatic processing. The solution contents themselves are saved to a subdirectory named $\texttt{solutions}$. Also see Section 8 on page 150.

- Before the first exercise is given, $\texttt{tcbstartrecording}$ \textsuperscript{P.150} has to be called to start recording.

- The solution is given as content of a $\texttt{tcboutputlisting}$ \textsuperscript{P.332} environment. Note, that you can use this content also inside the exercise with $\texttt{tcbuselistingtext}$ \textsuperscript{P.332} in compiled form.

- After the last exercise is given (and before using the solutions), $\texttt{tcbstoprecording}$ \textsuperscript{P.150} has to be called to stop recording.

- The solutions are loaded by $\texttt{tcbinputrecords}$ \textsuperscript{P.150}.

Inside the exercise text, there may be text parts which are needed as \LaTeX\ source code and as compiled text as well. These parts can be saved by $\texttt{tcbwritetemp}$ \textsuperscript{P.147} and used in compiled form by $\texttt{tcbusetemp}$ \textsuperscript{P.147} or as source code by $\texttt{tcbusetemplisting}$ \textsuperscript{P.332}.

At first, we generate some a common style for the exercises and the solutions. Further, since exercises and solutions should be numbered, we force to use a label $\langle \textit{marker} \rangle$. Automatically, the label $\texttt{exe:}\langle \textit{marker} \rangle$ is used to mark the exercise and the label $\texttt{sol:}\langle \textit{marker} \rangle$ is used to mark the solution.

\begin{verbatim}
\tcset{texercisestyle/.style={arc=0.5mm, colframe=blue!25!yellow!90!white, colback=blue!25!yellow!5!white, coltitle=blue!25!yellow!40!black, fonttitle=\small\textbf, fontupper=\small, fontlower=\small, listing options={style=tcblatex,texcsstyle=\color{red!40!black}},}}
\end{verbatim}

With these preparations, the kernel environment $\texttt{texercise}$ for our exercises is created quickly:

\textcolor{red}{Definition in the preamble:}

\begin{verbatim}
\newtcolorbox[auto counter,number within=section,list inside=exam]{texercise}[2][]{%
texercisestyle, listing file={solutions/texercise/thetcbcounter.tex}, label={exe:#2}, record={\string\processsol{solutions/texercise/thetcbcounter.tex}{#2}}, title={Exercise \thetcbcounter \hfill Solution on page \pageref{sol:#2}}, list text={Exercise with solution on page \pageref{sol:#2}},#1}
\end{verbatim}
The following examples demonstrate the application.

\begin{exercise}{tabular_example}
\textit{Create the following table:}
\par\smallskip
\begin{tabular}{|p{3cm}|p{3cm}|p{3cm}|p{3cm}|}
\hline
\multicolumn{4}{|c|}{\bfseries\itshape Das alte Italien}\\
\hline
\multicolumn{2}{|c|}{\bfseries Antike} & \multicolumn{2}{c|}{\bfseries Mittelalter}\\
\multicolumn{1}{|c|}{\itshape Republik} & \multicolumn{1}{c|}{\itshape Kaiserreich} & \multicolumn{1}{c|}{\itshape Franken} & \multicolumn{1}{c|}{\itshape Teilstaaten}\\
\hline
In den Zeiten der römischen Republik standen dem Staat jeweils zwei Konsuln vor, deren Machtbefugnisse identisch waren. & Das römische Kaiserreich wurde von einem Alleinherrscher, dem Kaiser, regiert. & In der Völkerwanderungszeit übernahmen die Goten und später die Franken die Vorherrschaft. & Im späteren Mittelalter regierten Fürsten einen Fleckenteppich von Einzelstaaten.\\
\hline
\end{tabular}
\end{exercise}

Exercise 17.1

Create the following table:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Antike</th>
<th>Mittelalter</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Republik</td>
<td>Kaiserreich</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Create a new macro `\texttt{\textbackslash headingline}` which produces the following output:

\begin{tcbwritetemp}
\texttt{\textbackslash headingline}{\texttt{Very important heading}}
\end{tcbwritetemp}

Exercise 17.2

Create a new macro `\texttt{\textbackslash headingline}` which produces the following output:

\texttt{\textbackslash headingline}{\texttt{Very important heading}}

Very important heading

Create a new macro `\texttt{\textbackslash minitable}` which produces the following output:

\begin{tcbwritetemp}
\texttt{\textbackslash minitable}{\texttt{My heading}}{\texttt{In this tiny tabular, there is only a heading and some text below which has a width of ten centimeters.}}
\end{tcbwritetemp}

Exercise 17.3

Create a new macro `\texttt{\textbackslash minitable}` which produces the following output:

\begin{tcbwritetemp}
\texttt{\textbackslash minitable}{\texttt{My heading}}{\texttt{In this tiny tabular, there is only a heading and some text below which has a width of ten centimeters.}}
\end{tcbwritetemp}
Exercise 17.4

Create a new macro \verb+\synop+ which typesets a synoptic text according to the following example. Base your macro on a tabular which takes the total line width. \par \smallskip
\begin{tcbrunitetemp}
\synop{Neil Armstrong}%
{That's one small step for a man, one giant leap for mankind.}%
{Das ist ein kleiner Schritt für einen Mann, ein riesiger Sprung für die Menschheit.}
\end{tcbrunitetemp}
\tcbusetemplisting\par \smallskip
\tcbusetemp
\tcbstoprecording

Now, we give a list of all exercises with:

\begin{tclistof}{exam}{List of Exercises}
\label{listofexercises}
\end{tclistof}

17.12 List of Exercises

17.1 Exercise with solution on page 372 ........................................... 369
17.2 Exercise with solution on page 372 ........................................... 370
17.3 Exercise with solution on page 372 ........................................... 370
17.4 Exercise with solution on page 373 ........................................... 371
17.13 Solutions for the given \LaTeX\ Exercises

For all solutions, a macro \processsol was written to the file \jobname.records. Now, we need a definition for this macro to use the solutions.

\begin{verbatim}
% \usepackage{hyperref} \% for phantomblabel
\newtcbinputlisting{\processsol}[2]{% 
\textexercisestyle, 
listing only, 
listing file={#1}, 
phantomlabel={sol:#2},% 
title={Solution for Exercise \ref{exe:#2} on page \pageref{exe:#2}},
}
\end{verbatim}

The loading of all solutions is done by:

\tcbinputrecords

With this, we get:

Solution for Exercise 17.1 on page 369

\begin{verbatim}
\begin{tabular}{|p{3cm}|p{3cm}|p{3cm}|p{3cm}|}
\hline
\multicolumn{4}{|c|}{\bfseries\itshape Das alte Italien}\\
\hline
\multicolumn{2}{|c|}{\bfseries Antike} & \multicolumn{2}{c|}{\bfseries Mittelalter}\\
\hline
\multicolumn{1}{|c|}{\itshape Republik} & \multicolumn{1}{c|}{\itshape Kaiserreich} & \multicolumn{1}{c|}{\itshape Franken} & \multicolumn{1}{c|}{\itshape Teilstaaten}\\
\hline
In den Zeiten der römischen Republik standen dem Staat jeweils zwei Konsuln vor, deren Machtbefugnisse identisch waren. & Das römische Kaiserreich wurde von einem Alleinherrscher, dem Kaiser, regiert. & In der \textckf{V}ölkerverwanderungszeit \textckf{u}bernahmen die Goten und sp\textckf{a}ter die Franken die Vorherrschaft. & Im \textckf{s}p\textckf{a}teren Mittelalter regierten F\textckf{u}rsten einen Fleckenteppich von Einzelstaaten.\\
\end{tabular}
\end{verbatim}

Solution for Exercise 17.2 on page 370

\begin{verbatim}
\newcommand{\headingline}[1]{% 
\begin{center}\Large\bfseries #1\end{center}}
\end{verbatim}

Solution for Exercise 17.3 on page 370

\begin{verbatim}
\newcommand{\minitable}[2]{% 
\begin{center}\begin{tabular}{p{10cm}}\hline
\multicolumn{1}{c}{\bfseries#1}\\
\hline
#2\\
\hline\end{tabular}\end{center}}
\end{verbatim}
The library is loaded by a package option or inside the preamble by:

\tcbuselibrary{theorems}

This also loads the package {amsmath}.

Denis Bitouzé, Muzimuzhi, and many others provided very valuable input for this library.

18.1 Macros of the Library

\begin{NewTcbTheorem}[(init options)]{⟨name⟩}{⟨display name⟩}{⟨options⟩}{⟨prefix⟩}
\end{NewTcbTheorem}

\begin{NewTcbTheorem*}[(init options)]{⟨name⟩}{⟨display name⟩}{⟨options⟩}{⟨prefix⟩}
\end{NewTcbTheorem*}

Creates new environments ⟨name⟩ and ⟨name⟩* based on \texttt{tcolorbox} to frame a (mathematical) theorem. The ⟨display name⟩ is used in the title line with a number, e.g. «Theorem 5.1». The ⟨options⟩ are given to the underlying \texttt{tcolorbox} to control the appearance. The ⟨init options⟩ allow setting up automatic numbering, see Section 5 on page 127.

If ⟨name⟩ is chosen as \texttt{footheorem}, the new environments are described by

\begin{footheorem}[(keys)]{⟨short⟩}{⟨title⟩}{⟨marker⟩}
\end{footheorem}

\begin{footheorem*}[(keys)]{⟨title⟩}
\end{footheorem*}

Here, ⟨title⟩ is the title text for the theorem and is also set as \texttt{/tcb/nameref} \texttt{→} P.115 identifier. Optionally, the ⟨short⟩ title used instead as \texttt{/tcb/nameref} \texttt{→} P.115 identifier and in lists of theorems. ⟨keys⟩ supplement the ⟨options⟩ and may be used only in rare cases. The theorem is automatically labeled with ⟨prefix⟩⟨separator⟩⟨marker⟩ where ⟨separator⟩ is predefined as "":, see \texttt{/tcb/label separator} \texttt{→} P.382.

\begin{footheorem*}[(keys)]{⟨title⟩}
\end{footheorem*}

This represents an unnumbered variant. Again, ⟨title⟩ is the title text for the theorem and ⟨keys⟩ supplement the ⟨options⟩. This variant is not labeled and not listed in lists of theorems.

\NewTcbTheorem and \newtcbtheorem are identical and both rely on \texttt{\NewTColorBox} \texttt{→} P.16 based on \texttt{\NewDocumentCommand}. 

374
My Theorem 18.1: This is my title

This is the text of the theorem. The counter is automatically assigned and, in this example, prefixed with the section number. This theorem is numbered with 18.1, it is given on page 375, and it is titled «This is my title».

My Theorem 18.2: This my very long theorem title with too much words

Here we have a long and a short title. This theorem is numbered with 18.2, it is given on page 375, and it is titled «Concise title».

My Theorem 18.3: This is my title

The label parameter can be left empty without LaTeX error. Or you may use an own label to reference Theorem 18.3.

My Theorem 18.4

The title can also be left empty without problem. Note that the «:» vanished magically.
\begin{mytheo*}{Unnumbered Theorem}
This theorem is not numbered.
\end{mytheo*}

**My Theorem: Unnumbered Theorem**
This theorem is not numbered.

\begin{mytheo*}{}
This theorem has no number and no title.
\end{mytheo*}

**My Theorem**
This theorem has no number and no title.

To switch off the nameref feature permanently, add \texttt{nameref/.style={}} inside the \texttt{⟨options⟩} list.

\begin{itemize}
  \item \texttt{\RenewTcbTheorem[(init options)]{⟨name⟩}{⟨display name⟩}{⟨options⟩}{⟨prefix⟩}}
  \item \texttt{\renewtcbtheorem[(init options)]{⟨name⟩}{⟨display name⟩}{⟨options⟩}{⟨prefix⟩}}
    \begin{itemize}
      \item Operates like \texttt{\NewTcbTheorem} \textsuperscript{P.374}, but based on \texttt{\RenewDocumentEnvironment} instead of \texttt{\NewDocumentEnvironment}. Existing environments are redefined.
    \end{itemize}
  \item \texttt{\ProvideTcbTheorem[(init options)]{⟨name⟩}{⟨display name⟩}{⟨options⟩}{⟨prefix⟩}}
    \begin{itemize}
      \item Operates like \texttt{\NewTcbTheorem} \textsuperscript{P.374}, but based on \texttt{\ProvideDocumentEnvironment} instead of \texttt{\NewDocumentEnvironment}. New environments are only created if they are not already defined.
    \end{itemize}
  \item \texttt{\DeclareTcbTheorem[(init options)]{⟨name⟩}{⟨display name⟩}{⟨options⟩}{⟨prefix⟩}}
    \begin{itemize}
      \item Operates like \texttt{\NewTcbTheorem} \textsuperscript{P.374}, but based on \texttt{\DeclareDocumentEnvironment} instead of \texttt{\NewDocumentEnvironment}. New environments are always created and possibly redefine existing ones.
    \end{itemize}
\end{itemize}
\texttt{tcbmath[\langle options\rangle]{\langle mathematical box content\rangle}}

Creates a \texttt{tcolorbox}\footnote{P.12} which is fitted to the width of the given \langle mathematical box content\rangle. This box is intended to be applied as part of a larger formula and may be used as replacement for the \texttt{boxed} macro of \texttt{amsmath}.

\begin{equation}
\begin{aligned}
\texttt{tcbset}\{\text{fonttitle=\scriptsize}\} \\
\texttt{tcbmath[colback=LightBlue!25!white,colframe=blue]\{ a^2 = 16 \}} \\
\quad \Rightarrow \\
\texttt{tcbmath[colback=Salmon!25!white,colframe=red,title=Implication]\{ a = 4 \lor a = -4. \}} \\
\end{aligned}
\end{equation}

(3)

\texttt{tcbbighmath[\langle options\rangle]{\langle mathematical box content\rangle}}

This is a special case of the \texttt{tcbmath} macro which uses the style \texttt{/tcb/highlight math}\footnote{P.387}. It is intended to provide context sensitive highlighting of formula parts. The color settings via \texttt{/tcb/highlight math style}\footnote{P.387} may be different inside theorems or other colored areas and outside.

\begin{verbatim}
\texttt{tcbset{myformula/.style={colback=yellow!10!white,colframe=red!50!black,}
\quad \text{every box/.style={highlight math style={colback=LightBlue!50!white,colframe=Navy}}}}
\end{verbatim}

\begin{align}
\texttt{tcbbighmath}\{\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n}\} &= \infty. \\
\int x^2 ~\text{d}x &= \frac13 x^3 + c.
\end{align}

(4)

\begin{align}
\texttt{tcbhighmath}\{\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n}\} &= \infty. \\
\int x^2 ~\text{d}x &= \frac13 x^3 + c.
\end{align}

(5)

\begin{align}
\texttt{tcbhighmath}\{\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n}\} &= \infty. \\
\int x^2 ~\text{d}x &= \frac13 x^3 + c.
\end{align}

(6)

(7)
\texttt{\textbackslash tcbhighmath} \textsuperscript{P.377} can be used in symbiosis with the \texttt{empheq} package which allows to specify own boxing commands to mark multiline formulas.

\begin{verbatim}
\% \usepackage{empheq}
\begin{empheq}[box=\tcbhighmath]{align}
 a &= \sin(z) \\
 E &= mc^2 + \int_a^b x \, dx
\end{empheq}
\tcbset{highlight math style={enhanced, colframe=red!60!black,colback=yellow!50!white,arc=4pt,boxrule=1pt, drop fuzzy shadow}}

\begin{empheq}[box=\tcbhighmath]{align}
 a &= \sin(z) \\
 E &= mc^2 + \int_a^b x \, dx
\end{empheq}
\end{verbatim}

Besides \texttt{\textbackslash tcbhighmath} \textsuperscript{P.377}, one can easily define an independent new box based on \texttt{\textbackslash tcbox} \textsuperscript{P.14} which acts like \texttt{\textbackslash tcbhighmath} \textsuperscript{P.377}:

\begin{verbatim}
\% \usepackage{empheq}
\newtcbox[box=\otherbox]{[1]}{nobeforeafter,math upper,tcbox raise base, enhanced,frame hidden,boxrule=0pt,interior style={top color=green!10!white, bottom color=green!10!white,middle color=green!50!yellow}, fuzzy halo=1pt with green,#1}

\begin{empheq}[box=\otherbox]{align}
 a &= \sin(z) \\
 E &= mc^2 + \int_a^b x \, dx
\end{empheq}
\begin{equation}
tcbhighmath{E} = \otherbox{mc^2}
\end{equation}
\end{verbatim}

\begin{verbatim}
\% \usepackage{empheq}
\begin{empheq}{align}
 a &= \sin(z) \\
 E &= mc^2 + \int_a^b x \, dx
\end{empheq}
\begin{equation}
\textbf{E} \quad = \quad \textbf{mc}^2
\end{equation}
\end{verbatim}
18.2 Option Keys of the Library

/\texttt{tcb/separator sign}=⟨\texttt{sign}⟩

(no default, initially :)

The given ⟨\texttt{sign}⟩ is used inside the title text of a theorem as separator between display name combined with number and the specific title text. It is omitted, if there is no specific title text.

\begin{tcbtheorem}[use counter from=mytheo]{sometheorem}{Theorem}
{colback=white,colframe=red!50!black,fonttitle=\bfseries, separator sign={\ $\blacktriangleright$}}{theo}
\begin{sometheorem}{My example}{}
My theorem text.
\end{sometheorem}

Theorem 18.5 ▶ My example
My theorem text.

/\texttt{tcb/separator sign colon}

(style, no value, initially set)

Sets /\texttt{tcb/separator sign} to the default colon : sign.

/\texttt{tcb/separator sign dash}

(style, no value)

Sets /\texttt{tcb/separator sign} to an en-dash sign.

\begin{tcbtheorem}[use counter from=mytheo]{sometheorem}{Theorem}
{colback=white,colframe=red!50!black,fonttitle=\bfseries, separator sign dash}{theo}
\begin{sometheorem}{My example}{}
My theorem text.
\end{sometheorem}

Theorem 18.6 – My example
My theorem text.

/\texttt{tcb/separator sign none}

(style, no value)

Sets /\texttt{tcb/separator sign} to empty.

\begin{tcbtheorem}[use counter from=mytheo]{sometheorem}{Theorem}
{colback=white,colframe=red!50!black,fonttitle=\bfseries, separator sign none}{theo}
\begin{sometheorem}{My example}{}
My theorem text.
\end{sometheorem}

Theorem 18.7 My example
My theorem text.
The given \langle left \rangle and \langle right \rangle delimiter signs are used to frame the descriptive title text of a theorem.

\begin{tcbtheorem}[use counter from=mytheo]{sometheorem}{Theorem}{colback=white,colframe=red!50!black,fonttitle=\bfseries,description delimiters={\flqq}{\frqq}}{theo}
\begin{sometheorem}{My example}{}
My theorem text.
\end{sometheorem}
Theorem 18.8: «My example»
My theorem text.

\begin{tcbtheorem}[use counter from=mytheo]{sometheorem}{Theorem}{colback=white,colframe=red!50!black,fonttitle=\bfseries,description delimiters parenthesis}{theo}
\begin{sometheorem}{My example}{}
My theorem text.
\end{sometheorem}
Theorem 18.9: (My example)
My theorem text.

\begin{tcbtheorem}[use counter from=mytheo]{sometheorem}{Theorem}{colback=white,colframe=red!50!black,fonttitle=\bfseries,description delimiters none}{theo}
\begin{sometheorem}{My example}{}
My theorem text.
\end{sometheorem}

\begin{tcbtheorem}[use counter from=mytheo]{sometheorem}{Theorem}{colback=white,colframe=red!50!black,fonttitle=\bfseries,description color=red!25!yellow}{theo}
\begin{sometheorem}{My example}{}
My theorem text.
\end{sometheorem}
Theorem 18.10: My example
My theorem text.
/tcb/description font=\text{(text)} (default empty, initially empty)
Sets \text{(text)} (e.g. font settings) before the descriptive title text deviating from /tcb/fonttitle \text{→} P.35. The (text) is removed, if description font is used without value.

\newtcbtheorem[use counter from=mytheo]{sometheorem}{Theorem}\%
{colback=white,colframe=red!50!black,fonttitle=\bfseries,
 description delimiters={\glqq}{\grqq},
 description font=\mdseries\itshape}{theo}
\begin{sometheorem}{My example}{}
My theorem text.
\end{sometheorem}

Theorem 18.11: “My example.”
My theorem text.

/tcb/description formatter=\text{(macro)} (default empty, initially empty)
Sets \text{(macro)} as formatter for the descriptive title text. The \text{(macro)} has to take one mandatory argument (the description text).
Note that /tcb/description delimiters \text{→} P.380, /tcb/description color \text{→} P.380, and /tcb/description font are ignored, if this option is used.
If description formatter is used without value, the formatter is reset to its standard behavior.

\newtcbox{\formbox}{enhanced,frame empty,size=minimal,boxsep=2pt,arc=1pt,
on line,interior style image=goldshade.png}
\newtcbtheorem[use counter from=mytheo]{sometheorem}{Theorem}\%
{colback=white,colframe=red!50!black,fonttitle=\bfseries,
description formatter=\formbox}{theo}
\begin{sometheorem}{My example}{}
My theorem text.
\end{sometheorem}

Theorem 18.12: My example
My theorem text.

/tcb/terminator sign=\text{(sign)} (no default, initially empty)
The given \text{(sign)} is used as terminator at the end of the title text of a theorem.

\newtcbtheorem[use counter from=mytheo]{sometheorem}{Theorem}\%
{colback=white,colframe=red!50!black,fonttitle=\bfseries, 
terminator sign=\text{.}}{theo}
\begin{sometheorem}{My example}{}
My theorem text.
\end{sometheorem}

Theorem 18.13: My example.
My theorem text.
Sets \texttt{/tcb/terminator sign}\colon^\textsuperscript{p.381} to the colon : sign.

\begin{tcbtheorem}[use counter from=mytheo]{sometheorem}{Theorem}{colback=white,colframe=red!50!black,fonttitle=\textbf{series},
separator sign dash,terminator sign colon}{theo}
\begin{sometheorem}{My example}{}
My theorem text.
\end{sometheorem}

\textbf{Theorem 18.14 – My example:}
My theorem text.

Sets \texttt{/tcb/terminator sign}\textendash^\textsuperscript{p.381} to an en-dash sign.

\begin{tcbtheorem}[use counter from=mytheo]{sometheorem}{Theorem}{colback=white,colframe=red!50!black,fonttitle=\textbf{series},
separator sign dash}{theo}
\begin{sometheorem}{My example}{}
My theorem text.
\end{sometheorem}

\textbf{Theorem 18.15: My example –}
My theorem text.

Sets \texttt{/tcb/terminator sign}\texttt{none}^\textsuperscript{p.381} to the default empty text.

\begin{tcbtheorem}[use counter from=mytheo]{sometheorem}{Theorem}{colback=white,colframe=red!50!black,fonttitle=\textbf{series},
label separator=}{theo}
\begin{sometheorem}{My example}{myex}
My theorem text.
\end{sometheorem}

\textbf{Theorem 18.16: My example}
My theorem text.

\textbf{See Example 18.16.}

The given \texttt{\langle separator\rangle} is used for labels created with environments which are defined themselves by \texttt{\newtcbtheorem}\textsuperscript{p.374}. This \texttt{\langle separator\rangle} is put between \texttt{\langle prefix\rangle} (defined by \texttt{\newtcbtheorem}\textsuperscript{p.374}) and \texttt{\langle marker\rangle} (defined by an actual theorem environment).
The given ⟨style⟩ is used in connection with labels created with environments which are defined themselves by \newtcbtheorem. This ⟨style⟩ uses one argument which is automatically set to the full label marker of the environment, i.e. a text consisting of ⟨prefix⟩ (defined by \newtcbtheorem), /tcb/label separator → P.382, and ⟨marker⟩ (defined by an actual theorem environment).

\begin{sometheorem}{My example}{myex2}
My theorem text.
\end{sometheorem}
This automated \hyperlink{theo:myex2}{hyper target can be linked to with a hyper link}.

A second usage of /tcb/theorem full label supplement overwrites the first setting.

Theorem 18.17: My example
My theorem text.
This automated hyper target can be linked to with a hyper link.

A second usage of /tcb/theorem label supplement overwrites the first setting, but /tcb/theorem full label supplement and /tcb/theorem label supplement can be used independently.

% `marginnote' has to be loaded
\newtcbtheorem[use counter from=mytheo]{sometheorem}{Theorem}%
{colback=white,colframe=red!50!black,fonttitle=\bfseries}{theo}
\begin{sometheorem}{My example}{myex3}
My theorem text.
\end{sometheorem}
This automated \hyperlink{XYZ-myex3}{hyper target can be linked to with a hyper link}.

Theorem 18.18: My example
My theorem text.
This automated hyper target can be linked to with a hyper link.
Sets the hanging indent of the theorem title to \texttt{auto} or the given \langle length\rangle. For \texttt{auto}, the hanging indent matches the display name, number and separator sign of the theorem. If \langle length\rangle is negative, the theorem title is indented positively without hanging indent.

\begin{tcbtheorem}[use counter from=mytheo]{sometheorem}{Theorem}\%
\colorback=white,\colorframe=red!50!black,fonttitle=\bfseries}{theo}
\end{sometheorem}

\begin{sometheorem}[\text{theorem hanging indent}=5\text{mm}]{This is a very long and complicated title for a quite short and nearly empty theorem}{myexA2}
My theorem text.
\end{sometheorem}

\begin{sometheorem}[\text{theorem hanging indent}=0\text{pt}]{This is a very long and complicated title for a quite short and nearly empty theorem}{myexA3}
My theorem text.
\end{sometheorem}

\begin{sometheorem}[\text{theorem hanging indent}=-5\text{mm}]{This is a very long and complicated title for a quite short and nearly empty theorem}{myexA4}
My theorem text.
\end{sometheorem}
Theorem 18.23: My example
My theorem text.

18.24 Theorem: My example
My theorem text.

18.25 Theorem: My example
My theorem text.

18.26: My example
My theorem text.
This key can be used directly in a \texttt{tcolorbox} for a more flexible approach to create a theorem type box. The \texttt{display name} is used together with the increased \texttt{counter} value and the \texttt{title} for the title line of the box. Additionally, a \texttt{label} with the given \texttt{marker} is created.

% \newcounter{texercise}\% preamble\begin{tcolorbox}[colback=green!10,colframe=green!50!black,arc=4mm,
  theorem={Test}{texercise}{Direct usage}{myMarker}]\begin{tcblower}
Here, we see the test \ref{myMarker}.
\end{tcblower}\end{tcolorbox}

Test 1: Direct usage

Here, we see the test 1.

For a common appearance inside the document, the key \texttt{theorem} should not be used directly as in the example above, but as part of a new environment created by hand or using \texttt{newtcbtheorem} \cite{P.374}.  

386
A style which is used for \texttt{tcbhighmath} \textsuperscript{P.377} and which is predefined as \texttt{notitle,nophantom,colframe=red,colback=yellow!25!white}.

It can be changed with the usual \texttt{pgf} techniques or with \texttt{/tcb/highlight math style}.

\begin{align*}
\texttt{tcbhighmath}\{1\} + 1 &= 2, \\
\texttt{tcbset}\{\text{highlight math/.append style={left=0mm,right=0mm,top=0mm,bottom=0mm}}\} \\
\texttt{tcbhighmath}\{1\} + 1 &= 2.
\end{align*}

\texttt{/tcb/highlight math style=⟨style definition⟩} (style, no default)

Changes the definition for \texttt{/tcb/highlight math} to \texttt{notitle,nophantom} plus the given \texttt{⟨style definition⟩}. See \texttt{tcbhighmath} \textsuperscript{P.377} for another example.

\begin{align*}
\texttt{f(x)} &= \int_{1}^{x} \frac{1}{t^2} \, dt = \left[ -\frac{1}{t} \right]_{1}^{x} \\
&= -\frac{1}{x} + \frac{1}{1} \\
&= 1 - \frac{1}{x}.
\end{align*}
Sets the upper part to mathematical mode with font $\textstyle$.

Sets the lower part to mathematical mode with font $\textstyle$.

Sets the upper part and lower part to mathematical mode with font $\textstyle$.

The following styles are only tested to work with the original \texttt{amsmath} environments. If e.g. the \texttt{equation} environment is redefined as \texttt{gather}, then /tcb/ams equation should / could not be used. Obviously, you are encouraged to use /tcb/ams gather \textsuperscript{P.390} in this case.

\begin{tcolorbox}[math,colback=yellow!10!white,colframe=red!50!black]
\sum\limits_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n} = \infty.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[ams equation,colback=yellow!10!white,colframe=red!50!black]
\sum\limits_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n} = \infty.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[ams equation*,colback=yellow!10!white,colframe=red!50!black]
\sum\limits_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n} = \infty.
\end{tcolorbox}
/tcb/ams align upper

Adds an \texttt{amsmath align} environment to the start and end of the upper part.

/tcb/ams align lower

Adds an \texttt{amsmath align} environment to the start and end of the lower part.

/tcb/ams align

Adds an \texttt{amsmath align} environment to the start and end of the upper and lower part.

\begin{tcolorbox}[ams align,colback=yellow!10!white,colframe=red!50!black]
\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n} &= \infty. \quad (16) \\
\int x^2 \, dx &= \frac{1}{3} x^3 + c. \quad (17)
\end{tcolorbox}

/tcb/ams align* upper

Adds an \texttt{amsmath align*} environment to the start and end of the upper part.

/tcb/ams align* lower

Adds an \texttt{amsmath align*} environment to the start and end of the lower part.

/tcb/ams align*

Adds an \texttt{amsmath align*} environment to the start and end of the upper and lower part.

\begin{tcolorbox}[ams align*,colback=yellow!10!white,colframe=red!50!black]
\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n} &= \infty. \\
\int x^2 \, dx &= \frac{1}{3} x^3 + c.
\end{tcolorbox}
/tcb/ams gather upper 

Adds an \texttt{amsmath gather} environment to the start and end of the upper part.

/tcb/ams gather lower 

Adds an \texttt{amsmath gather} environment to the start and end of the lower part.

/tcb/ams gather

Adds an \texttt{amsmath gather} environment to the start and end of the upper and lower part.

\begin{tcolorbox}[ams gather,colback=yellow!10!white,colframe=red!50!black]
\sum\limits_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n} = \infty. \\
\int x^2 \text{d}x = \frac{1}{3} x^3 + c.
\end{tcolorbox}

\[ \sum\limits_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n} = \infty. \quad (18) \]
\[ \int x^2 \text{d}x = \frac{1}{3} x^3 + c. \quad (19) \]

/tcb/ams gather* upper 

Adds an \texttt{amsmath gather*} environment to the start and end of the upper part.

/tcb/ams gather* lower 

Adds an \texttt{amsmath gather*} environment to the start and end of the lower part.

/tcb/ams gather*

Adds an \texttt{amsmath gather*} environment to the start and end of the upper and lower part.

\begin{tcolorbox}[ams gather*,colback=yellow!10!white,colframe=red!50!black]
\sum\limits_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n} = \infty. \\
\int x^2 \text{d}x = \frac{1}{3} x^3 + c.
\end{tcolorbox}

\[ \sum\limits_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n} = \infty. \]
\[ \int x^2 \text{d}x = \frac{1}{3} x^3 + c. \]
Neutralizes the `\abovedisplayskip` of a following `align` or `gather` environment for the upper part. Note that the text content has to start with such a formula.

Neutralizes the `\abovedisplayskip` of a following `align` or `gather` environment for the lower part. Note that the text content has to start with such a formula.

Neutralizes the `\abovedisplayskip` of a following `align` or `gather` environment for the upper part and lower part. Note that the text content has to start with such a formula.

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[ams nodisplayskip,colback=yellow!10!white,colframe=red!50!black]
\begin{gather}
\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n} = \infty.\quad (20) \\
\int x^2 \ \text{d}x = \frac{1}{3} x^3 + c. \quad (21)
\end{gather}
\end{tcolorbox}
```

And now for something completely different.

New colored mathematical environments are easily created using `\newtcolorbox`:

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[mymath]{ams gather*,colback=yellow!10!white,colframe=red!50!black}
\begin{mymath}
\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n} = \infty.
\int x^2 \ \text{d}x = \frac{1}{3} x^3 + c.
\end{mymath}
\end{tcolorbox}
```

All described options like `/tcb/ams gather upper` `P.390`, `/tcb/ams gather lower` `P.390`, `/tcb/ams gather` `P.390` are (partially) setting (overwriting) the keys `/tcb/before upper` `P.71`, `/tcb/after upper` `P.72`, `/tcb/before lower` `P.73`, `/tcb/after lower` `P.74`.

Therefore, e.g. `\tcbset{ams gather,before upper={\text{Pythagoras:}}}` produces an invalid result. For this case, you are invited to use `\tcbset{ams gather,before upper app={\text{Pythagoras:}}}`, see `/tcb/before upper app` `P.467`.

391
Applies a predefined style \(\langle \text{name} \rangle\) to the theorem environment. Some of the feasible \(\langle \text{name} \rangle\) values resemble style names from the packages \texttt{theorem} and \texttt{ntheorem} to give convenient access to known patterns.

The styles alter \texttt{/tcb/separator sign} \(\rightarrow\) P.379, \texttt{/tcb/description delimiters} \(\rightarrow\) P.380, \texttt{/tcb/terminator sign} \(\rightarrow\) P.381, and more. Therefore, one should apply such keys after a theorem style.

For the following examples, we use:

\begin{verbatim}
\NewTcbTheorem[use counter from=mytheo]{theorem}{Theorem}{
  \% 
  fonttitle=\bfseries\upshape,fontupper=\itshape, 
  colframe=green!50!black,colback=green!10!white, 
  colbacktitle=green!20!white, coltitle=blue!75!black}{theo}
\end{verbatim}

The predefined styles are:

\begin{itemize}
  \item \textbf{standard}: This is the initial value.
  \begin{verbatim}
  \begin{theorem}[theorem style=standard]{standard}{}
  This is my theorem. \begin{equation*} a^2 + b^2 = c^2. \end{equation*}
  \end{theorem}
  \end{verbatim}
  \textbf{Theorem 18.27: standard}
  This is my theorem.
  \(a^2 + b^2 = c^2.\)

  \item \textbf{change standard}
  \begin{verbatim}
  \begin{theorem}[theorem style=change standard]{change standard}{}
  This is my theorem. \begin{equation*} a^2 + b^2 = c^2. \end{equation*}
  \end{theorem}
  \end{verbatim}
  \textbf{18.28 Theorem: change standard}
  This is my theorem.
  \(a^2 + b^2 = c^2.\)

  \item \textbf{plain}
  \begin{verbatim}
  \begin{theorem}[theorem style=plain]{plain}{}
  This is my theorem. \begin{equation*} a^2 + b^2 = c^2. \end{equation*}
  \end{theorem}
  \end{verbatim}
  \textbf{Theorem 18.29 (plain): This is my theorem.}
  \(a^2 + b^2 = c^2.\)
\end{itemize}
• break

\begin{theorem}[theorem style=break]{break}
This is my theorem. \begin{equation*} a^2 + b^2 = c^2. \end{equation*} \end{theorem}

Theorem 18.30 (break): This is my theorem. \( a^2 + b^2 = c^2. \)

• plain apart

\begin{theorem}[theorem style=plain apart]{plain apart}
This is my theorem. \begin{equation*} a^2 + b^2 = c^2. \end{equation*} \end{theorem}

Theorem 18.31 (plain apart) This is my theorem. \( a^2 + b^2 = c^2. \)

• change

\begin{theorem}[theorem style=change]{change}
This is my theorem. \begin{equation*} a^2 + b^2 = c^2. \end{equation*} \end{theorem}

18.32 Theorem (change): This is my theorem. \( a^2 + b^2 = c^2. \)

• change break

\begin{theorem}[theorem style=change break]{change break}
This is my theorem. \begin{equation*} a^2 + b^2 = c^2. \end{equation*} \end{theorem}

18.33 Theorem (change break): This is my theorem. \( a^2 + b^2 = c^2. \)

• change apart

\begin{theorem}[theorem style=change apart]{change apart}
This is my theorem. \begin{equation*} a^2 + b^2 = c^2. \end{equation*} \end{theorem}

18.34 Theorem (change apart) This is my theorem. \( a^2 + b^2 = c^2. \)
• margin

\begin{theorem}[theorem style=margin,left=10mm]{margin}{}
This is my theorem. \begin{equation*} a^2 + b^2 = c^2. \end{equation*} \end{theorem}

\begin{theorem}[theorem style=margin,left=10mm,oversize]{margin}{}
This is my theorem. \begin{equation*} a^2 + b^2 = c^2. \end{equation*} \end{theorem}

18.35 Theorem (margin):
This is my theorem.
\[ a^2 + b^2 = c^2. \]

18.36 Theorem (margin):
This is my theorem.
\[ a^2 + b^2 = c^2. \]

• margin break

\begin{theorem}[theorem style=margin break,left=10mm]{margin break}{}
This is my theorem. \begin{equation*} a^2 + b^2 = c^2. \end{equation*} \end{theorem}

\begin{theorem}[theorem style=margin break,left=10mm,oversize]{margin break}{}
This is my theorem. \begin{equation*} a^2 + b^2 = c^2. \end{equation*} \end{theorem}

18.37 Theorem (margin break):
This is my theorem.
\[ a^2 + b^2 = c^2. \]

18.38 Theorem (margin break):
This is my theorem.
\[ a^2 + b^2 = c^2. \]

• margin apart

\begin{theorem}[theorem style=margin apart,left=10mm]{margin apart}{}
This is my theorem. \begin{equation*} a^2 + b^2 = c^2. \end{equation*} \end{theorem}

\begin{theorem}[theorem style=margin apart,left=10mm,oversize]{margin apart}{}
This is my theorem. \begin{equation*} a^2 + b^2 = c^2. \end{equation*} \end{theorem}

18.39 Theorem (margin apart)
This is my theorem.
\[ a^2 + b^2 = c^2. \]

18.40 Theorem (margin apart)
This is my theorem.
\[ a^2 + b^2 = c^2. \]
18.3 Examples for Definitions and Theorems

In the following, the application of \newtcbtheorem\textsuperscript{P.374} to highlight mathematical definitions, theorems, or the like is demonstrated.

At first, additional \texttt{tcb} keys are created for the appearance of the colored boxes. It is assumed that theorems and corollaries should be identically colored. All following environments are numbered with a common counter, but this can be changed easily. Here, the counter output is supplemented by the subsection number. Further, the \texttt{cleveref} package [5] is used for clever references.

\begin{quote}
\textit{Definition in the preamble:}
\end{quote}

\begin{verbatim}
% \usepackage{cleveref}
\tcbset{
defstyle/.style={fonttitle=\bfseries\upshape, fontupper=\slshape, arc=0mm, colback=blue!5!white,colframe=blue!75!black},
  theostyle/.style={fonttitle=\bfseries\upshape, fontupper=\slshape,
  colback=red!10!white,colframe=red!75!black},}
\NewTcbTheorem[number within=subsection,crefname={definition}{definitions}]% {Definition}{Definition}{defstyle}{def}
\NewTcbTheorem[use counter from=Definition,crefname={theorem}{theorems}]% {Theorem}{Theorem}{theostyle}{theo}
\NewTcbTheorem[use counter from=Definition,crefname={corollary}{corollaries}]% {Corollary}{Corollary}{theostyle}{cor}
\end{verbatim}

By \newtcbtheorem\textsuperscript{P.374}, commonly numbered theorem environments are created now. \texttt{defstyle} and \texttt{theostyle} are used for the appearance.

Now, everything is prepared for the following examples.

\begin{verbatim}
\begin{Theorem}
\textit{Differenzierbarkeit bedingt Stetigkeit, wobei diese Benennung zu Testzwecken ungewöhnlich lang ist}\{diffbarstetig\}
Eine Funktion $f:I\to\mathbb{R}$ ist in $x_0\in I$ stetig, wenn $f$ in $x_0$ differenzierbar ist.
\end{Theorem}
\end{verbatim}

The following theorem is numbered as \Cref{theo:diffbarstetig} and referenced with the marker \texttt{theo:diffbarstetig}.

\begin{verbatim}
Theorem 18.3.1: Differenzierbarkeit bedingt Stetigkeit, wobei diese Benennung zu Testzwecken ungewöhnlich lang ist
Eine Funktion $f:I\to\mathbb{R}$ ist in $x_0\in I$ stetig, wenn $f$ in $x_0$ differenzierbar ist.
\end{verbatim}

395
Die folgende Definition ist nummeriert als \Cref{def:diffbarkeit} und
referenziert mit dem Marker \texttt{def:diffbarkeit}.
\begin{Definition}{Differenzierbarkeit}{diffbarkeit}
Eine Funktion $f: \mathbb{I} \to \mathbb{R}$ auf einem Intervall $\mathbb{I}$ heiße
linear approximierbar, wenn der Grenzwert
\begin{equation*}
\lim_{x \to x_0} \frac{f(x) - f(x_0)}{x - x_0} = \lim_{h \to 0} \frac{f(x_0 + h) - f(x_0)}{h}
\end{equation*}
existiert. Bei Existenz heiße dieser Grenzwert Ableitung
oder Differentialquotient von $f$ in $x_0$ und man schreibt für ihn
\begin{equation*}
f'(x_0) \quad \text{oder} \quad \frac{df}{dx}(x_0).
\end{equation*}
\end{Definition}

The following definition is numbered as Definition 18.3.2 and referenced with the marker \texttt{def:diffbarkeit}.

**Definition 18.3.2: Differenzierbarkeit**

Eine Funktion $f : \mathbb{I} \to \mathbb{R}$ auf einem Intervall $\mathbb{I}$ heiße in $x_0 \in \mathbb{I}$ differenzierbar oder linear approximierbar, wenn der Grenzwert
\[
\lim_{x \to x_0} \frac{f(x) - f(x_0)}{x - x_0} = \lim_{h \to 0} \frac{f(x_0 + h) - f(x_0)}{h}
\]
existiert. Bei Existenz heißt dieser Grenzwert Ableitung oder Differentialquotient von $f$ in $x_0$ und man schreibt für ihn
\[
f'(x_0) \quad \text{oder} \quad \frac{df}{dx}(x_0).
\]

The following corollary is numbered as \Cref{cor:nullstellen} and
referenziert mit dem Marker \texttt{cor:nullstellen}.
\begin{Corollary}{Nullstellenexistenz}{nullstellen}
Ist $f : [a, b] \to \mathbb{R}$ stetig und haben $f(a)$ und $f(b)$ entgegengesetzte
Vorzeichen, also $f(a) \cdot f(b) < 0$, so besitzt $f$ eine Nullstelle $x_0 \in ]a, b[$, also $f(x_0) = 0$.
\end{Corollary}

The following corollary is numbered as Corollary 18.3.3 and referenced with the marker \texttt{cor:nullstellen}.

**Corollary 18.3.3: Nullstellenexistenz**

Ist $f : [a, b] \to \mathbb{R}$ stetig und haben $f(a)$ und $f(b)$ entgegengesetzte Vorzeichen, also $f(a) \cdot f(b) < 0$, so besitzt $f$ eine Nullstelle $x_0 \in ]a, b[$, also $f(x_0) = 0$. 

396
Hinreichende Bedingung für WendepUNKTE

$f$ sei eine auf einem Intervall $]a,b[$ dreimal stetig differenzierbare Funktion.

Ist $f''(x_0) = 0$ in $x_0 \in ]a,b[$ und $f'''(x_0) \neq 0$, so ist
$(x_0,f(x_0))$ ein Wendepunkt von $f$.

Theorem 18.3.4: Hinreichende Bedingung für WendepUNKTE

$f$ sei eine auf einem Intervall $]a,b[$ dreimal stetig differenzierbare Funktion. Ist $f''(x_0) = 0$ in $x_0 \in ]a,b[$ und $f'''(x_0) \neq 0$, so ist $(x_0,f(x_0))$ ein Wendepunkt von $f$.

Theorem 18.3.5 (Mittelwertsatz für $n$ Variable)

Es sei $n \in \mathbb{N}$, $D \subseteq \mathbb{R}^n$ eine offene Menge und $f \in C^1(D,\mathbb{R})$. Dann gibt es auf jeder Strecke $[x_0,x] \subset D$ einen Punkt $\xi \in [x_0,x]$, so dass gilt

\[ f(x) - f(x_0) = \operatorname{grad} f(\xi)^\top (x - x_0) \]

Here, \texttt{cleveref} support is used to reference Theorem 18.3.5 on Page 397. This theorem can also be referenced by \texttt{\Vref{theo:meanvaluetheorem}} resulting in \texttt{Theorem 18.3.5}.
Here, using \ref resulting in \ref{theo:meanvaluetheorem} is more interesting...

Here, using \ref resulting in Theorem 18.3.5 on the preceding page is more interesting...

% \tcbuselibrary{skins}
\newtcbtheorem[use counter from=Definition]{YetAnotherTheorem}{Theorem}
{\small
\begin{minipage}{\textwidth}
\begin{equation*}
\begin{align*}
\text{Es sei } n \in \mathbb{N}, \ D \subseteq \mathbb{R}^n \ \text{eine offene Menge und } f \in C^1(D,\mathbb{R}). \ \text{Dann gibt es auf jeder Strecke } [x_0, x] \subset D \ \text{einen Punkt } \xi \in [x_0, x], \ \text{so dass gilt}\end{align*}
\end{equation*}
\end{align*}
\end{minipage}
\end{YetAnotherTheorem}
}

\begin{minipage}{\textwidth}
\begin{equation*}
\begin{align*}
f(x) - f(x_0) = \operatorname{\text{grad}} f(\xi)^{\top}(x-x_0)
\end{align*}
\end{equation*}
\end{align*}
\end{minipage}

18.3.6 Theorem (Mittelwertsatz für \textit{n} Variable)

Es sei $n \in \mathbb{N}$, $D \subseteq \mathbb{R}^n$ eine offene Menge und $f \in C^1(D,\mathbb{R})$. Dann gibt es auf jeder Strecke $[x_0, x] \subset D$ einen Punkt $\xi \in [x_0, x]$, so dass gilt

\begin{equation*}
\begin{align*}
f(x) - f(x_0) = \operatorname{\text{grad}} f(\xi)^{\top}(x-x_0)
\end{align*}
\end{equation*}

% \usepackage{varwidth} \tcbuselibrary{skins}
\newtcbtheorem[use counter from=Definition]{YetAnotherTheorem}{Theorem}
{\small
\begin{minipage}{\textwidth}
\begin{equation*}
\begin{align*}
\text{Es sei } n \in \mathbb{N}, \ D \subseteq \mathbb{R}^n \ \text{eine offene Menge und } f \in C^1(D,\mathbb{R}). \ \text{Dann gibt es auf jeder Strecke } [x_0, x] \subset D \ \text{einen Punkt } \xi \in [x_0, x], \ \text{so dass gilt}\end{align*}
\end{equation*}
\end{align*}
\end{minipage}
\end{YetAnotherTheorem}
}

\begin{minipage}{\textwidth}
\begin{equation*}
\begin{align*}
f(x) - f(x_0) = \operatorname{\text{grad}} f(\xi)^{\top}(x-x_0)
\end{align*}
\end{equation*}
\end{align*}
\end{minipage}

Theorem 18.3.7: Mittelwertsatz für \textit{n} Variable

Es sei $n \in \mathbb{N}$, $D \subseteq \mathbb{R}^n$ eine offene Menge und $f \in C^1(D,\mathbb{R})$. Dann gibt es auf jeder Strecke $[x_0, x] \subset D$ einen Punkt $\xi \in [x_0, x]$, so dass gilt

\begin{equation*}
\begin{align*}
f(x) - f(x_0) = \operatorname{\text{grad}} f(\xi)^{\top}(x-x_0)
\end{align*}
\end{equation*}

\begin{minipage}{\textwidth}
\begin{equation*}
\begin{align*}
f(x) - f(x_0) = \operatorname{\text{grad}} f(\xi)^{\top}(x-x_0)
\end{align*}
\end{equation*}
\end{align*}
\end{minipage}

398
You need more attention for your theorems? Here, you are ...

\begin{Theorem}
\begin{enhanced, fuzzy halo=3mm with yellow, fuzzy halo=2mm with red, fuzzy halo=1mm with yellow, watermark color=red!35!white, watermark text={Overacting\Fundamental Theorem}}%
{Fundamental Theorem of Theorems}{fundamental}%
\lipsum[1-2]
\end{Theorem}

Overacting

Fundamental Theorem

Theorem 18.3.8: Fundamental Theorem of Theorems


Let’s try a more conservative approach:

% \tcbusetlibrary{skins} % preamble
\begin{YetAnotherTheorem}{YetAnotherTheorem}{Theorem}%
\{theorem style=plain,enhanced,colframe=blue!50!black,colback=yellow!20!white, coltitle=red!50!black,fonttitle=\upshape\bfseries,fontupper=\itshape, drop fuzzy shadow=blue!50!black!50!white,boxrule=0.4pt\}{theo}
\begin{YetAnotherTheorem}{Mittelwertsatz f"{u}r $n$ Variable}{mittelwertsatz_n4}%
Es sei $n\in\mathbb{N}$, $D\subseteq\mathbb{R}^n$ eine offene Menge und $f\in C^{1}(D,\mathbb{R})$ eine offene Menge und
\begin{equation*}
\begin{aligned}
f(x)-f(x_0) &= \operatorname{grad} f(x_0)^\top(x-x_0)
\end{aligned}
\end{equation*}
\end{YetAnotherTheorem}

Theorem 18.3.9 (Mittelwertsatz für $n$ Variable): Es sei $n\in\mathbb{N}$, $D \subseteq \mathbb{R}^n$ eine offene Menge und $f \in C^1(D,\mathbb{R})$. Dann gibt es auf jeder Strecke $[x_0, x] \subseteq D$ einen Punkt $\xi \in [x_0, x]$, so dass gilt

$$f(x) - f(x_0) = \operatorname{grad} f(\xi)^\top(x - x_0)$$
18.4 Using other theorem environments with \tcolorbox

Instead of creating theorem environments with the methods described before, environments from other packages can be boxed with a \tcolorbox.

Environments may be created e.g. by methods from the \texttt{theorem} package or the \texttt{amsthm} package. \\
\texttt{tcolorboxenvironment} \texttt{\textasciitilde P.22} can be used to put a box around these environments.

```
\begin{lem}
\lipsum[2]
\end{lem}
\lipsum[3]
\begin{proof}
\lipsum*[4]
\end{proof}
```


19 Library \libbreakable

The library is loaded by a package option or inside the preamble by:

\tcbselibrary{breakable}

This also loads the package \pdffontcol.

19.1 Technical Overview

The library \libbreakable supports the automatic breaking of a \tcolorbox. This feature is enabled by /tcb/breakable \P.403 and disabled by /tcb/unbreakable \P.404.

If a \tcolorbox is set to be /tcb/breakable \P.403, then the following algorithm is executed:

1. The box content is read to a box register similar but not identical to the unbreakable case.
2. If the total box fits into the current page, it is shipped out visibly unbroken and the algorithm stops.
3. Otherwise, it is checked if at least /tcb/lines before break \P.404 of the upper box can be placed on the current page. If not, a page break is inserted and the algorithm goes back to Step 2.
4. Now, the \textit{break sequence} starts. The upper box part or the lower box part is split such that it fits into the current page. The fitting part is named \textit{first part} of the \textit{break sequence} and shipped out.
5. If the remaining content of the total box fits into the current page, the algorithm continues with Step 7, else with Step 6.
6. The upper box part or the lower box part is split such that it fits into the current page. The fitting part is named \textit{middle part} of the \textit{break sequence} and shipped out. Then, the algorithm goes back to Step 5.
7. The remaining part is named \textit{last part} of the \textit{break sequence} and shipped out. The algorithm stops.

The algorithm takes care that the optional segmentation line never appears at the end of a box. The optional lower box part is also checked to have at least /tcb/lines before break \P.404.
In principle, all boxes of the *break sequence* share the same geometric parameters. The differences are:

- The given `/tcb/before` and `/tcb/after` values are used only before the first and after the last part of the *break sequence*.

- A special behavior between the parts of the *break sequence* can be given by `/tcb/toprule at break`, `/tcb/bottomrule at break`, `/tcb/enlarge top at break`, and `/tcb/enlarge bottom at break`.

- The `/tcb/skin` decides how the first, middle, and last part look like. Actually, every part type has its own skin given by the options `/tcb/skin first`, `/tcb/skin middle`, and `/tcb/skin last`. Typically, these options are set automatically by the main skin, see Subsection 19.8 from page 417.

19.2 Limitations and Known Bugs

- The maximal total height of the upper and of the lower part of normal breakable `tcolorbox`es is about 65536pt (ca. 2300cm) apiece. If such a part gets longer, the output will get buggy without warning. For very oversized boxes which are longer than 65536pt, use the `unlimited` value for `/tcb/breakable`. With the `unlimited` setting, the applied algorithm has (virtually) no height limit for boxes, but very likely the compiler memory will have to be increased for boxes longer than 300 pages (depending on compiler settings and box content). But it is recommended to use `unlimited` for critical large boxes only.

- You can nest an unbreakable `tcolorbox` inside another `tcolorbox`, even inside a breakable one. But you cannot nest a breakable box inside a breakable box. The `/tcb/breakable` key for a nested box is ignored automatically, i.e. inner boxes are always unbreakable.

After all, in the unlikely case you really want to have the nested box to be breakable, use `/tcb/enforce breakable` for the nested box. But, a breakable box inside a breakable box will usually give a mess.

- Depending on the \LaTeX engine, if your text content contains some text color changing commands, your color may not survive the break to the next box. See the documentation for `/tcb/use color stack` for more information.

- The `perpage` option of the `footmisc` package is deliberately deactivated inside a breakable box since all footnotes are placed at the end of the box (possibly far away from the reference point).

- Making a box `/tcb/breakable` which actually is not broken creates a box which acts almost like an unbreakable box. Visual differences are kept as indiscernible as possible, but can appear with certain `/tcb/before` and `/tcb/after` settings, especially, if there is an automatic page break before the box.

- Lua\TeX version 0.95 changes the behavior of the basic \texttt{\textbackslash vsplit} (a bug!?) resulting in badly broken boxes. Thanks to Jeremy Engel, the \texttt{breakable} library contains a patch for this which also loads the \texttt{ifluatex} package.

---

4 Until `tcolorbox` 3.04, the `/tcb/breakable` key was not ignored for nested boxes.

5 `/tcb/enforce breakable` acts like `/tcb/breakable` until `tcolorbox` 3.04.
19.3 Main Option Keys

/tcb/breakable=true|false|unlimited (default true, initially false)

Allows the tcolorbox to be breakable. If the box is larger than the available space at the current page, the box is automatically broken and continued to the next page. All sorts of tcolorbox can be made breakable. It depends on the skin how the breaking looks like. If you do not know better, use /tcb/enhanced P. 233 for breaking a box. The parts of the break sequence are numbered by the counter tcbbreakpart.

- false: Sets the tcolorbox to be unbreakable.
- true: Breaks the tcolorbox from one page to another. The maximal total height of the upper and of the lower part is about 65536pt (ca. 2300cm or ca. 90 pages) apiece.
- unlimited: Experimental code for unlimited total height of breakable boxes. For boxes longer than 300 pages (or even shorter ones) the compiler memory will have to be increased.

% \usepackage{lipsum} % preamble
\tcbset{enhanced jigsaw,colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,
  watermark color=yellow!25!white,watermark text=\arabic{tcbbreakpart},
  fonttitle=bfseries}
\begin{tcolorbox}[breakable,title=My breakable box]
\lipsum[1-6]
\end{tcolorbox}


/tcb/unbreakable (no value, initially set)

Sets the tcolorbox to be unbreakable.

/tcb/enforce breakable (no value)

A tcolorbox inside a tcolorbox is automatically set to be unbreakable. Using /tcb/breakable → P.403 on such an inner box has no effect. If one really wants the inner box to be breakable, use /tcb/enforce breakable. **This will usually give a mess of shattered boxes. You are advised to not use this option.**

Note that /tcb/enforce breakable has the functionality that /tcb/breakable → P.403 had until package version 3.04 and exists for backward compatibility.

/tcb/title after break=(text) (no default, initially empty)

The /tcb/title → P.23 is used only for the first part of a break sequence. Use title after break to create a heading line with ⟨text⟩ as content for all following parts. Also see /tcb/extras title after break → P.411 for formatting the title text.

/tcb/notitle after break (no value, initially set)

Removes the title line or following parts in a break sequence if set before.

/tcb/adjusted title after break=(text) (style, no default, initially unset)

Works like /tcb/adjusted title → P.23 but applied to /tcb/title after break.

/tcb/lines before break=(number) (no default, initially 2)

Assures that the given ⟨number⟩ of lines of the upper box part or the lower box part are placed before a break happens.
/tcb/break at=(length)/(length)/.../(length)  
(no default, initially 0pt)

Defines break points at the given \langle length \rangle values. The first \langle length \rangle defines the (maximal) height of the first partial box, the second \langle length \rangle defines the (maximal) height of the second partial box, and so on. The last \langle length \rangle value is applied to all following partial boxes if any.

- Setting a \langle length \rangle to Opt means that the naturally available space is used for breaking.
- Setting a \langle length \rangle to a negative value means that the sum of this negative value and the naturally available space is used for breaking (boxes will shrink in height). Note that before version 4.10 negative values were treated like Opt.

/tcb/enlargepage=(length)/(length)/.../(length)  
(no default, initially 0pt)

Inserts a \enlargethispage{\langle length \rangle} to the pages of the break sequence, i.e. allows one to enlarge (or shrink) partial boxes. The first \langle length \rangle is applied to the first partial box, the second \langle length \rangle is applied to the second partial box, and so on. The last \langle length \rangle value is applied to all following partial boxes if any. Note that floating boxes will not be enlarged.

The example code enlarged the second partial box by one line, the third partial box by two lines, and all following parts are not enlarged.

If an automated page break occurs before the first partial box, the page enlargement is applied to the page before the first partial box and again to the page of the first partial box. Insert a manual break to prevent this.

In general, \enlargepage should be used at the final stage of a document for fine-tuning only.
\texttt{/tcb/enlargepage flexible=(length)} \hfill \text{(no default, initially 0pt)}

This allows an automated page enlargement for up to \texttt{(length)}. The algorithm can use this to avoid breaking a box, if there is enough room after enlargement. Also, the \texttt{last} partial box of a break sequence may be enlarged to avoid further breaking.

Note that this potential enlargement is \textit{additive} to settings of \texttt{/tcb/enlargepage} \cite{P.405}. But \texttt{/tcb/enlargepage flexible} overwrites settings of \texttt{/tcb/pad before break*} \cite{P.408} or \texttt{/tcb/pad at break*} \cite{P.408}.

\% The following setting hinders orphan lines for the last partial box
\texttt{\tcbset{enlargepage flexible=\baselineskip}}

\texttt{/tcb/compress page=(option)} \hfill \text{(default all, initially baselineskip)}

This option controls the space management on the page which contains the unbroken box or the first part of a \textit{break sequence}. Feasible \texttt{(option)} values are:

- \texttt{all} (default value): All shrinkable glue on the page is potentially used for the unbroken box or the first part of a \textit{break sequence}. Thus, all vertical spaces on the page will potentially be reduced to their minimal values.
- \texttt{baselineskip} (initial value): Shrinkable glue up to one \texttt{\baselineskip} on the page is potentially used for the unbroken box or the first part of a \textit{break sequence}.
- \texttt{none}: The break algorithm respects the target size of the given glue values on the page. This was the initial value before version 3.34.

\textbf{Note that the box content is not influenced by this option.}

\texttt{/tcb/shrink break goal=(length)} \hfill \text{(no default, initially 0pt)}

This is an emergency parameter if the break algorithm produces unpleasant breaks. It shrinks the goal height of the current box part by \texttt{(length)} which may result in smaller boxes. Never use negative values. \textit{Usually, this option will never be needed at all.}

\texttt{/tcb/use color stack=true|false} \hfill \text{(default true, initially false)}

Depending on the \LaTeX{} engine and loaded packages, if your text contains some color changing commands, your color may not survive the break to the next box. For some engines, there is support for additional color stacks which allow colors to survive breaks. Such an color stack can be activated by \texttt{/tcb/use color stack} with help of the \texttt{pdfcol} package. This can be done globally or per box.

\textbf{Note that activating \texttt{/tcb/use color stack} inserts a color command with a \texttt{whatsit} at the begin of the upper part and of the lower part of a \texttt{tcolorbox} \cite{P.12}. This may add additional vertical space, e.g. if your box text starts with a list like \texttt{enumerate}!}

- \texttt{pdf\TeX}X: color stacks supported.
- \texttt{Lua\TeX}X: color stacks supported, but you should consider loading the \texttt{luacolor} package \textit{instead} which avoids the spacing problem.
- \texttt{Xe\TeX}X: color stacks not supported (yet?). From hearsay, with the \texttt{fontspec} package, you may use \texttt{\addfontfeatures{Color=mycolor}} to add a font color which survives the break.

If \texttt{pdfcol} cannot initialize an additional color stack for the used engine, \texttt{/tcb/use color stack} is silently ignored.
The result of the following example depends on the used \LaTeX engine and loaded packages. The right-hand side is blue, if compiled using pdf\LaTeX, \LuaTeX without \texttt{luacolor}, and Xe\LaTeX. Lua\LaTeX with \texttt{luacolor} gives the next but one result.

\begin{verbatim}
% \usepackage{multicol,lipsum}
\begin{multicols}{2}\footnotesize
Breakable box without color stack.
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced jigsaw,
size=small, colframe=gray, colback=yellow!10!white, colupper=blue,
enforce breakable,\% use only breakable in the real world!
\vfill before first, pad at break=1mm, break at=33mm ]
Some blue text. \par\smallskip
{\color{red}\itshape\lipsum[2]} \par\smallskip
More blue text.
\end{tcolorbox}
Text after box.
\end{multicols}

Breakable box without color stack.
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced jigsaw, size=small, colframe=gray, colback=yellow!10!white, colupper=blue,
enforce breakable,\% use only breakable in the real world!
\vfill before first, pad at break=1mm, break at=33mm ]
Some blue text. \par\smallskip
{\color{red}\itshape\lipsum[2]} \par\smallskip
More blue text.
\end{tcolorbox}
Text after box.
\end{verbatim}

We do again with \texttt{/tcb\use color stack} \textsuperscript{P.406}. Again, the result depends on the used \LaTeX engine. The right-hand side stays blue for Xe\LaTeX and and is red and blue for pdf\LaTeX and \LuaTeX.

\begin{verbatim}
% \usepackage{multicol,lipsum}
\begin{multicols}{2}\footnotesize
Breakable box with color stack.
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced jigsaw, use color stack,
size=small, colframe=gray, colback=yellow!10!white, colupper=blue,
enforce breakable,\% use only breakable in the real world!
\vfill before first, pad at break=1mm, break at=33mm ]
Some blue text. \par\smallskip
{\color{red}\itshape\lipsum[2]} \par\smallskip
More blue text.
\end{tcolorbox}
Text after box.
\end{multicols}

Breakable box with color stack.
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced jigsaw, use color stack,
size=small, colframe=gray, colback=yellow!10!white, colupper=blue,
enforce breakable,\% use only breakable in the real world!
\vfill before first, pad at break=1mm, break at=33mm ]
Some blue text. \par\smallskip
{\color{red}\itshape\lipsum[2]} \par\smallskip
More blue text.
\end{tcolorbox}
Text after box.
\end{verbatim}

407
19.4 Option Keys for the Break Appearance

\texttt{/tcb/toprule at break=(length)}

Sets the line width of the top rule to \texttt{\langle length \rangle} if the box is \texttt{/tcb/breakable}. In this case, it is applied to middle and last parts in a break sequence. Note that \texttt{/tcb/toprule} \texttt{\rightarrow P.41} overwrites this value if used afterwards.

\texttt{/tcb/bottomrule at break=(length)}

Sets the line width of the bottom rule to \texttt{\langle length \rangle} if the box is \texttt{/tcb/breakable}. In this case, it is applied to first and middle parts in a break sequence. Note that \texttt{/tcb/bottomrule} \texttt{\rightarrow P.41} overwrites this value if used afterwards.

\texttt{/tcb/topsep at break=(length)}

Additional vertical space of \texttt{\langle length \rangle} which is added at the top of middle and last parts in a break sequence. In general, it is not advisable to change this value if these parts start with a rule or a title.

\texttt{/tcb/bottomsep at break=(length)}

Additional vertical space of \texttt{\langle length \rangle} which is added at the bottom of first and middle parts in a break sequence. In general, it is not advisable to change this value if these parts end with a rule.

\texttt{/tcb/pad before break=(length)}

Sets the total amount of vertical space after the text content and before the break point to \texttt{\langle length \rangle}. This style sets \texttt{/tcb/toprule at break=0pt} and changes \texttt{/tcb/topsep at break} as required. In general, it is not advisable to change this value if these parts start with a rule or a title.

\texttt{/tcb/pad after break=(length)}

Sets the total amount of vertical space after the break point and before the text content to \texttt{\langle length \rangle}. This style sets \texttt{/tcb/bottomrule at break=0pt} and changes \texttt{/tcb/bottomsep at break} as required. In general, it is not advisable to change this value if these parts end with a rule.

\texttt{/tcb/pad at break=(length)}

Abbreviation for setting \texttt{\langle length \rangle} to \texttt{/tcb/pad before break} and \texttt{/tcb/pad after break}.

% \usepackage{lipsum} % preamble
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced jigsaw,breakable,pad at break*=0mm,
  title={For this box, the pad space at the break point is set to 0mm}]
\lipsum[1-2]
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}
\begin{verbatim}
% \usepackage{lipsum} % preamble
\tcbset{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries}

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced jigsaw,breakable,pad at break*=0mm,
  title={For this box, the pad space at the break point is set to 0mm}]
\lipsum[1-2]
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{verbatim}
\end{tcolorbox}

\textbf{For this box, the pad space at the break point is set to 0mm}

Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetur adipiscing elit. Ut purus elit, vestibulum ut, placerat ac, adipiscing vitae, felis. Curabitur dictum gravida mauris. Nam arcu libero, nonummy eget, consectetuer id, vulputate a, magna. Donec vehicula augue eu neque. Pellentesque habitant morbi tristique senectus et netus et malesuada fames ac turpis

/tcb/pad at break\textsuperscript{P.408} or /tcb/pad at break\textsuperscript{*P.408} should be used as very last option in an option list, because they adapt other settings.

Also see /tcb/enlarge top at break by\textsuperscript{P.97} and /tcb/enlarge bottom at break by\textsuperscript{P.97}.

\texttt{/tcb/height fixed for=(part)} (no default, initially \texttt{none})

When certain amount of space is available for a partial box of a break sequence, the partial box typically is smaller than this space (depending on the box content). For given \texttt{(part)(s)}, the height can be set to all available space.

- \texttt{none}: Every partial \texttt{tcolorbox} is set with its natural height.
- \texttt{first}: The \texttt{first} partial box is set to a height which matches the available space.
- \texttt{middle}: All \texttt{middle} partial boxes are set to a height which matches the available space.
- \texttt{last}: The \texttt{last} partial box is set to a height which matches the available space.
- \texttt{first and middle}: The \texttt{first} and all \texttt{middle} partial boxes are set to a height which matches the available space.
- \texttt{middle and last}: All \texttt{middle} partial boxes and the \texttt{last} partial box are set to a height which matches the available space.
- \texttt{all}: All partial boxes are set to a height which matches the available space.

If the box keeps unbroken, this option is not applied. See \texttt{/tcb/height\textsuperscript{P.59}} for setting a fixed height for unbroken boxes. See \texttt{/tcb/height fill\textsuperscript{P.62}} for giving unbroken boxes maximum height.

\texttt{/tcb/vfill before first=true|false} (default \texttt{true}, initially \texttt{false})

Inserts a \texttt{\vfill} at the begin of the \texttt{first} partial box to move this partial box to the end of the current page. This may be used as an alternative to \texttt{/tcb/height fixed for=first} to get justified columns or pages. The \texttt{\vfill} is not inserted, if the box gets not actually broken.

\texttt{/tcb/segmentation at break=true|false} (default \texttt{true}, initially \texttt{true})

If a breakable box contains an \texttt{upper part} and a \texttt{lower part} and the break happens at the \texttt{segmentation} between both parts, then

- the segmentation line (or similar) is drawn as first element of the partial box containing the \texttt{lower part}, if \texttt{/tcb/segmentation at break} is set to be \texttt{true}.
- the segmentation line (or similar) is not drawn at all, if \texttt{/tcb/segmentation at break} is set to be \texttt{false}. This may be preferable for skins like \texttt{bicolor\textsuperscript{P.245}}, \texttt{tile\textsuperscript{P.256}}, or \texttt{beamer\textsuperscript{P.260}}.
19.5 Extra Options for Partial Boxes

```
N 2015-07-16 /tcb/extras={⟨options⟩}               (no default, initially unset)
   Adds tcolorbox ⟨options⟩ to every box of a break sequence after skin settings are done. This is quite late in box processing. Geometry and break settings should not be used here, because they will either be ignored or have unexpected negative results. But it is possible to change most colors, skin effects, shadows, borders, frame code, etc. Note that using /tcb/extras for every box is very seldom an advantage over setting the options directly. Usually, /tcb/extras first, /tcb/extras middle, etc. are sensible to apply.

N 2015-07-16 /tcb/no extras                          (style, no default, initially set)
   Removes all extras if set before.

N 2015-07-16 /tcb/extras broken={⟨options⟩}         (no default, initially unset)
   If the box is set to be /tcb/breakable P.403 and is broken actually, then the ⟨options⟩ are added to every box of the break sequence. /tcb/extras overwrites this key.

N 2015-07-16 /tcb/extras unbroken={⟨options⟩}      (no default, initially unset)
   If the box is set to be /tcb/breakable P.403 but is not broken actually or if the box is set to be /tcb/unbreakable P.404, then the ⟨options⟩ are added to the box. /tcb/extras overwrites this key.

N 2015-07-16 /tcb/no extras unbroken                 (style, no default, initially set)
   Removes the unbroken extras if set before.

N 2015-07-16 /tcb/extras first={⟨options⟩}         (no default, initially unset)
   If the box is set to be /tcb/breakable P.403 and is broken actually, then the ⟨options⟩ are added to the first box of the break sequence. /tcb/extras overwrites this key.

N 2015-07-16 /tcb/no extras first                    (style, no default, initially set)
   Removes the first extras if set before.

N 2015-07-16 /tcb/extras middle={⟨options⟩}        (no default, initially unset)
   If the box is set to be /tcb/breakable P.403 and is broken actually, then the ⟨options⟩ are added to every middle box (if any) of the break sequence. /tcb/extras overwrites this key.

N 2015-07-16 /tcb/no extras middle                   (style, no default, initially set)
   Removes the middle extras if set before.

N 2015-07-16 /tcb/extras last={⟨options⟩}          (no default, initially unset)
   If the box is set to be /tcb/breakable P.403 and is broken actually, then the ⟨options⟩ are added to the last box of the break sequence. /tcb/extras overwrites this key.

N 2015-07-16 /tcb/no extras last                     (style, no default, initially set)
   Removes the last extras if set before.

N 2015-07-16 /tcb/extras unbroken and first={⟨options⟩}     (no default, initially unset)
   This is an abbreviation for setting /tcb/extras unbroken and /tcb/extras first together. /tcb/extras overwrites this key.

N 2015-07-16 /tcb/extras middle and last={⟨options⟩}    (no default, initially unset)
   This is an abbreviation for setting /tcb/extras middle and /tcb/extras last together. /tcb/extras overwrites this key.

N 2015-07-16 /tcb/extras unbroken and last={⟨options⟩}   (no default, initially unset)
   This is an abbreviation for setting /tcb/extras unbroken and /tcb/extras last together. /tcb/extras overwrites this key.
```
/tcb/extras first and middle={⟨options⟩} (no default, initially unset)

This is an abbreviation for setting /tcb/extras first\textsuperscript{P.410} and /tcb/extras middle\textsuperscript{P.410} together. /tcb/extras\textsuperscript{P.410} overwrites this key.

/tcb/extras title after break={⟨options⟩} (no default, initially unset)

If the box has a /tcb/title after break\textsuperscript{P.404}, then the ⟨options⟩ are added for all titles after the first break, i.e. all middle and last. The color, font, and alignment of titles after break can be adapted choosing ⟨options⟩, e.g. by /tcb/coltitle\textsuperscript{P.34}, /tcb/fonttitle\textsuperscript{P.35}, /tcb/halign title\textsuperscript{P.38}. Note that /tcb/colbacktitle\textsuperscript{P.33} has to be placed into /tcb/extras middle and last\textsuperscript{P.410}.

/tcb/no extras title after break (style, no default, initially set)

Removes the title after break extras if set before.


My unbroken box

My broken box
19.6 Breakable boxes and the multicol package

With version 4.10, the algorithm for detecting the available height for a `tcolorbox` inside a `multicol` environment was improved with help of Frank Mittelbach. This change may impact existing user code which `may` have to be adapted.

Unbreakable `tcolorbox`es can be used without special care inside a `multicols` environment from the `multicol` package [9]. Since version 3.10, a breakable `tcolorbox` detects, if it is used inside a `multicols` environment. But choosing break points for a breakable box cannot be done by the balancing routine of `multicols`. By default, boxes will break at maximum column height. To get pleasant results, use the `/tcb/break at` and `/tcb/height fixed for` options.

% \usepackage{lipsum,multicol} % preamble
\begin{footnotesize}
\begin{multicols}{2}
\lipsum[1] 
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced jigsaw,breakable,size=title,
colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries,
title=My breakable box,pad at break=1mm, break at=-\baselineskip/0pt ]
\lipsum[2-4] 
\end{tcolorbox}
\lipsum[4]
\end{multicols}
\end{footnotesize}


\begin{footnotesize}
\begin{multicols}{2}
\lipsum[1] 
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced jigsaw,breakable,size=title,
colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries,
title=My breakable box,pad at break=1mm, break at=-\baselineskip/0pt ]
\lipsum[2-4] 
\end{tcolorbox}
\lipsum[4]
\end{multicols}
\end{footnotesize}


This example is already set inside a \texttt{multicols} environment. This time, a \textit{middle} part has full column height (here \texttt{\textbackslash \texttt{textheight}}). \texttt{/tcb/height fixed for \texttt{$^{P.409}$}} is used to spread this box part over the full height to align with neighboring columns.

% \usepackage{lipsum,multicol}
\lipsum[1]
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced jigsaw, breakable, size=title, colback=red!5!white, colframe=red!75!black, fonttitle=\bfseries, title=My breakable box, pad at break=2mm, break at=-1\baselineskip/0pt, height fixed for=middle ]
\lipsum[2-7]
\end{tcolorbox}
\lipsum[8]


My breakable box


quis dolor. Donec pellentesque, erat ac sagittis semper, nunc dui lobortis purus, quis congue purus metus ultricies tellus. Proin et quam. Class aptent taciti sociosqu ad litora tormentum per conubia nostra, per inceptos hymenaeos. Praesent sapien turpis, fermentum vel, eleifend faucibus, vehicula eu, lacus.


The following example has a \textcolorbox which fills the \textmulticols environment completely. Here, \texttt{tcb/height fixed for}\textsuperscript{P.409} is used to give all three columns the full height. Note that the appropriate \texttt{/tcb/break at}\textsuperscript{P.405} value is not computed automatically but set manually.

\begin{multicols}{3}
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced jigsaw,breakable,size=small, colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=bfseries, title=My breakable box,\break at=11.4cm, height fixed for=all, break at=11.4cm]
\lipsum[1-3]
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{multicols}

\texttt{My breakable box}


A breakable box is not broken, if there is enough space on the current page or column. Therefore, typical penalty insertion with \break, \pagebreak, \columnbreak, ... may only work as expected, if the box is broken at least into two parts without inserting the penalties. To force a page or column break, \tcbbreak starts a new paragraph and inserts an insane tall rule which causes a break and which is immediately discarded. You may ignore this technical information and just use it as you would use \pagebreak.

For an unbreakable box, \tcbbreak is identical to insert \par, i.e. it just starts a new paragraph.

Also see /tcb/break at P.405 for defining height dependent breaks.

\begin{multicols}{3}
\begin{tcolorbox}[breakable,enhanced jigsaw,size=small,
colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries,
title=Break into parts]
First part \tcbbreak
Second part \tcbbreak
Third part
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{multicols}

\begin{multicols}{3}
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced jigsaw,size=small,
colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries,
title=You shall not break]
First part \tcbbreak
Second part \tcbbreak
Third part
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{multicols}
19.8 Break Sequence for the Skins

The following diagrams document the *break sequence* for different skins. Depending on the main skin of a `tcolorbox`, the actual skins of the *break sequence* parts are displayed.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Unbroken Box</th>
<th>Broken Boxes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>skin=standard</td>
<td>skin=standard</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>skin=standard</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>skin=standard</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Unbroken Box</th>
<th>Broken Boxes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>skin=standard jigsaw</td>
<td>skin=standard jigsaw</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>skin=standard jigsaw</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>skin=standard jigsaw</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Unbroken Box</th>
<th>Broken Boxes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>skin=spartan</td>
<td>skin=spartan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>skin=spartan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>skin=spartan</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Unbroken Box

skin=enhanced

Unbroken Box

skin=enhancedfirst

Unbroken Box

skin=enhancedmiddle

Unbroken Box

skin=enhancedlast

Broken Boxes

skin=enhancedfirst

Broken Boxes

skin=enhancedmiddle

Broken Boxes

skin=enhancedmiddle

Broken Boxes

skin=enhancedmiddle

Broken Boxes

skin=enhancedmiddle

Broken Boxes

skin=enhancedlast
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Unbroken Box</th>
<th>Broken Boxes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>skin=enhanced jigsaw</td>
<td>skin=enhancedfirst jigsaw</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>skin=enhancedmiddle jigsaw</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>skin=enhancedlast jigsaw</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Unbroken Box</th>
<th>Broken Boxes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>skin=enhancedfirst jigsaw</td>
<td>skin=enhancedfirst jigsaw</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>skin=enhancedmiddle jigsaw</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>skin=enhancedmiddle jigsaw</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>skin=enhancedmiddle jigsaw</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Unbroken Box</th>
<th>Broken Boxes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>skin=enhancedmiddle jigsaw</td>
<td>skin=enhancedmiddle jigsaw</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>skin=enhancedmiddle jigsaw</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>skin=enhancedmiddle jigsaw</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Unbroken Box</th>
<th>Broken Boxes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>skin=enhancedlast jigsaw</td>
<td>skin=enhancedmiddle jigsaw</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>skin=enhancedmiddle jigsaw</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>skin=enhancedmiddle jigsaw</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>skin=enhancedlast jigsaw</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unbroken Box</td>
<td>Broken Boxes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>skin=bicolor</td>
<td>skin=bicolorfirst</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>skin=bicolormiddle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>skin=bicolorlast</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Unbroken Box</th>
<th>Broken Boxes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>skin=bicolorfirst</td>
<td>skin=bicolorfirst</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>skin=bicolormiddle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>skin=bicolormiddle</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Unbroken Box</th>
<th>Broken Boxes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>skin=bicolormiddle</td>
<td>skin=bicolormiddle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>skin=bicolormiddle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>skin=bicolormiddle</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Unbroken Box</th>
<th>Broken Boxes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>skin=bicolorlast</td>
<td>skin=bicolormiddle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>skin=bicolorlast</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unbroken Box</td>
<td>Broken Boxes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>skin=bicolor jigsaw</td>
<td>skin=bicolorfirst jigsaw</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>skin=bicolormiddle jigsaw</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>skin=bicolorlast jigsaw</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Unbroken Box</th>
<th>Broken Boxes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>skin=bicolorfirst jigsaw</td>
<td>skin=bicolorfirst jigsaw</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>skin=bicolormiddle jigsaw</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>skin=bicolormiddle jigsaw</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Unbroken Box</th>
<th>Broken Boxes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>skin=bicolormiddle jigsaw</td>
<td>skin=bicolormiddle jigsaw</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>skin=bicolormiddle jigsaw</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>skin=bicolormiddle jigsaw</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Unbroken Box</th>
<th>Broken Boxes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>skin=bicolorlast jigsaw</td>
<td>skin=bicolormiddle jigsaw</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>skin=bicolormiddle jigsaw</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>skin=bicolorlast jigsaw</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Unbroken Box
skin=tile

Broken Boxes
skin=tilefirst
skin=tilemiddle
skin=tilelast

Unbroken Box
skin=tilefirst

Broken Boxes
skin=tilefirst
skin=tilemiddle
skin=tilemiddle

Unbroken Box
skin=tilemiddle

Broken Boxes
skin=tilemiddle
skin=tilemiddle
skin=tilemiddle

Unbroken Box
skin=tilelast

Broken Boxes
skin=tilemiddle
skin=tilemiddle
skin=tilelast
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Unbroken Box</th>
<th>Broken Boxes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>skin=beamer</td>
<td>skin=beamerfirst</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>skin=beamermiddle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>skin=beamerlast</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Unbroken Box</th>
<th>Broken Boxes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>skin=beamerfirst</td>
<td>skin=beamerfirst</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>skin=beamermiddle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>skin=beamermiddle</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Unbroken Box</th>
<th>Broken Boxes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>skin=beamermiddle</td>
<td>skin=beamermiddle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>skin=beamermiddle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>skin=beamermiddle</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Unbroken Box</th>
<th>Broken Boxes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>skin=beamerlast</td>
<td>skin=beamermiddle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>skin=beamermiddle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>skin=beamerlast</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unbroken Box</td>
<td>Broken Boxes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>skin=freelance</td>
<td>skin=freelancefirst</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>skin=freelancemiddle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>skin=freelancelast</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Unbroken Box</th>
<th>Broken Boxes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>skin=freelancefirst</td>
<td>skin=freelancefirst</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>skin=freelancemiddle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>skin=freelancemiddle</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Unbroken Box</th>
<th>Broken Boxes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>skin=freelancemiddle</td>
<td>skin=freelancemiddle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>skin=freelancemiddle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>skin=freelancemiddle</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Unbroken Box</th>
<th>Broken Boxes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>skin=freelancelast</td>
<td>skin=freelancemiddle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>skin=freelancemiddle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>skin=freelancelast</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
19.9  Break by Hand (Faked Break)

See Section 19.6 on page 413 for real column breaks.

Since the appearance of broken boxes is done by skins, it is quite easy to 'fake a break'. For this, you actually don’t need the \texttt{breakable} library at all.

\begin{tcolorbox}
\texttt{\textbackslash tcbset\{enhanced,equal height group=fakedbreak,}
\texttt{colback=LightGreen,colframe=DarkGreen,}
\texttt{width=\{\texttt{\textbackslash linewidth}-6mm\}/3,nobeforeafter,}
\texttt{left=1mm,right=1mm,top=1mm,bottom=1mm,middle=1mm\}}
\begin{tcolorbox}[title=My broken box,skin=enhancedfirst]
This is a box which breaks from one column to another
\end{tcolorbox}\hfill
\begin{tcolorbox}[skin=enhancedmiddle]
column. I am sorry to say that this is a trick. Nevertheless, you may use this trick for your
\end{tcolorbox}\hfill
\begin{tcolorbox}[skin=enhancedlast]
own purposes.
\end{tcolorbox}\hfill
\end{tcolorbox}
The main purpose of this library is to store a \texttt{tcolorbox} into an array of box registers for later usage.

If the \texttt{tcolorbox} is not breakable, there is not much add-on compared to usual \TeX/\LaTeX\ box storage and usage (and you do not really need this library for that use case). For a breakable \texttt{tcolorbox}, this library allows to capture all partial boxes into a sequence of registers. The partial boxes can be used anywhere in arbitrary order.

The name of this library indicates \textit{magazine} in the sense of storage, but also in the sense of a journal where an article often is \textit{continued on page x}. An example for this kind of application is given throughout this section starting on the right hand side. The creation of this library was motivated by Ulrike Fischer and Steven B. Segletes.

The library is loaded by a package option or inside the preamble by:

\begin{verbatim}
\tcbuselibrary{magazine}
\end{verbatim}

This also loads the library \texttt{breakable}, see Section 19 on page 401.

The box register operations of this library are global. \TeX\ grouping will not clear the registers when leaving the current group. Also be aware that extensive use of large box arrays may eat up \TeX\’s available memory and registers.

### 20.1 Creation and Resetting of Box Arrays

\begin{verbatim}
\newboxarray{⟨name⟩}
\end{verbatim}

This creates a new box array called \texttt{⟨name⟩}. There already is a box array available with name \texttt{default} which can be used directly. Note that the creation is a global operation.

\begin{verbatim}
\newboxarray{myarray}
\end{verbatim}

\begin{verbatim}
\boxarrayreset[⟨name⟩]
\end{verbatim}

Resets the size counter of a box array \texttt{⟨name⟩} to zero. If \texttt{⟨name⟩} is not provided, \texttt{default} is used as name. Use this or \texttt{/tcb/reset box array} before you apply \texttt{/tcb/store to box array}~\cite{p.429}. Otherwise, all boxes would be appended to the already existing boxes. This command does not clear box registers.

\begin{verbatim}
\boxarrayreset % resets \texttt{default}'
\boxarrayreset{myarray} % resets \texttt{myarray}'
\end{verbatim}

\begin{verbatim}
/tcb/reset box array=⟨name⟩
\end{verbatim} (default \texttt{default}, initially unset)

Resets the size counter of a box array \texttt{⟨name⟩} to zero. Use this or \texttt{\boxarrayreset} (which does the same) before you apply \texttt{/tcb/store to box array}~\cite{p.429}.

\begin{verbatim}
\tcbset{
  reset box array, % resets \texttt{default}'
  reset box array=myarray, % resets \texttt{myarray}'
}
\end{verbatim}
\textbf{\texttt{\textbackslash boxarrayclear\{(name)\}}}

Works like \texttt{\textbackslash boxarrayreset}^\textsuperscript{P.428} to reset the size counter of a box array \texttt{name} to zero. Additionally, all allocated box registers of the box array are cleared of their content. Note that the allocated box registers stay allocated. So, this may be useful to clear memory, but not to free registers for other applications. If \texttt{\textbackslash consumeboxarray}^\textsuperscript{P.432} or \texttt{\textbackslash consumetcboxarray}^\textsuperscript{P.432} was used to apply the stored boxes, there is no advantage in using \texttt{\textbackslash boxarrayclear}.

\begin{itemize}
  \item \texttt{\textbackslash boxarrayclear} \hspace{1cm} \% clears ‘default’
  \item \texttt{\textbackslash boxarrayclear\{myarray\}} \hspace{1cm} \% clears ‘myarray’
\end{itemize}

\section{20.2 Storing Content}

\textbf{\texttt{/tcb/store to box array\{name\}}} \hspace{1cm} (default default, initially unset)

Stores a \texttt{tcolorbox} or all parts of a break sequence of a \texttt{tcolorbox} into a box array \texttt{name}. If no \texttt{name} is given, the already existing \texttt{default} box array is used. Otherwise, the box array has to be created beforehand with \texttt{\textbackslash newboxarray}^\textsuperscript{P.428}. Note that the box has to be \texttt{/tcb/breakable}^\textsuperscript{P.403}, if the box shall break into several parts. Typically, manual break points are additionally defined by \texttt{/tcb/break at}^\textsuperscript{P.405}. Otherwise, the box parts will have a length of about \texttt{texttheight}. For most use cases, a \texttt{/tcb/reset box array}^\textsuperscript{P.428} should be applied to reset the box array counter.

\begin{itemize}
  \item \% \texttt{\usepackage\{lipsum\}}
  \item \texttt{\begin\{tcolorbox\}[enhanced jigsaw,size=fbox,width=4cm, colback=yellow!10,colframe=yellow!10!black, enforce breakable,\% use only breakable in the real world!
  break at=7cm/4cm, height fixed for=all, watermark text=\{arabic\{tcbbreakpart\}, reset box array, store to box array]
  \end\{tcolorbox\}}
  \item \texttt{\begin\{tabular\}[b]{cc}
  \multicolumn{2}{c}{\includegraphics[width=7cm]{Basilica_5.png}}
\end\{tabular\}
  \item \% \texttt{\usepackage\{lipsum\}}
  \item \texttt{\begin\{tcolorbox\}[enhanced jigsaw,size=fbox,width=4cm, colback=yellow!10,colframe=yellow!10!black, enforce breakable,\% use only breakable in the real world!
  break at=7cm/4cm, height fixed for=all, watermark text=\{arabic\{tcbbreakpart\}, reset box array, store to box array]
  \end\{tcolorbox\}}
  \item \% \texttt{\usepackage\{lipsum\}}
\end{itemize}
If the first box part should fill the rest of the available space of the current page, you can use \pagegoal-\pagetotal minus some distance for the first element of /tcb/break at P.405. You may want to have some additional distance to the preceding text.

% \usepackage{lipsum}
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,breakable, reset box array, store to box array, break at=\pagegoal-\pagetotal-5mm/0pt, height fixed for=first and middle]
\lipsum[1-15]
\end{tcolorbox}

% \consumetcboxarray{1}{blanker,before=\par\vfill\noindent}

\begin{tcolorbox}[blanker,width=4cm, fontupper=\footnotesize, enforce breakable,\% use only breakable in the real world! break at=4cm, height fixed for=all, watermark text=\arabic{tcbbreakpart}, reset box array, store to box array]
\includegraphics[width=\linewidth]{Basilica_5.png}\par
\lipsum[1-2]
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcbitemize}[raster columns=3,raster equal height, size=small,halign=center,sharp corners,colback=blue!5]
\tcbitem\consumeboxarray{5}
\tcbitem\consumeboxarray{6}
\tcbitem\consumeboxarray{1}
\tcbitem\consumeboxarray{2}
\tcbitem\consumeboxarray{3}
\tcbitem\consumeboxarray{4}
\end{tcbitemize}

Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetur adipiscing elit. Ut purus elit, vestibulum ut, placerat ac, adipiscing vitae, felis. Curabitur dictum gravida mauris. Nam


\begin{boxarraystore}{langle namerangle}
\langle environment content \rangle
\end{boxarraystore}

Stores the environment content into a box array \textlangle name\rangle. This corresponds to the standard \LaTeX\ environment \texttt{lrbox}, but the storage operation is global. As long as \texttt{\boxarrayreset} \textrightarrow P.428 is not used, every new \texttt{\boxarraystore} adds a further box to the array.

\begin{verbatim}
\boxarrayreset
\begin{boxarraystore}{default}\fbox{Mary}\end{boxarraystore}
\begin{boxarraystore}{default}\fbox{Had}\end{boxarraystore}
\begin{boxarraystore}{default}\fbox{a}\end{boxarraystore}
\begin{boxarraystore}{default}\fbox{Little}\end{boxarraystore}
\begin{boxarraystore}{default}\fbox{Lamb}\end{boxarraystore}
\useboxarray{5}
\useboxarray{4}
\useboxarray{3}
\useboxarray{2}
\useboxarray{1}\hfill
\useboxarray{1}\useboxarray{5}
\end{verbatim}

\begin{tabular}{c c c c c}
Mary & Little & a & Had & Lamb \\
\end{tabular}

\section*{20.3 Retrieving Content}

\begin{verbatim}
\boxarraygetsize{\mysize}
\foreach \n in {1,...,\mysize} { \useboxarray{\n} }
\end{verbatim}

Stores the current size of a box array \textlangle name\rangle into a given \langle macro\rangle. If no \langle name\rangle is given, the already existing \texttt{default} box array is used.

\begin{verbatim}
\boxarraygetsize{\mysize}
Current size of the default box array: \mysize.
\end{verbatim}

Current size of the default box array: 5.

\begin{verbatim}
\boxarraygetsize{\mysize}
\foreach \n in {1,...,\mysize} { \useboxarray{\n} }
\end{verbatim}

Typesets the box with the given \langle index\rangle number from the box array \langle name\rangle. If no \langle name\rangle is given, the already existing \texttt{default} box array is used. It is considered an error, if a not existing box array \langle name\rangle is used. It is silently ignored, if the \langle index\rangle is out of range. Note that \texttt{\useboxarray} corresponds to the standard \texttt{\usebox} macro, respectively, \texttt{\copy}.

\begin{verbatim}
\boxarraygetsize{\mysize}
\foreach \n in {1,...,\mysize} { \useboxarray{\n} }
\end{verbatim}

\begin{tabular}{c c c c c}
Mary & Had & a & Little & Lamb \\
\end{tabular}
\usetcboxarray[(name)]{(index)}{(options)}

Typesets the box with the given \texttt{index} number from the box array \texttt{name} using \texttt{\useboxarray} \texttt{\textsuperscript{P.431}} as content of a \texttt{tcbox} \texttt{\textsuperscript{P.14}}. If no \texttt{name} is given, the already existing default box array is used. It is considered an error, if a not existing box array \texttt{name} is used. It is silently ignored, if the \texttt{index} is out of range. The \texttt{tcbox} \texttt{\textsuperscript{P.14}} can be customized by \texttt{tcolorbox} \texttt{\texttt{\textit{options}}}. 

\begin{verbatim}
\boxarraygetsize{\mysize}
\foreach \n in {1,...,\mysize} { \usetcboxarray{\n}{on line,colframe=yellow, colback=yellow!10} }
\end{verbatim}

\begin{tabular}{|c|c|c|c|}
\hline
Mary & Had & a & Little & Lamb  \\
\hline
\end{tabular}

\consumeboxarray[(name)]{(index)}

Typesets the box with the given \texttt{index} number from the box array \texttt{name}. If no \texttt{name} is given, the already existing default box array is used. It is considered an error, if a not existing box array \texttt{name} is used. It is silently ignored, if the \texttt{index} is out of range.

In contrast to \texttt{\useboxarray} \texttt{\textsuperscript{P.431}}, \texttt{\consumeboxarray} corresponds to the standard \texttt{box} macro, i.e. after typesetting the box register is cleared and cannot be used again.

\begin{verbatim}
\boxarraygetsize{\mysize}
First run: \foreach \n in {1,...,\mysize} { \consumeboxarray{\n} }
\par
Second run: \foreach \n in {1,...,\mysize} { \consumeboxarray{\n} }
\end{verbatim}

First run: Mary Had a Little Lamb
Second run: Mary Had a Little Lamb

\consumetcboxarray[(name)]{(index)}{(options)}

Typesets the box with the given \texttt{index} number from the box array \texttt{name} using \texttt{\consumeboxarray} as content of a \texttt{tcbox} \texttt{\textsuperscript{P.14}}. If no \texttt{name} is given, the already existing default box array is used. It is considered an error, if a not existing box array \texttt{name} is used. It is silently ignored, if the \texttt{index} is out of range. The \texttt{tcbox} \texttt{\textsuperscript{P.14}} can be customized by \texttt{tcolorbox} \texttt{\texttt{\textit{options}}}. After typesetting the box register is cleared and cannot be used again.

\begin{verbatim}
\boxarraygetsize{\mysize}
First run: \foreach \n in {1,...,\mysize} { \consumetcboxarray{\n}{on line,colframe=yellow, colback=yellow!10} }
\par
Second run: \foreach \n in {1,...,\mysize} { \consumetcboxarray{\n}{on line,colframe=yellow, colback=yellow!10} }
\end{verbatim}

First run: Mary Had a Little Lamb
Second run: Mary Had a Little Lamb

\paragraph*{Notes}

- Continued from page 431
- The linking texts like \textit{continued on page x} are created by \texttt{/tcb/finish} \texttt{\textsuperscript{P.221}} commands for the embedding \texttt{tcbox} \texttt{\textsuperscript{P.14}}.
- To label the box parts, \texttt{/tcb/phantomlabel} \texttt{\textsuperscript{P.113}} is used.
- These quite small partial boxes are...


Assigns the width of the box with the given \langle index \rangle number from the box array \langle name \rangle to a \langle macro \rangle. If no \langle name \rangle is given, the already existing default box array is used. It is considered an error, if a not existing box array \langle name \rangle is used. If the \langle index \rangle is out of range, the \langle macro \rangle will be set to 0pt.

\tcbox[size=small,colframe=blue!20,colback=yellow!5,on line, reset and store to box array]{Test}
\begin{tabular}{ll}
\useboxarray{1} & width of box 1: \boxarraygetwidth{\mylen}{1} \mylen \\
\useboxarray{2} & width of box 2: \boxarraygetwidth{\mylen}{2} \mylen \\
\end{tabular}

Test width of box 1: 30.35799pt
width of box 2: 0pt

Assigns the height of the box with the given \langle index \rangle number from the box array \langle name \rangle to a \langle macro \rangle. If no \langle name \rangle is given, the already existing default box array is used. It is considered an error, if a not existing box array \langle name \rangle is used. If the \langle index \rangle is out of range, the \langle macro \rangle will be set to 0pt.

\tcbox[size=small,colframe=blue!20,colback=yellow!5,on line, reset and store to box array]{Test}
\begin{tabular}{ll}
\useboxarray{1} & height of box 1: \boxarraygetheight{\mylen}{1} \mylen \\
\useboxarray{2} & height of box 2: \boxarraygetheight{\mylen}{2} \mylen \\
\end{tabular}

Test height of box 1: 9.89883pt
height of box 2: 0pt

Assigns the depth of the box with the given \langle index \rangle number from the box array \langle name \rangle to a \langle macro \rangle. If no \langle name \rangle is given, the already existing default box array is used. It is considered an error, if a not existing box array \langle name \rangle is used. If the \langle index \rangle is out of range, the \langle macro \rangle will be set to 0pt.

\tcbox[size=small,colframe=blue!20,colback=yellow!5,on line, reset and store to box array]{Test}
\begin{tabular}{ll}
\useboxarray{1} & depth of box 1: \boxarraygetdepth{\mylen}{1} \mylen \\
\useboxarray{2} & depth of box 2: \boxarraygetdepth{\mylen}{2} \mylen \\
\end{tabular}

Test depth of box 1: 3.69884pt
depth of box 2: 0pt
Assigns the total height of the box with the given \( \text{index} \) number from the box array \( \text{name} \) to a \( \text{macro} \). If no \( \text{name} \) is given, the already existing default box array is used. It is considered an error, if a not existing box array \( \text{name} \) is used. If the \( \text{index} \) is out of range, the \( \text{macro} \) will be set to 0pt.

--- continued from page 432 ---

\begin{tabular}{ll}
\useboxarray{1} & total height of box 1: \boxarraygettotalheight{\mylen}{1} \mylen \\
\useboxarray{2} & total height of box 2: \boxarraygettotalheight{\mylen}{2} \mylen
\end{tabular}

Test

\begin{tabular}{ll}
  total height of box 1: 13.59767pt \\
  total height of box 2: 0pt
\end{tabular}
20.5 Leaflet Example

The following full application example can be used to create leaflets. Obviously, the code can be adapted and customized in many ways.

\documentclass[a4paper,landscape]{article}
\usepackage[noheadfoot,margin=0pt]{geometry}
\usepackage[skins,raster,magazine]{tcolorbox}
\usepackage{lipsum}
\newenvironment{leaflet}{\begin{tcolorbox}[nobeforeafter,empty,colback=white,sharp corners,size=minimal,left=10mm,right=10mm,top=10mm,bottom=10mm,width=\textwidth/3,breakable,break at=\textheight,height fixed for=all,reset box array,store to box array,#1]}{\end{tcolorbox}}
\begin{tcbitemize}[raster columns=3,raster equal skip=0pt,blankest]
\tcbitem\consumeboxarray{5}
\tcbitem\consumeboxarray{6}
\tcbitem\consumeboxarray{1}
\tcbitem\consumeboxarray{2}
\tcbitem\consumeboxarray{3}
\tcbitem\consumeboxarray{4}
\end{tcbitemize}
\pagestyle{empty}
\begin{document}
\begin{leaflet}
\includegraphics[width=\linewidth]{Basilica_5.png}
\begin{center}
\bfseries\LARGE Example
\end{center}
\section{Introduction}
\lipsum[1]
\section{Main Part A}
\lipsum[2-8]
\section{Main Part B}
\lipsum[9-15]
\section{Conclusion}
\lipsum[16-18]
\end{leaflet}
\end{document}

21 Library \texttt{poster}

The main purpose of this library is to support creation of single page posters with \texttt{tcolorbox}es. A \texttt{tcbposter} is a \texttt{tikzpicture} where \texttt{tcolorbox}es can be placed in a column oriented manner using \texttt{\posterbox} commands. This base concept is more or less copied from the great \texttt{baposter} package.

The \texttt{raster} library, see Section 16 on page 307, can produce similar looking results and may be more appropriate depending on the actual project.

- The \texttt{raster} library has a flow oriented concept, just like a conventional text flow. The text flow (box flow) is a merely endless ribbon which gets broken into lines (and paragraphs) and the lines are broken into pages. \texttt{raster} shapes the boxes to convenient sizes to fill lines and pages in a pleasant way.

- The \texttt{tcbposter} library supports a quite free placement of boxes inside a page. Basically, boxes are placed like nodes are placed inside a \texttt{tikzpicture}. In contrast to \texttt{raster}, this is a \textit{single} page and not a flow of pages. The poster is divided into columns and rows. There is a more or less gentle force to use the columns (or spans of columns) for positioning and sizing while the row placement is completely optional.

The creation of this library was motivated by Ignasi.

Inside a \texttt{tikzpicture} there should be no embedded \texttt{tikzpictures}. This rule is violated by the \texttt{poster} library. Be aware that there may be some unwanted interactions between the main \texttt{tikzpicture} and the embedded ones inside the \texttt{tcolorbox}es.

The library is loaded by a package option or inside the preamble by:

\begin{verbatim}
\tcbuselibrary{poster}
\end{verbatim}

This also loads the libraries \texttt{skins}, see Section 10 on page 171, \texttt{breakable}, see Section 19 on page 401, \texttt{magazine}, see Section 20 on page 428, and \texttt{fitting}, see Section 22 on page 452.

21.1 Overview

You get the best overview of the \texttt{poster} library and its facilities, if you look at the \textbf{Poster Tutorial} which is part of the \texttt{tcolorbox} documentation:

tcolorbox-tutorial-poster.pdf
This creates a `tikzpicture` environment with suitable additional settings defined by the given \( \langle \text{options} \rangle \). Basically, `\posterbox{P.444}` and `\posterboxenv{P.444}` are used to place `tcolorboxes` as nodes into the environment, but additional TikZ code can also be used. As \( \langle \text{options} \rangle \) all `/tcb/posterset/` keys may be applied, namely:

- `/tcb/posterset/poster` → `P.441`: poster settings like columns, rows, sizes...
- `/tcb/posterset/coverage` → `P.442` and `/tcb/posterset/no coverage` → `P.442`: settings for a surrounding `tcolorbox` for background and margins.
- `/tcb/posterset/boxes` → `P.443`: style of the `tcolorboxes` used for the poster.
- `/tcb/posterset/fontsize` → `P.443`: scaling of used fonts.

```latex
\begin{tcbposter}
\langle \text{options} \rangle
\langle \text{environment content} \rangle
\end{tcbposter}
```
Inside \texttt{tcbposter} \cite{P.439}, there are several predefined Ti\kern0pt Z nodes. These nodes share a common \texttt{/tcb/poster/prefix} \cite{P.441} which is \texttt{TCBPOSTER@} by default. This prefix is used to discriminate the poster nodes from local nodes of any embedded \texttt{tikzpicture} environment. You will never need this prefix using \texttt{\posterbox} \cite{P.444} and its placement options, but if you want to refer to a predefined node using pure Ti\kern0pt Z code. The predefined nodes (shown without prefix) are:

- \texttt{poster}: defines the bounding box of the poster (without the coverage).
- \texttt{top}: top position plus row spacing
- \texttt{bottom}: bottom position minus row spacing
- \texttt{middle}: vertical middle position
- \texttt{col1, col2, ...}: bounding box of column 1, column 2, ...
- \texttt{row1, row2, ...}: bounding box of row 1, row 2, ...

Further nodes are defined using the \texttt{/tcb/posterloc/name} \cite{P.445} option.

\begin{itemize}
  \item \texttt{\tcbposterwidth}: Width of the poster (without margins).
  \item \texttt{\tcbposterheight}: Height of the poster (without margins).
  \item \texttt{\tcbpostercolspacing}: Column distance.
  \item \texttt{\tcbposterrowspacing}: Row distance.
  \item \texttt{\tcbpostercolumns}: Column quantity.
  \item \texttt{\tcbposterrows}: Row quantity.
  \item \texttt{\tcbpostercolwidth}: Width of a column.
  \item \texttt{\tcbposterrowheight}: Height of a row.
\end{itemize}

Never use a \texttt{tcbposter} \cite{P.439} inside a \texttt{tcbposter} \cite{P.439}. But, if you do anyway, use a different \texttt{/tcb/poster/prefix} \cite{P.441} for the embedded poster or you surely get a total mess.

There are several properties inside a \texttt{tcbposter} \cite{P.439} which may be useful for advanced code (skip the following on first reading):

- \texttt{\tcbposterwidth}: Width of the poster (without margins).
- \texttt{\tcbposterheight}: Height of the poster (without margins).
- \texttt{\tcbpostercolspacing}: Column distance.
- \texttt{\tcbposterrowspacing}: Row distance.
- \texttt{\tcbpostercolumns}: Column quantity.
- \texttt{\tcbposterrows}: Row quantity.
- \texttt{\tcbpostercolwidth}: Width of a column.
- \texttt{\tcbposterrowheight}: Height of a row.

\texttt{\tcbposterset\{\协会会长\\}}

Sets options for every following \texttt{tcbposter} \cite{P.439} inside the current \TeX{} group. For example, the numbers for rows and columns may be defined for the whole document by this:

\begin{verbatim}
\tcbposterset{poster={columns=2,rows=3}}
\end{verbatim}

See \texttt{tcbposter} \cite{P.439} for all feasible options.
21.3 Poster Settings

This option can be applied inside \tcbposter\textsuperscript{P.439} and \texttt{\textbackslash tcbposterset}\textsuperscript{P.440} to set the given poster \texttt{(option list)}, e.g.

\begin{tcbposter}
poster = \{showframe,columns=5,rows=2,spacing=1mm,height=4cm\},
\end{tcbposter}

For the \texttt{(option list)}, see the following keys.

\texttt{\textbackslash tcb/posterset/poster}\texttt{=\{\textit{option list}\}} \quad \text{(style, no default)}

This option can be applied inside \tcbposter\textsuperscript{P.439} and \texttt{\textbackslash tcbposterset}\textsuperscript{P.440} to set the given poster \texttt{(option list)}, e.g.

\texttt{\textbackslash tcbposterset\{poster=\{width=20cm,height=15cm\}\}}

\texttt{\textbackslash tcb/poster/columns}\texttt{=\{\textit{number}\}} \quad \text{(no default, initially 3)}

Sets the \texttt{(number)} of columns for a \tcbposter.

\texttt{\textbackslash begin\{tcbposter\}}\texttt{[}
\hspace{1em} \texttt{poster = \{showframe,columns=5,rows=2,spacing=1mm,height=4cm\},}
\hspace{1em}
\texttt{]}\texttt{\textbackslash end\{tcbposter\}}

\begin{tcbposter}
\begin{tabular}{|ccccc|}
\hline
\texttt{row1} & \texttt{col1} & \texttt{col2} & \texttt{col3} & \texttt{col4} & \texttt{col5} \\
\hline
\texttt{row2} & & & & & \\
\hline
\end{tabular}
\end{tcbposter}

\texttt{\textbackslash tcb/poster/rows}\texttt{=\{\textit{number}\}} \quad \text{(no default, initially 4)}

Sets the \texttt{(number)} of rows for a \tcbposter.

\texttt{\textbackslash tcb/poster/colspacing}\texttt{=\{\textit{length}\}} \quad \text{(no default, initially 4mm)}

Sets \texttt{(length)} as distance between columns.

\texttt{\textbackslash tcb/poster/rowspacing}\texttt{=\{\textit{length}\}} \quad \text{(no default, initially 4mm)}

Sets \texttt{(length)} as distance between rows.

\texttt{\textbackslash tcb/poster-spacing}\texttt{=\{\textit{length}\}} \quad \text{(style, no default, initially 4mm)}

Sets \texttt{(length)} as distance between columns and rows.

\texttt{\textbackslash tcb/poster/showframe}\texttt{=true|false} \quad \text{(default true, initially false)}

Displays a red auxiliary mesh as optical support during poster creation. Also, every \texttt{\textbackslash tcb/posterloc/name}\texttt{\{\textit{name}\}} \textsuperscript{P.445} is displayed.

\texttt{\textbackslash tcb/poster/width}\texttt{=\{\textit{length}\}} \quad \text{(no default, initially \texttt{\textbackslash linewidth})}

Sets \texttt{(length)} as width of the poster. For a typical poster, this has not to be set manually. Especially, if \texttt{\textbackslash tcb/posterset/coverage}\textsuperscript{P.442} is present, use \texttt{coverage=\{width=\textit{length}\}} instead to change the overall width.

\texttt{\textbackslash tcb/poster/height}\texttt{=\{\textit{length}\}} \quad \text{(no default, initially unset)}

Sets \texttt{(length)} as height of the poster. For a typical poster, this has not to be set manually, but is set automatically to an appropriate value. If \texttt{\textbackslash tcb/posterset/coverage}\textsuperscript{P.442} is present, use only one if any option \texttt{coverage=\{height=\textit{length}\}} or \texttt{poster=\{height=\textit{length}\}}.

\texttt{\textbackslash tcb/poster/prefix}\texttt{=\{\textit{name}\}} \quad \text{(no default, initially \texttt{TCBPOSTER@})}

\texttt{\textit{name}} is set as prefix for any \texttt{TikZ} node which is generated automatically by the \texttt{poster} library. This encompasses predefined nodes like \texttt{top, bottom, \ldots,} and nodes defined by using \texttt{\textbackslash tcb/posterloc/name}\textsuperscript{P.445}. Also, see Section 21.2 on page 439. For a typical poster, this value can stay as it is.
21.4 Coverage

/\texttt{tcb/posterset/coverage}={(\texttt{option list})} \hspace{1cm} \text{(style, no default)}

This option can be applied inside \texttt{tcbposter} \hspace{0.5cm} \text{P.439} and \texttt{tcbposterset} \hspace{0.5cm} \text{P.440} and it adds an optional coverage for the poster which is a surrounding \texttt{tcolorbox} with the given \texttt{(option list)}. Here, margins and background settings for the poster can be given. The \texttt{coverage} has several default \texttt{tcolorbox} settings suitable for the purpose:

\begin{verbatim}
enhanced, frame hidden, sharp corners, boxsep=0pt, boxrule=0pt,
top=4mm, bottom=4mm, left=4mm, right=4mm,
toptitle=2mm, bottomtitle=2mm, colback=white
\end{verbatim}

The \texttt{(option list)} can contain any \texttt{tcolorbox} option.

\begin{verbatim}
\begin{tcbposter}[poster = {showframe,spacing=1mm},
coverage = {height=5cm,
    interior style={top color=yellow,bottom color=yellow!50!red},
    watermark text={My Poster},watermark color=white,}
],
\end{tcbposter}
\end{verbatim}

- For a typical poster, the option \texttt{/tcb/spread} \hspace{0.5cm} \text{P.102} will use the whole page for the poster coverage.
- Poster margins can be adapted by \texttt{/tcb/left} \hspace{0.5cm} \text{P.45}, \texttt{/tcb/right} \hspace{0.5cm} \text{P.46}, \texttt{/tcb/top} \hspace{0.5cm} \text{P.48}, \texttt{/tcb/bottom} \hspace{0.5cm} \text{P.49}.
- Poster background can be changed by \texttt{/tcb/colback} \hspace{0.5cm} \text{P.33}, \texttt{/tcb/interior style} \hspace{0.5cm} \text{P.172}, \texttt{/tcb/interior style image} \hspace{0.5cm} \text{P.173}, etc.
- Do not use \texttt{/tcb/poster/width} \hspace{0.5cm} \text{P.441} and \texttt{/tcb/poster/height} \hspace{0.5cm} \text{P.441} in combination with a \texttt{coverage}. Note that you may use \texttt{/tcb/width} \hspace{0.5cm} \text{P.40} and \texttt{/tcb/height} \hspace{0.5cm} \text{P.59} inside the \texttt{coverage (option list)}. Note that this also is not necessary when \texttt{/tcb/spread} \hspace{0.5cm} \text{P.102} is applied.

/\texttt{tcb/posterset/no coverage} \hspace{1cm} \text{(style, no value, initially set)}

Removes the surrounding \texttt{tcolorbox} completely.
21.5 Common Box Settings

This option can be applied inside `tcbposter` and \tcbposterset and it is used to set up the style of the \tcolorboxes inside the poster. The \(\textit{option list}\) can contain any \tcolorbox option, but box size options are not assumed to be useful here, because the size will be determined by the placement options.

\begin{tcbposter}
\poster = \{spacing=2\text{mm}, columns=3, rows=2\},
\coverage = \{height=5\text{cm},
\text{interior style} = \{\text{top color=yellow, bottom color=yellow!50!red}\},
\}
\boxes = \{\text{sharp corners=downhill, arc=3\text{mm}, boxrule=1\text{mm},}
\text{colback=white, colframe=cyan,}
\text{title style} = \{\text{left color=black, right color=cyan}\},
\text{fonttitle=\textbf{series}}\}
\end{tcbposter}

21.6 Font Scaling

This option can be applied inside `tcbposter` and \tcbposterset. It uses /tcb/fit basedim and /tcb/fit fontsize macros to redefine \texttt{\textbackslash normalsize} and all other standard font size macros like \texttt{\small} and \texttt{\large} accordingly. This needs a freely scalable font family like lmodern to work. If /tcb/posterset/fontsize is not applied, there standard font size macros are not changed in any way.

\begin{tcbposter}
\poster = \{spacing=2\text{mm}, columns=3, rows=2\},
\coverage = \{height=5\text{cm},
\text{interior style} = \{\text{top color=yellow, bottom color=yellow!50!red}\},
\}
\fontsize = 15\text{pt}, \ % \leftarrow \texttt{\textbackslash normalsize is now 15pt}
\end{tcbposter}
21.7 Box Placement

\posterbox[(options)]{(placement)}{(box content)}

Inside a \texttt{tcbposter} environment, this places a \texttt{tcolorbox} with additional \texttt{tcolorbox} (options) and the given (box content) at a place determined by (placement). All (placement) options are described in the following. Note that (box content) cannot contain \texttt{verbatim} material, see \texttt{posterboxenv}.

\begin{tcbposter}
\[\text{poster} = \{\text{showframe}, \text{height}=4\text{cm}, \text{spacing}=2\text{mm}, \text{rows}=2\},
\text{boxes} = \{\text{beamer}, \text{colframe}=\text{blue!50!black}, \text{colback}=\text{blue!50}, \text{colupper}=\text{yellow!50}\},\]
\posterbox[\text{title=My title}]{\text{name=A, column=2, row=2}}{\text{My first box}}
\end{tcbposter}

\begin{posterboxenv}
[\text{title=My title}]{\text{name=A, column=2, between=top and bottom}}
My first box.
\begin{tcblisting}[\text{size=small, colback=yellow!10}]
My \textbf{first}
poster listing.
\end{tcblisting}
\end{posterboxenv}

\begin{tcbposter}
\begin{posterboxenv}
[\text{title=My title}]{\text{name=A, column=2}}
My first box.
\begin{tcblisting}[\text{size=small, colback=yellow!10}]
My \textbf{first}
poster listing.
\end{tcblisting}
\end{posterboxenv}
\end{tcbposter}
Sets \langle name \rangle as reference for the current \texttt{\posterbox} or \texttt{\posterboxenv}. A TikZ shape name is constructed automatically as combination of \texttt{/tcb/poster/prefix} and \langle name \rangle.

```latex
\begin{tcbposter}[
  \texttt{poster} = \{\texttt{showframe,height=2.5cm,spacing=2mm,rows=2},
  \texttt{boxes} = \{\texttt{beamer,colframe=blue!50!black,colback=blue!50,colupper=yellow!50}\},
]
\texttt{posterbox}\{\texttt{name=A,column=2,row=2}\}{\texttt{My first box}}
\texttt{node}[\texttt{below right=4mm,fill=yellow}](X) at (TCBPOSTER@poster.north west) \{\texttt{Example A}\};
\texttt{\draw}[\texttt{blue,very thick,->}](X) |- (TCBPOSTER@A);
\end{tcbposter}
```

\begin{tcbposter}[
  \texttt{poster} = \{\texttt{showframe,height=2.5cm,spacing=2mm,rows=2},
  \texttt{boxes} = \{\texttt{beamer,colframe=blue!50!black,colback=blue!50,colupper=yellow!50}\},
]
\texttt{posterbox}\{\texttt{row=1,column=2,span=2}\}{\texttt{First box}}
\texttt{posterbox}\{\texttt{row=2,column=2,span=0.8}\}{\texttt{Second box}}
\end{tcbposter}

\begin{tcbposter}[
  \texttt{poster} = \{\texttt{showframe,height=2.5cm,spacing=2mm,rows=2},
  \texttt{boxes} = \{\texttt{beamer,colframe=blue!50!black,colback=blue!50,colupper=yellow!50}\},
]
\texttt{posterbox}\{\texttt{row=1,column*=2,span=2}\}{\texttt{First box}}
\texttt{posterbox}\{\texttt{row=2,column*=2,span=0.8}\}{\texttt{Second box}}
\end{tcbposter}
\begin{tcbposter}
\[ \text{poster} = \{\text{showframe, height=2.5cm, spacing=2mm, rows=2}\}, \]
\[ \text{boxes} = \{\text{beamer, colframe=blue!50!black, colback=blue!50, colupper=yellow!50}\}, \]
\end{tcbposter}

\begin{tcbposter}
\[ \text{poster} = \{\text{showframe, height=2.5cm, spacing=2mm, rows=2}\}, \]
\[ \text{boxes} = \{\text{beamer, colframe=blue!50!black, colback=blue!50, colupper=yellow!50}\}, \]
\end{tcbposter}
The box is placed below another box with the given \( \langle \text{name} \rangle \). Also, \( \langle \text{name} \rangle \) can be a predefined node, see Section 21.2 on page 439.

\begin{tcbposter}
\[\text{poster} = \{\text{showframe, height=3cm, spacing=2mm, rows=2}\}, \text{boxes} = \{\text{beamer, colframe=blue!50!black, colback=blue!50, colupper=yellow!50}\}, \]
\posterbox\{name=A, column=1, below=top\}\{First box\} \\
\posterbox\{name=B, column=1, below=A\}\{Second box\} \\
\posterbox\{name=C, column=2, below=B\}\{Third box\} \\
\posterbox\{name=D, column=3, below=row1\}\{Fourth box\} \\
\end{tcbposter}

\begin{tcbposter}
\[\text{poster} = \{\text{showframe, height=3cm, spacing=2mm, rows=2}\}, \text{boxes} = \{\text{beamer, colframe=blue!50!black, colback=blue!50, colupper=yellow!50}\}, \]
\posterbox\{name=A, column=1, above=bottom\}\{First box\} \\
\posterbox\{name=B, column=1, above=A\}\{Second box\} \\
\posterbox\{name=C, column=2, above=B\}\{Third box\} \\
\posterbox\{name=D, column=3, above=row2\}\{Fourth box\} \\
\end{tcbposter}
The box is placed at the position with the given \textit{(name)}. This is quite likely a predefined node, see Section 21.2 on page 439.

\begin{tcbposter}
\setbox0 = \hbox{\begin{verbatim}
poster = {showframe,height=3cm,spacing=2mm,rows=2},
boxes = {beamer,colframe=blue!50!black,colback=blue!50,colupper=yellow!50},
\end{verbatim}}
\posterbox[name=A,column=1,at=middle]{First box}
\posterbox[name=B,column=2,at=row1]{Second box}
\end{tcbposter}

\begin{tcbposter}
\setbox0 = \hbox{\begin{verbatim}
poster = {showframe,height=3cm,spacing=2mm,rows=2},
boxes = {beamer,colframe=blue!50!black,colback=blue!50,colupper=yellow!50},
\end{verbatim}}
\posterbox[name=A,column=1,below=top]{First box}
\posterbox[name=B,column=1,between=A and bottom]{Second box}
\posterbox[name=C,column=2,above=bottom]{Third box}
\posterbox[name=D,column=2,between=top and C,span=2]{Fourth box}
\posterbox[name=E,column=3,between=D and bottom]{Fifth box}
\end{tcbposter}
The box is broken into partial boxes. These partial boxes are placed following the given \texttt{sequence} of placements. The feasible syntax for the \texttt{sequence} is:

\begin{verbatim}
\texttt{column a \textbf{between (name a1) and (name a2) then}}
\texttt{column b \textbf{between (name b1) and (name b2) then}}
\texttt{column c \textbf{between (name c1) and (name c2) then...}}
\end{verbatim}

Obviously, this places the first part box at \texttt{column a} between \texttt{(name a2) and (name a2)}.
The second box part is placed at \texttt{(column b) between (name b2) and (name b2)}, and so on.

\begin{tcbposter}
\begin{verbatim}
\texttt{poster = \{}showframe, height=6cm, spacing=2mm, rows=2\},}
\texttt{boxes = \{}beamer, colframe=blue!50!black, colback=blue!50, colupper=yellow!50\},}
\end{verbatim}
\end{tcbposter}

\begin{verbatim}
\texttt{posterbox[adjusted title=A]{name=A, column=1, below=top, span=2}{First box}}
\texttt{posterbox{name=B, column=2, above=bottom, span=2}{Second box}}
\texttt{posterbox[adjusted title=C, colframe=red!50!black, colback=red!50]{
\texttt{name=C, sequence=1 between A and bottom then}
\texttt{2 between A and B then}
\texttt{3 between top and B}}}
\texttt{\lipsum[2]}\end{verbatim}

\begin{verbatim}
\texttt{}}\end{verbatim}

\begin{verbatim}
\end{tcbposter}
If the box content of a /tcb/posterloc/sequence is too short to fill all reserved box parts, the empty boxes are drawn with the /tcb/placeholder style. This style can be redefined, e.g. to /tcb/blankest, if nothing should be drawn for empty boxes.

\begin{tcbposter}
poster = {showframe,height=2.5cm,spacing=2mm,rows=2},
boxes = {beamer,colframe=blue!50!black,colback=blue!50,colupper=yellow!50},
\posterbox{name=A,column=1,below=top,span=2}{First box}
\posterbox[colframe=red!50!black,colback=red!50]{name=B, sequence=1 between A and bottom then 2 between A and bottom then 3 between top and bottom}{Second box followed by placeholder boxes}
\end{tcbposter}

\begin{tcbposter}
poster = {showframe,height=3cm,spacing=2mm,rows=2},
boxes = {beamer,colframe=blue!50!black,colback=blue!50,colupper=yellow!50},
\posterbox[name=A,column=1,row=1,xshift=6mm]{First box}
\posterbox[name=B,column=2,row=2,xshift=-6mm]{Second box}
\end{tcbposter}

\begin{tcbposter}
poster = {showframe,height=3cm,spacing=2mm,rows=2},
boxes = {beamer,colframe=blue!50!black,colback=blue!50,colupper=yellow!50},
\posterbox[name=A,column=1,row=1]{First box}
\posterbox[name=B,column=2,row=2,xshift=-6mm}{Second box}
\end{tcbposter}

\texttt{\textbackslash{}begin\{tcbposter\}[
poster = \{showframe,height=3cm,spacing=2mm,rows=2\},
boxes = \{beamer,colframe=blue!50!black,colback=blue!50,colupper=yellow!50\},
\posterbox[name=A,column=1,row=1]{First box}
\posterbox[name=B,column=2,row=2,xshift=-6mm]{Second box}
\end{tcbposter}
Vertical shift of a box by \( \langle \text{length} \rangle \).

\[
\begin{tcbposter}
\text{poster} = \{ \text{showframe, height=3cm, spacing=2mm, rows=2}, \\
\text{boxes} = \{ \text{beamer, colframe=blue!50!black, colback=blue!50, colupper=yellow!50} \}, \\
\}
\\text{posterbox} \{ \text{name=A, column=1, row=1, yshift=-4mm} \} \{ \text{First box} \}
\\text{posterbox} \{ \text{name=B, column=2, row=2, yshift=4mm} \} \{ \text{Second box} \}
\end{tcbposter}
\]
The library is loaded by a package option or inside the preamble by:

\usepackage{lipsum} \tcbuselibrary{raster}
\tcbeuselibrary{fitting}

\section{Macros of the Library}

\tcboxfit\texttt{[\{options\}\{box content\}]}

Creates a colored box where the given \texttt{\{box content\}} is fitted to the width and height of the box. A \texttt{tcboxfit} has to have a fixed height. If no fixed height is given, a square box is constructed. In principle, most \texttt{\{options\}} for \texttt{tcolorbox\^\texttt{P.12}} can be used for \texttt{tcboxfit} with some restrictions. A \texttt{tcboxfit} cannot have a lower part and cannot be broken.

\begin{tcbraster}
\[\text{\texttt{fit algorithm=hybrid*,raster equal skip=1mm}}\]
\texttt{\texttt{\{height=4cm,title=With a title\}}} \texttt{\{\{\lipsum[2]\}\}}
\texttt{\{\texttt{\{height=2cm\}\{\lipsum[1]\}\}}}
\texttt{\{\texttt{\{height=8cm\}\{\lipsum[1]\}\}}}
\end{tcbraster}


With a title

This is a \LaTeX length adapted automatically by most variants of \texttt{/tcb/fit algorithm} \cite{P.468}. Therefore, it never is to be changed by the user, but may be applied read-only. The \texttt{\textbackslash cbfitdim} corresponds to the font size and may also be used to calculate box margins or other distances in dependency. The initial and maximum value for \texttt{\textbackslash cbfitdim} is set by \texttt{/tcb/fit basedim} \cite{P.459}.

\texttt{\textbackslash tcbfontsize\{\langle factor\rangle\}}

Selects a font size inside a \texttt{tcolorbox} which is scaled with the given \texttt{\langle factor\rangle} relative to \texttt{\textbackslash cbfitdim}. Also see \texttt{/tcb/fit fontsize macros} \cite{P.459}.

\begin{tcolorbox}[fit basedim=10pt]
\begin{itemize}
\item \texttt{\textbackslash tcbfontsize\{0.25\} Very tiny,}\n\item \texttt{\textbackslash tcbfontsize\{0.5\} Small,}\n\item \texttt{\textbackslash tcbfontsize\{1\} Normal,}\n\item \texttt{\textbackslash tcbfontsize\{2\} Large,}\n\item \texttt{\textbackslash tcbfontsize\{4\} Huge.}\n\end{itemize}
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[fit basedim=10pt, fit to height=2cm]
\begin{itemize}
\item \texttt{\textbackslash tcbfontsize\{0.25\} Very tiny,}\n\item \texttt{\textbackslash tcbfontsize\{0.5\} Small,}\n\item \texttt{\textbackslash tcbfontsize\{1\} Normal,}\n\item \texttt{\textbackslash tcbfontsize\{2\} Large,}\n\item \texttt{\textbackslash tcbfontsize\{4\} Huge.}\n\end{itemize}
\end{tcolorbox}
22.2 Producing \texttt{\texttt{tcboxfit}} Commands

\begin{verbatim}
\newtcboxfit\{(\texttt{init options})\}\{\texttt{name}\}\{\texttt{number}\}\{\texttt{default}\}\{\texttt{options}\}
\end{verbatim}

Creates a new macro \texttt{\texttt{name}} based on \texttt{tcboxfit}\textsuperscript{\texttt{P.452}}. Basically, \texttt{newtcboxfit} operates like \texttt{newcommand}. The new macro \texttt{\texttt{name}} optionally takes \texttt{\texttt{number}}+1 arguments, where \texttt{\texttt{default}} is the default value for the optional first argument. The \texttt{\texttt{options}} are given to the underlying \texttt{tcboxfit}. The \texttt{\texttt{init options}} allow setting up automatic numbering, see Section 5 from page 127.

\begin{verbatim}
\newtcboxfit\{mybox\}{colback=red!5!white, colframe=red!75!black, width=4cm, height=1.5cm, halign=center}
\mybox\par\mybox\par This is my own box.
\mybox\par This is my own box with more text to be written.
\end{verbatim}

\begin{verbatim}
% \usepackage{lipsum}
\newtcboxfit\{\mybox\}[2]{colback=red!5!white, colframe=red!75!black, fonttitle=\bfseries, boxsep=1mm, left=0mm, right=0mm, top=0mm, bottom=0mm, halign=center, valign=center, nobeforeafter, width=#1, height=#2}
\mybox[2.5cm]{1cm}{First box} \mybox[2.5cm]{1cm}{Second box with more text} \mybox[5cm]{2cm}{Third box with text} \mybox[5cm]{3cm}{\lipsum[1]}
\end{verbatim}

\begin{verbatim}
\renewtcboxfit\{(\texttt{init options})\}\{\texttt{name}\}\{\texttt{number}\}\{\texttt{default}\}\{\texttt{options}\}
\end{verbatim}

Operates like \texttt{newtcboxfit}, but based on \texttt{renewcommand} instead of \texttt{newcommand}. An existing macro is redefined.
\NewTCBoxFit[(init options)]{(name)}{(specification)}{(options)}

Creates a new command \(\langle \text{name} \rangle\) based on \texttt{tcboxfit}—P.452. Basically, \NewTCBoxFit operates like \texttt{NewDocumentCommand}. This means, the new command \(\langle \text{name} \rangle\) is constructed with the given argument \(\langle \text{specification} \rangle\). An error is issued if \(\langle \text{name} \rangle\) has already been defined. The \(\langle \text{options} \rangle\) are given to the underlying \texttt{tcboxfit}—P.452.

Note that /tcb/savedelimiter—P.32 is set to the given \(\langle \text{name} \rangle\) automatically. The \(\langle \text{init options} \rangle\) allow setting up automatic numbering, see Section 5 from page 127.

\begin{verbatim}
% \usepackage{lipsum}
\NewTCBoxFit{\mybox}{ O{} m !o }
{colback=red!5!white, 
colframe=red!75!black, 
width=#2,height=#2/3*2, 
IfValueT={#3}{height=#3}, 
#1}
\mybox[colback=yellow]{6cm}\% 
\lipsum[2]
\mybox[colback=yellow]{6cm}[4cm]\{\lipsum[2]\}
\end{verbatim}

\RenewTCBoxFit[(init options)]{(name)}{(specification)}{(options)}

Operates like \texttt{NewTCBoxFit}, but based on \texttt{RenewDocumentCommand} instead of \texttt{NewDocumentCommand}. An existing command is redefined.

\ProvideTCBoxFit[(init options)]{(name)}{(specification)}{(options)}

Operates like \texttt{NewTCBoxFit}, but based on \texttt{ProvideDocumentCommand} instead of \texttt{NewDocumentCommand}. The command \(\langle \text{name} \rangle\) is only created if it is not already defined.

\DeclareTCBoxFit[(init options)]{(name)}{(specification)}{(options)}

Operates like \texttt{NewTCBoxFit}, but based on \texttt{DeclareDocumentCommand} instead of \texttt{NewDocumentCommand}. The new command \(\langle \text{name} \rangle\) is always created, irrespective of an already existing command with the same name.
\NewTotalTCBoxFit{\{init options\}}{\{name\}}{\{specification\}}{\{options\}}{\{content\}}

Creates a new command \{name\} based on \tcboxfit. In contrast to \NewTCBoxFit, also the \{content\} of the \tcboxfit is specified. Basically, \NewTotalTCBoxFit operates like \NewDocumentCommand. This means, the new command \{name\} is constructed with the given argument \{specification\}. An error is issued if \{name\} has already been defined. The \{options\} are given to the underlying \tcboxfit which is filled with the specified \{content\}. Note that /tcb/savedelimiter is set to the given \{name\} automatically.

The \{init options\} allow setting up automatic numbering, see Section 5 from page 127.

\begin{quote}
% \usepackage{lipsum}
\NewTotalTCBoxFit{multibox}{\{\#1\} m 0{10} m}
{nobeforeafter,colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,width=#2,height=#2/3*2, valign=center,#1}
{\foreach \n in {1,...,#3} { #4} }
\end{quote}

\begin{quote}
\multibox{5cm}[I shall not repeat.]
\multibox[\colframe=blue!75!white]{5cm}[20][I shall not repeat.]
\multibox[\colback=yellow,\height=5cm]{14cm}[100][I shall not repeat.]
\end{quote}

\RenewTotalTCBoxFit{\{init options\}}{\{name\}}{\{specification\}}{\{options\}}{\{content\}}

Operates like \NewTotalTCBoxFit, but based on \RenewDocumentCommand instead of \NewDocumentCommand. An existing command is redefined.

\ProvideTotalTCBoxFit{\{init options\}}{\{name\}}{\{specification\}}{\{options\}}{\{content\}}

Operates like \NewTotalTCBoxFit, but based on \ProvideDocumentCommand instead of \NewDocumentCommand. The command \{name\} is only created if it is not already defined.

\DeclareTotalTCBoxFit{\{init options\}}{\{name\}}{\{specification\}}{\{options\}}{\{content\}}

Operates like \NewTotalTCBoxFit, but based on \DeclareDocumentCommand instead of \NewDocumentCommand. The new command \{name\} is always created, irrespective of an already existing command with the same name.
22.3 Option Keys of the Library

The font size for the content of a box with fixed width and fixed height can be adjusted automatically. This is called the fitbox capture mode. Note that the fit control algorithm constructs a series of versions for the box and selects the “best”. Therefore, the compilation time is quite longer than for a normal box. The \tcboxfitmacro uses this algorithm by default.

The fit control keys are only applicable to unbreakable boxes without a lower part. The box content should not change counters.

\tcbfit (style, initially unset)

Sets the \tcb/capture mode to fitbox, i.e. enables the font size adjustment algorithm. Thereby, a tcolorbox acts like \tcboxfit where the given box content is fitted to the width and height of the box. Therefore, the box has to have a fixed height. If no fixed height is given, a square box is constructed. The font dimension \tcbfitdim can also be used to adjust the margins of the box since a box with a tiny font may not need large margins. The number of constructed boxes is saved to the macro \tcbfitsteps for analysis.

\begin{fitting}{4cm}
\lipsum[1]
\end{fitting}

\begin{fitting}{2cm}
\lipsum[2]
\end{fitting}

\begin{fitting}{1cm}
\lipsum[3]
\end{fitting}


Shortcut for using \texttt{/tcb/fit} and setting the \texttt{(width)} and \texttt{(height)} values separately.

\begin{tcolorbox}[fit to=3cm and 2cm]
This box content is fitted to the given dimensions.
\end{tcolorbox}

Shortcut for using \texttt{/tcb/fit} and setting the \texttt{(height)} value separately.

\begin{tcolorbox}[fit to height=2cm]
This box content is fitted to the given height.
\end{tcolorbox}

Sets the starting font dimension for the font size adjustment algorithm to \texttt{(length)}. The algorithm never enlarges this dimension. Therefore, the final \texttt{/tcbfitdim} is identical to or smaller than \texttt{(length)}.

\begin{tcolorbox}[fit to=4cm and 2cm, fit basedim=50pt]
Enough words for the box.
\end{tcolorbox}

Sets the skip value of the selected font to \texttt{(real value)} times \texttt{/tcbfitdim}.

\begin{tcolorbox}[fit to=5cm and 4cm, fit skip=1.0]
\lipsum[1]
\end{tcolorbox}
Redefines the standard \LaTeX{} font size macros \texttt{\tiny}, \texttt{\scriptsize}, \texttt{\footnotesize}, \texttt{\small}, \texttt{\normalsize}, \texttt{\large}, \texttt{\Large}, \texttt{\Huge}, and \texttt{\Huge}, to set font sizes relative to the current \texttt{\tcbfitdim}. Note that the display skip values for mathematical formulas are respected by the redefined macros. Also see \texttt{\tcbfontsize}.

\begin{tcolorbox}[fit to height=4cm]
\Large\bfseries This text is not adapted:\par
\lipsum[2]
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[fit to height=4cm, fit fontsize macros]
\Large\bfseries This text is adapted:\par
\lipsum[2]
\end{tcolorbox}

This text is not adapted:

This text is adapted:

The relative font size macros are also usable without the \texttt{fit} algorithm.

\let\realHuge=\Huge

\begin{tcolorbox}[fit basedim=7pt, fontupper=\normalsize, fit fontsize macros]
The relative font size macros are also usable without the \texttt{fit} algorithm.\par
\Huge Adapted Huge --- \Huge Original Huge\par
\end{tcolorbox}

Adapted title
/tcb/fit height plus=\langle dimension \rangle

(no default, initially 0pt)

The box is allowed to enlarge the fixed height up to the given \langle dimension \rangle, before a font size fit is applied. An optional /tcb/fit width plus is tried after the height adaption.

/tcb/fit width plus=\langle dimension \rangle

(no default, initially 0pt)

The box is allowed to enlarge the fixed width up to the given \langle dimension \rangle, before a font size fit is applied. An optional /tcb/fit height plus is tried after the width adaption.
Typically but not necessarily, the optional title of a tcolorbox is not part of the fit operation. If a /tcb/fit width plus is applied, the title is also adapted to the new width. If counters are increased inside the title text, they may be increased more than one time. To avoid this, you are encouraged to use /tcb/phantom\textsuperscript{P.113} or /tcb/step and label\textsuperscript{P.114} to set counters or use automatic numbering, see Subsection 5.1 from page 127.

\texttt{/tcb/fit width from\langle min\rangle to \langle max\rangle (style, no default)}

Sets the box width to \langle min\rangle and allows the width to grow up to \langle max\rangle.

\begin{verbatim}
% \usepackage{lipsum}
\tcbset{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,left=1mm,top=1mm,bottom=1mm, right=1mm,boxsep=0mm,height=4cm}

\begin{tcolorbox}[fit,width=\linewidth/2]
\lipsum[2]
\end{tcolorbox}\par
\begin{tcolorbox}[fit width from=\linewidth/2 to \linewidth]
\lipsum[2]
\end{tcolorbox}\par
\begin{tcolorbox}[fit width from=\linewidth/2 to \linewidth]
\lipsum[2]
\end{tcolorbox}\par
\end{verbatim}

Sets the box height to \((\text{min})\) and allows the height to grow up to \((\text{max})\).

\begin{mybox}
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{mybox}
\begin{mybox}
This is a tcolorbox. This is a tcolorbox. This is a tcolorbox.
\end{mybox}
\begin{mybox}
\lipsum[2]
\end{mybox}
Sets the algorithm for the fitting process after optionally width and height are adapted. In the following, adapting the font size means adapting `$\text{\texttt{tcbfitdim}}$`. Feasible values for `(name)` are:

- **fontsize** (initial): The algorithm is a bisection method that adapts the font size until certain stop conditions are fulfilled. This is the most time-consuming method but it is robust and gives pleasant results.

  - The used font has to be freely scalable for this method! Other content than text is not scaled down. The aspect ratio is fully guaranteed.

- **fontsize\*:** First, the **fontsize** algorithm is applied. If the font was scaled down and the resulting height is too small, the box is squeezed to fit the area.

  - The used font has to be freely scalable for this method! Other content than text may be slightly rescaled. The aspect ratio cannot be fully guaranteed.

- **areasize**: The algorithm calculates the area size for the text without scaling the font. The text box is shaped for the needed aspect ratio in one or two steps. Finally, it is scaled down with a standard `\text{\texttt{resizebox}}` macro.

  - The used font has not to be scalable. Every box content is scaled down. The aspect ratio cannot be fully guaranteed.

- **areasize\*:** The **areasize** algorithm is applied, but if the content was scaled down and the resulting height is too small, the box is squeezed to fit the area.

  - The used font has not to be scalable. Every box content is scaled down. The aspect ratio cannot be fully guaranteed.

- **hybrid**: First, this algorithm estimates the needed font size in one or two steps. Then an **areasize** fitting as above is applied.

  - The used font has to be freely scalable for this method! Other content than text may be slightly rescaled. The aspect ratio cannot be fully guaranteed.

- **hybrid\*:** First, this algorithm estimates the needed font size in one or two steps. Then an **areasize\*** fitting as above is applied.

  - The used font has to be freely scalable for this method! Other content than text may be slightly rescaled. The aspect ratio cannot be fully guaranteed.

- **squeeze**: The text box is brutally scaled down to fit.

  - The aspect ratio is very likely to be horrible. You should not use this method for final documents.
Quality \textbf{dotfill} versus \textit{dotfill} Speed

\begin{tabular}{ll}
\end{tabular}
The following options set control parameters for the fit algorithm. Mainly, they apply to the `fontsize` variant, see /tcb/fit algorithm P.463. The options should be seen as experimental and are likely to change in future versions, if necessary.

/tcb/fit maxstep=⟨number⟩ (no default, initially 20)

Sets the maximal step size for the font size adjustment algorithm. In normal situations, the algorithm stops before reaching the initial value of 20 steps. If the box content does not shrink, this value prevents an endless loop.

/tcb/fit maxfontdiff=⟨dimension⟩ (no default, initially 0.1pt)

The algorithm stops, if the font size is determined within a deviation of ⟨dimension⟩.

/tcb/fit maxfontdiffgap=⟨dimension⟩ (no default, initially 1pt)

The algorithm stops, if the number of lines is determined and the font size is determined within a deviation of ⟨dimension⟩.

/tcb/fit maxwidthdiff=⟨dimension⟩ (no default, initially 1pt)

The algorithm stops, if the (optionally) flexible box width is determined within a deviation of ⟨dimension⟩.

/tcb/fit maxwidthdiffgap=⟨dimension⟩ (no default, initially 10pt)

The algorithm stops, if the number of lines is determined and the (optionally) flexible box width is determined within a deviation of ⟨dimension⟩.

/tcb/fit warning=⟨value⟩ (no default, initially off)

Typically, the fit control algorithm constructs several auxiliary boxes to determine the optimal one. If not switched off, the construction of the auxiliary boxes may produce many \hbox warnings. This option key changes the \badness value.

• off: Most of `Underfull \hbox` and `Overfull \hbox` warnings are switched off (including the ones for the finally used box).
• on: All warnings for all auxiliary boxes are displayed.
• final: Only warnings for the finally used box are displayed. Note that an additional box has to be constructed for these messages.
The library is loaded by a package option or inside the preamble by:

```latex
\usepackage[hookable]{tcolorbox}
```

For the skin related options, the library `lib/skins` has to be loaded separately.

### 23.1 Concept of Hooks

A hook is a placeholder in some \LaTeX{} code where additional code can be added. For example, the \LaTeX{} macro `\AtBeginDocument` adds code to a hook which is placed at the beginning of every document.

Several option keys of `tcolorbox` allow providing some code which is added to specific places of a colored box. For example, `/tcb/before upper` places code before the content of the upper part. A following usage of this key overwrites any prior settings.

The library `lib/hooks` extends `/tcb/before upper` and several more existing keys to “hookable” versions, e.g. `/tcb/before upper app` and `/tcb/before upper pre`. The “hookable” keys don’t overwrite prior settings but either append or prepend the newly given code to the existing code.

The general naming convention (with some small exceptions) is:

- `(option key) app`: works like `(option key)` but appends its code to the existing code.
- `(option key) pre`: works like `(option key)` but prepends its code to the existing code.

If the original `(option key)` is used (again), all code will be overwritten. Therefore, the order of the option key usage is crucial.

```latex
\begin{tcolorbox}[title=My table]
\begin{tabular}{|c|c|c|c|c|}
\hline
Group & One & Two & Three & Four & Sum \\
\hline
Red & 1000.00 & 2000.00 & 3000.00 & 4000.00 & 10000.00 \\
Green & 2000.00 & 3000.00 & 4000.00 & 5000.00 & 14000.00 \\
Blue & 3000.00 & 4000.00 & 5000.00 & 6000.00 & 18000.00 \\
Sum & 6000.00 & 9000.00 & 12000.00 & 15000.00 & 42000.00 \\
\hline
\end{tabular}
\end{tcolorbox}
```
23.2 Box Content Additions

The following option keys extend the options given in Subsection 4.11 from page 70.

/tcb/before title app\{code\} (no default)

(Appends the given \(\langle\text{code}\rangle\) to /tcb/before title\(^\star\)P.70 after the color and font settings and before the content of the title.

/tcb/before title pre\{code\} (no default)

(Prepends the given \(\langle\text{code}\rangle\) to /tcb/before title\(^\star\)P.70 after the color and font settings and before the content of the title.

/tcb/after title app\{code\} (no default)

(Appends the given \(\langle\text{code}\rangle\) to /tcb/after title\(^\star\)P.70 after the content of the title.

/tcb/after title pre\{code\} (no default)

(Prepends the given \(\langle\text{code}\rangle\) to /tcb/after title\(^\star\)P.70 after the content of the title.

/tcb/before upper app\{code\} (no default)

(Appends the given \(\langle\text{code}\rangle\) to /tcb/before upper\(^\star\)P.71 or /tcb/before upper\(^\star\)P.71 after the color and font settings and before the content of the upper part.

/tcb/before upper pre\{code\} (no default)

(Prepends the given \(\langle\text{code}\rangle\) to /tcb/before upper\(^\star\)P.71 or /tcb/before upper\(^\star\)P.71 after the color and font settings and before the content of the upper part.

/tcb/after upper app\{code\} (no default)

(Appends the given \(\langle\text{code}\rangle\) to /tcb/after upper\(^\star\)P.72 or /tcb/after upper\(^\star\)P.72 after the content of the upper part.

/tcb/after upper pre\{code\} (no default)

(Prepends the given \(\langle\text{code}\rangle\) to /tcb/after upper\(^\star\)P.72 or /tcb/after upper\(^\star\)P.72 after the content of the upper part.

\[\begin{tcolorbox}[ams align,\% this sets \textit{before upper\(^\star\)} and \textit{after upper\(^\star\)}
  colback=yellow!10!white,colframe=red!50!black,
  before upper app={\frac{2}{\sqrt{2}}&=\sqrt{2}.\},
  after upper pre={\left(\int x^2 \text{d}x = \frac13 x^3 + c.\}}
]\]

\(\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n} = \infty.\) \hspace{1cm} (23)

\(\int x^2 \text{d}x = \frac13 x^3 + c.\) \hspace{1cm} (24)

\(\sin \left(\frac{\pi}{2}\right) = 1.\) \hspace{1cm} (25)
/tcb/before lower app\=(code)\quad (no default)

Appends the given \(\langle\text{code}\rangle\) to /tcb/before lower\textsuperscript{P.73} or /tcb/before lower\textsuperscript{*P.73} after the color and font settings and \textit{before} the content of the lower part.

/tcb/before lower pre\=(code)\quad (no default)

Prepends the given \(\langle\text{code}\rangle\) to /tcb/before lower\textsuperscript{P.73} or /tcb/before lower\textsuperscript{*P.73} after the color and font settings and \textit{before} the content of the lower part.

/tcb/after lower app\=(code)\quad (no default)

Appends the given \(\langle\text{code}\rangle\) to /tcb/after lower\textsuperscript{P.74} or /tcb/after lower\textsuperscript{*P.74} after the content of the lower part.

/tcb/after lower pre\=(code)\quad (no default)

Prepends the given \(\langle\text{code}\rangle\) to /tcb/after lower\textsuperscript{P.74} or /tcb/after lower\textsuperscript{*P.74} after the content of the lower part.
This shortcut style sets \( \texttt{tcb/environment title app} \) \texttt{\{name\}} \texttt{\} \texttt{\{code\}} \texttt{(style)} and \( \texttt{tcb/environment title args app} \) \texttt{\{name\}} \texttt{\}\{code\} \texttt{(style)} to \begin{\texttt{\{name\}}} and \begin{\texttt{\end{\{name\}}}, i.e. the title text is enclosed by the environment \texttt{\{name\}}. The second variant also places \texttt{\{code\}} after \begin{\texttt{\{name\}}. Note that you may need additional brackets around \texttt{\{code\}}, if \texttt{\{code\}} contains some parameter(s) for the environment \texttt{\{name\}}.

This shortcut style sets \( \texttt{tcb/environment title pre} \) \texttt{\{name\}} \texttt{\} \texttt{\{code\}} \texttt{(style)} and \( \texttt{tcb/environment title args pre} \) \texttt{\{name\}} \texttt{\}\{code\} \texttt{(style)} to \begin{\texttt{\{name\}}} and \begin{\texttt{\end{\{name\}}}, i.e. the title text is enclosed by the environment \texttt{\{name\}}. The second variant also places \texttt{\{code\}} after \begin{\texttt{\{name\}}. Note that you may need additional brackets around \texttt{\{code\}}, if \texttt{\{code\}} contains some parameter(s) for the environment \texttt{\{name\}}.

This shortcut style sets \( \texttt{tcb/environment upper app} \) \texttt{\{name\}} \texttt{\} \texttt{\{code\}} \texttt{(style)} and \( \texttt{tcb/environment upper args app} \) \texttt{\{name\}} \texttt{\}\{code\} \texttt{(style)} to \begin{\texttt{\{name\}}} and \begin{\texttt{\end{\{name\}}}, i.e. the upper part is enclosed by the environment \texttt{\{name\}}. The second variant also places \texttt{\{code\}} after \begin{\texttt{\{name\}}. Note that you may need additional brackets around \texttt{\{code\}}, if \texttt{\{code\}} contains some parameter(s) for the environment \texttt{\{name\}}.

This shortcut style sets \( \texttt{tcb/environment upper pre} \) \texttt{\{name\}} \texttt{\} \texttt{\{code\}} \texttt{(style)} and \( \texttt{tcb/environment upper args pre} \) \texttt{\{name\}} \texttt{\}\{code\} \texttt{(style)} to \begin{\texttt{\{name\}}} and \begin{\texttt{\end{\{name\}}}, i.e. the upper part is enclosed by the environment \texttt{\{name\}}. The second variant also places \texttt{\{code\}} after \begin{\texttt{\{name\}}. Note that you may need additional brackets around \texttt{\{code\}}, if \texttt{\{code\}} contains some parameter(s) for the environment \texttt{\{name\}}.

This shortcut style sets \( \texttt{tcb/environment lower app} \) \texttt{\{name\}} \texttt{\} \texttt{\{code\}} \texttt{(style)} and \( \texttt{tcb/environment lower args app} \) \texttt{\{name\}} \texttt{\}\{code\} \texttt{(style)} to \begin{\texttt{\{name\}}} and \begin{\texttt{\end{\{name\}}}, i.e. the lower part is enclosed by the environment \texttt{\{name\}}. The second variant also places \texttt{\{code\}} after \begin{\texttt{\{name\}}. Note that you may need additional brackets around \texttt{\{code\}}, if \texttt{\{code\}} contains some parameter(s) for the environment \texttt{\{name\}}.

This shortcut style sets \( \texttt{tcb/environment lower pre} \) \texttt{\{name\}} \texttt{\} \texttt{\{code\}} \texttt{(style)} and \( \texttt{tcb/environment lower args pre} \) \texttt{\{name\}} \texttt{\}\{code\} \texttt{(style)} to \begin{\texttt{\{name\}}} and \begin{\texttt{\end{\{name\}}}, i.e. the lower part is enclosed by the environment \texttt{\{name\}}. The second variant also places \texttt{\{code\}} after \begin{\texttt{\{name\}}. Note that you may need additional brackets around \texttt{\{code\}}, if \texttt{\{code\}} contains some parameter(s) for the environment \texttt{\{name\}}.
23.3 Embedding into the Surroundings

The following option keys extend the options given in Subsection 4.14 from page 89.

The “hookable” versions are usable inside the document. In the preamble, they can only be used after explicit setting of \(\text{tcb/before} \rightarrow \text{P.89}\) and \(\text{tcb/after} \rightarrow \text{P.89}\) or by e.g. \(\text{tcb/parskip} \rightarrow \text{P.93}\).

/tcb/before app\(=\langle\text{code}\rangle\) (no default)

Appends the given \(\langle\text{code}\rangle\) to \(\text{tcb/before} \rightarrow \text{P.89}\) before the colored box.

/tcb/before pre\(=\langle\text{code}\rangle\) (no default)

Prepends the given \(\langle\text{code}\rangle\) to \(\text{tcb/before} \rightarrow \text{P.89}\) before the colored box.

/tcb/after app\(=\langle\text{code}\rangle\) (no default)

Appends the given \(\langle\text{code}\rangle\) to \(\text{tcb/after} \rightarrow \text{P.89}\) after the colored box.

/tcb/after pre\(=\langle\text{code}\rangle\) (no default)

Prepends the given \(\langle\text{code}\rangle\) to \(\text{tcb/after} \rightarrow \text{P.89}\) after the colored box.

\begin{tcolorbox}[\textbf{My title},before app={The box follows:\[4pt\]}, after app={This is the end.}]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

/tcb/before float app\(=\langle\text{code}\rangle\) (no default)

Appends the given \(\langle\text{code}\rangle\) to \(\text{tcb/before float} \rightarrow \text{P.88}\) before the colored box.

/tcb/before float pre\(=\langle\text{code}\rangle\) (no default)

Prepends the given \(\langle\text{code}\rangle\) to \(\text{tcb/before float} \rightarrow \text{P.88}\) before the colored box.

/tcb/after float app\(=\langle\text{code}\rangle\) (no default)

Appends the given \(\langle\text{code}\rangle\) to \(\text{tcb/after float} \rightarrow \text{P.88}\) after the colored box.

/tcb/after float pre\(=\langle\text{code}\rangle\) (no default)

Prepends the given \(\langle\text{code}\rangle\) to \(\text{tcb/after float} \rightarrow \text{P.88}\) after the colored box.
23.4 Overlays

The following option keys extend the options given in Subsection 4.12 from page 82.

/tcb/overlay app=(graphical code) (no default)

Appends the given \langle graphical code \rangle to /tcb/overlay \textsuperscript{P.82}.

/tcb/overlay unbroken app=(graphical code) (no default)

Appends the given \langle graphical code \rangle to /tcb/overlay unbroken \textsuperscript{P.83}.

/tcb/overlay unbroken pre=(graphical code) (no default)

Prepends the given \langle graphical code \rangle to /tcb/overlay unbroken \textsuperscript{P.83}.

/tcb/overlay first app=(graphical code) (no default)

Appends the given \langle graphical code \rangle to /tcb/overlay first \textsuperscript{P.83}.

/tcb/overlay first pre=(graphical code) (no default)

Prepends the given \langle graphical code \rangle to /tcb/overlay first \textsuperscript{P.83}. 

471
/tcb/overlay middle app\textsuperscript{=}(graphical code) (no default)
Appends the given \textit{graphical code} to /tcb/overlay middle \textsuperscript{→P.83}.

/tcb/overlay middle pre\textsuperscript{=}(graphical code) (no default)
Prepends the given \textit{graphical code} to /tcb/overlay middle \textsuperscript{→P.83}.

/tcb/overlay last app\textsuperscript{=}(graphical code) (no default)
Appends the given \textit{graphical code} to /tcb/overlay last \textsuperscript{→P.83}.

/tcb/overlay last pre\textsuperscript{=}(graphical code) (no default)
Prepends the given \textit{graphical code} to /tcb/overlay last \textsuperscript{→P.83}.

/tcb/overlay broken app\textsuperscript{=}(graphical code) (no default)
Appends the given \textit{graphical code} to /tcb/overlay broken \textsuperscript{→P.83}.

/tcb/overlay broken pre\textsuperscript{=}(graphical code) (no default)
Prepends the given \textit{graphical code} to /tcb/overlay broken \textsuperscript{→P.83}.

/tcb/overlay unbroken and first app\textsuperscript{=}(graphical code) (no default)
Appends the given \textit{graphical code} to /tcb/overlay unbroken and first \textsuperscript{→P.83}.

/tcb/overlay unbroken and first pre\textsuperscript{=}(graphical code) (no default)
Prepends the given \textit{graphical code} to /tcb/overlay unbroken and first \textsuperscript{→P.83}.

/tcb/overlay middle and last app\textsuperscript{=}(graphical code) (no default)
Appends the given \textit{graphical code} to /tcb/overlay middle and last \textsuperscript{→P.83}.

/tcb/overlay middle and last pre\textsuperscript{=}(graphical code) (no default)
Prepends the given \textit{graphical code} to /tcb/overlay middle and last \textsuperscript{→P.83}.

/tcb/overlay unbroken and last app\textsuperscript{=}(graphical code) (no default)
Appends the given \textit{graphical code} to /tcb/overlay unbroken and last \textsuperscript{→P.83}.

/tcb/overlay unbroken and last pre\textsuperscript{=}(graphical code) (no default)
Prepends the given \textit{graphical code} to /tcb/overlay unbroken and last \textsuperscript{→P.83}.

/tcb/overlay first and middle app\textsuperscript{=}(graphical code) (no default)
Appends the given \textit{graphical code} to /tcb/overlay first and middle \textsuperscript{→P.83}.

/tcb/overlay first and middle pre\textsuperscript{=}(graphical code) (no default)
Prepends the given \textit{graphical code} to /tcb/overlay first and middle \textsuperscript{→P.83}.

472
23.5 Watermarks

The following option keys extend the options given in Subsection 10.3 from page 189.

Watermarks are special overlays. The \texttt{hooks} library allows the combination of several watermarks and overlays.

\texttt{/tcb/watermark text app=(text)} (no default)

Appends a /tcb/watermark text \textsuperscript{\texttt{P.189}} to the colored box.

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,title=My title,watermark graphics=Basilica_5.png,\par]
\begin{tcbinputlisting}[lipsym=\texttt{P.189},tcbstyle=\texttt{tcb},\par]
\texttt{/tcb/watermark text pre=(text)} (no default)

Prepends a /tcb/watermark text \textsuperscript{\texttt{P.189}} to the colored box.

\texttt{/tcb/watermark text app on=(part) is (text)} (no default)

Appends a /tcb/watermark text on \textsuperscript{\texttt{P.189}} the named \texttt{part} of a break sequence.

\texttt{/tcb/watermark text pre on=(part) is (text)} (no default)

Prepends a /tcb/watermark text on \textsuperscript{\texttt{P.189}} the named \texttt{part} of a break sequence.
Appends a `/tcb/watermark graphics` \(^{P.190}\) referenced by \langle file name \rangle to the colored box.

Prepends a `/tcb/watermark graphics` \(^{P.190}\) referenced by \langle file name \rangle to the colored box.

Appends a `/tcb/watermark graphics on` \(^{P.190}\) the named \langle part \rangle of a break sequence. The picture is referenced by \langle file name \rangle.

Prepends a `/tcb/watermark graphics on` \(^{P.190}\) the named \langle part \rangle of a break sequence. The picture is referenced by \langle file name \rangle.

Appends a `/tcb/watermark tikz` \(^{P.191}\) with the given tikz \langle graphical code \rangle to the colored box.

Prepends a `/tcb/watermark tikz` \(^{P.191}\) with the given tikz \langle graphical code \rangle to the colored box.

Appends a `/tcb/watermark tikz app` \(^{P.191}\) referenced by \langle graphical code \rangle to the colored box.

Prepends a `/tcb/watermark tikz pre` \(^{P.191}\) referenced by \langle graphical code \rangle to the colored box.
23.6 Underlays

The following option keys extend the options given in Section 10.8 on page 219. There are no app type keys since underlays are stackable by default.

/tcb/underlay pre=(graphical code) (no default)
Prepends the given (graphical code) to /tcb/underlay → P.219.

/tcb/underlay unbroken pre=(graphical code) (no default)
Prepends the given (graphical code) to /tcb/underlay unbroken → P.220.

/tcb/underlay first pre=(graphical code) (no default)
Prepends the given (graphical code) to /tcb/underlay first → P.220.

/tcb/underlay middle pre=(graphical code) (no default)
Prepends the given (graphical code) to /tcb/underlay middle → P.220.

/tcb/underlay last pre=(graphical code) (no default)
Prepends the given (graphical code) to /tcb/underlay last → P.220.

/tcb/underlay boxed title pre=(graphical code) (no default)
Prepends the given (graphical code) to /tcb/underlay boxed title → P.220.

/tcb/underlay broken pre=(graphical code) (no default)
Prepends the given (graphical code) to /tcb/underlay broken → P.220.

/tcb/underlay unbroken and first pre=(graphical code) (no default)
Prepends the given (graphical code) to /tcb/underlay unbroken and first → P.220.

/tcb/underlay middle and last pre=(graphical code) (no default)
Prepends the given (graphical code) to /tcb/underlay middle and last → P.220.

/tcb/underlay unbroken and last pre=(graphical code) (no default)
Prepends the given (graphical code) to /tcb/underlay unbroken and last → P.220.

/tcb/underlay first and middle pre=(graphical code) (no default)
Prepends the given (graphical code) to /tcb/underlay first and middle → P.220.
23.7 Finishes

The following option keys extend the options given in Section 10.9 on page 221. There are no app type keys since finishes are stackable by default.

- \texttt{/tcb/finish pre}=(graphical code) \hspace{1em} (no default)
  Prepends the given \texttt{graphical code} to \texttt{/tcb/finish} \rightarrow \texttt{P.221}.

- \texttt{/tcb/finish unbroken pre}=(graphical code) \hspace{1em} (no default)
  Prepends the given \texttt{graphical code} to \texttt{/tcb/finish unbroken} \rightarrow \texttt{P.222}.

- \texttt{/tcb/finish first pre}=(graphical code) \hspace{1em} (no default)
  Prepends the given \texttt{graphical code} to \texttt{/tcb/finish first} \rightarrow \texttt{P.222}.

- \texttt{/tcb/finish middle pre}=(graphical code) \hspace{1em} (no default)
  Prepends the given \texttt{graphical code} to \texttt{/tcb/finish middle} \rightarrow \texttt{P.222}.

- \texttt{/tcb/finish last pre}=(graphical code) \hspace{1em} (no default)
  Prepends the given \texttt{graphical code} to \texttt{/tcb/finish last} \rightarrow \texttt{P.222}.

- \texttt{/tcb/finish broken pre}=(graphical code) \hspace{1em} (no default)
  Prepends the given \texttt{graphical code} to \texttt{/tcb/finish broken} \rightarrow \texttt{P.222}.

- \texttt{/tcb/finish unbroken and first pre}=(graphical code) \hspace{1em} (no default)
  Prepends the given \texttt{graphical code} to \texttt{/tcb/finish unbroken and first} \rightarrow \texttt{P.222}.

- \texttt{/tcb/finish middle and last pre}=(graphical code) \hspace{1em} (no default)
  Prepends the given \texttt{graphical code} to \texttt{/tcb/finish middle and last} \rightarrow \texttt{P.222}.

- \texttt{/tcb/finish unbroken and last pre}=(graphical code) \hspace{1em} (no default)
  Prepends the given \texttt{graphical code} to \texttt{/tcb/finish unbroken and last} \rightarrow \texttt{P.222}.

- \texttt{/tcb/finish first and middle pre}=(graphical code) \hspace{1em} (no default)
  Prepends the given \texttt{graphical code} to \texttt{/tcb/finish first and middle} \rightarrow \texttt{P.222}.

23.8 Skin Code

The following option keys extend the options given in Subsection 9.2 from page 160.

- \texttt{/tcb/frame code app}=(graphical code) \hspace{1em} (no default)
  Appends the given \texttt{graphical code} to \texttt{/tcb/frame code} \rightarrow \texttt{P.160}.

- \texttt{/tcb/frame code pre}=(graphical code) \hspace{1em} (no default)
  Prepends the given \texttt{graphical code} to \texttt{/tcb/frame code} \rightarrow \texttt{P.160}.

- \texttt{/tcb/interior titled code app}=(graphical code) \hspace{1em} (no default)
  Appends the given \texttt{graphical code} to \texttt{/tcb/interior titled code} \rightarrow \texttt{P.160}.
My title


\begin{tcolorbox}[title=My title, enhanced, colframe=Navy, frame code app={\draw[yellow, line width=1cm] (frame.south west) -- (frame.north east);}, interior titled code app={\draw[red, line width=1cm] (frame.north west) -- (frame.south east);},]
\lipsum[1]
\end{tcolorbox}
23.9 Extras

The following option keys extend the options given in Section 19.5 on page 410. There are no app type keys since extras are stackable by default.

\begin{verbatim}
N 2015-07-16 /tcb/extras pre={{options}}  (no default)
  Prepends the given \langle options\rangle to /tcb/extras \textsuperscript{\textsuperscript{*P.410}}.

N 2015-07-16 /tcb/extras unbroken pre={{options}}  (no default)
  Prepends the given \langle options\rangle to /tcb/extras unbroken \textsuperscript{\textsuperscript{*P.410}}.

N 2015-07-16 /tcb/extras first pre={{options}}  (no default)
  Prepends the given \langle options\rangle to /tcb/extras first \textsuperscript{\textsuperscript{*P.410}}.

N 2015-07-16 /tcb/extras middle pre={{options}}  (no default)
  Prepends the given \langle options\rangle to /tcb/extras middle \textsuperscript{\textsuperscript{*P.410}}.

N 2015-07-16 /tcb/extras last pre={{options}}  (no default)
  Prepends the given \langle options\rangle to /tcb/extras last \textsuperscript{\textsuperscript{*P.410}}.

N 2015-07-16 /tcb/extras broken pre={{options}}  (no default)
  Prepends the given \langle options\rangle to /tcb/extras broken \textsuperscript{\textsuperscript{*P.410}}.

N 2015-07-16 /tcb/extras unbroken and first pre={{options}}  (no default)
  Prepends the given \langle options\rangle to /tcb/extras unbroken and first \textsuperscript{\textsuperscript{*P.410}}.

N 2015-07-16 /tcb/extras middle and last pre={{options}}  (no default)
  Prepends the given \langle options\rangle to /tcb/extras middle and last \textsuperscript{\textsuperscript{*P.410}}.

N 2015-07-16 /tcb/extras unbroken and last pre={{options}}  (no default)
  Prepends the given \langle options\rangle to /tcb/extras unbroken and last \textsuperscript{\textsuperscript{*P.410}}.

N 2015-07-16 /tcb/extras first and middle pre={{options}}  (no default)
  Prepends the given \langle options\rangle to /tcb/extras first and middle \textsuperscript{\textsuperscript{*P.411}}.
\end{verbatim}

23.10 Listings

The following option keys extend the options given in Section 17 from page 329.

\begin{verbatim}
N 2019-07-11 /tcb/listing options app={{options}}  (no default)
  Appends the given \langle options\rangle to /tcb/listing options \textsuperscript{\textsuperscript{*P.339}}.

N 2019-07-11 /tcb/listing options pre={{options}}  (no default)
  Prepends the given \langle options\rangle to /tcb/listing options \textsuperscript{\textsuperscript{*P.339}}.

N 2019-07-11 /tcb/minted options app={{options}}  (no default)
  Appends the given \langle options\rangle to /tcb/minted options \textsuperscript{\textsuperscript{*P.342}}.

N 2019-07-11 /tcb/minted options pre={{options}}  (no default)
  Prepends the given \langle options\rangle to /tcb/minted options \textsuperscript{\textsuperscript{*P.342}}.
\end{verbatim}
The library is loaded by a package option or inside the preamble by:

\tcbuselibrary{xparse}

This loads the package \texttt{xparse} [14].

Note that up to version 5.0.2 this library contained code which needed the \texttt{xparse} package. Since nowadays this package has become basically a part of the \LaTeX{} kernel, the code of the library was migrated to other parts of the \texttt{tcolorbox} package. So, the remaining library is nearly a stub which only loads \texttt{xparse}.

Instead of including the \texttt{xparse} library, it is recommended to include the \texttt{xparse} package directly, \textbf{if really needed} (the \LaTeX{} kernel contains essentially everything needed). The library is kept for compatibility.
The library is loaded by a package option or inside the preamble by:

```latex
\tcbuselibrary{external}
```

The purpose of this library is to support externalization of document snippets like graphics or boxes which can be compiled stand-alone. These snippets are written to external files, compiled and the resulting pdf files are included to the main document as images. The whole procedure saves compilation time, if such a snippet is costly to compile but needs to compile just once or very seldom.

There are very good alternatives to this library. One should consider the `standalone` package or the TikZ externalization library instead. The `external` library is something in between and can be seen as poor man variant of the TikZ externalization library.

The main differences between TikZ externalization and `external` are:

- TikZ `external` compiles the whole original document in a sophisticated way while `external` uses only the preamble or a part of the preamble of the original document.
- TikZ `external` can automatically externalize all `tikzpicture` environments while `external` externalizes marked snippets only.
- Code snippets to be externalized by `external` are not restricted to `tikzpicture` environments. But these snippets have to be stand-alone without dependencies to the rest of the document.

Why should somebody use `external` instead of the more powerful TikZ `external`? One reason could be compilation speed, but the main reason for creating the library at all was that TikZ `external` tends to choke on complicated documents where the sophisticated mechanism stumbles. Since `external` does not use the original document body for compilation, this cannot happen.

Source snippets are compiled, if their md5 checksum has changed. They are not compiled automatically, if option settings are changed or anything outside the snippet is changed. Use `/tcb/external/force remake` to force compilation in this case or simply delete the externalized pdf oder md5 files.

To use the externalization options, the compiler has to be called with the `-shell-escape` permission to authorize potentially dangerous system calls. Be warned that this is a security risk.
25.1 Preparation of a Document for Externalization

The preamble of the main document has to contain the \texttt{\textsc{tcbEXTERNALIZE}} command. Without this command, no externalization operation will be executed.

\texttt{\textsc{tcbEXTERNALIZE}}

It is mandatory for externalization that this command is used once in the preamble of the main document. Every setting \texttt{before} \texttt{\textsc{tcbEXTERNALIZE}} will also be used for compiling an external snippet. Every setting \texttt{after} \texttt{\textsc{tcbEXTERNALIZE}} will be ignored for compiling an external snippet. Place this command right before \texttt{\begin{document}}, if you are not absolutely sure about another place.

The main document has to look like the following:

\begin{verbatim}
\documentclass[a4paper]{book}
% for example
\usepackage{...}
% ...
% Typically, all or the very most settings for the document.
\texttt{\textsc{tcbEXTERNALIZE}}
% Typically, just before \texttt{\begin{document}}
% Additional settings which are ABSOLUTELY irrelevant for the
% stand-alone snippets.
\begin{document}
% The document.
% This also contains the marked snippets for externalization.
\end{document}
\end{verbatim}

During compilation, a \texttt{/tcb/external/runner} file is dynamically created (several times). This is the actual main file for compiling an externalized snippet.

\texttt{\texttt{/tcb/external/runner}=(file name)} (no default, initially \texttt{\jobname\_run.tex})

Sets the \texttt{(file name)} for dynamically created \texttt{runner} file. This is the actual main file for a document snippet. Typically, the initial setting is not needed to be changed.

\texttt{\texttt{\textsc{tcbset}}} \texttt{\{}\texttt{external/runner=myrunner.tex}\texttt{\}}

\texttt{\texttt{/tcb/external/prefix}=(text)} (no default, initially \texttt{external/})

The \texttt{(text)} is prefixed to any \texttt{/tcb/external/name} for an externalization snippet. The initial setting implies saving all snippets into an \texttt{external/} subdirectory. Depending on the operation system, the subdirectory may have to be created manually once.

\texttt{\texttt{\textsc{tcbset}}} \texttt{\{}\texttt{external/prefix=ext_}\texttt{\}}

\texttt{\texttt{/tcb/external/externalize=}true|false} (default \texttt{true}, initially \texttt{true})

If set to \texttt{true}, the marked snippets are compiled if necessary. If set to \texttt{false}, the marked snippets are not compiled but included as text. \texttt{/tcb/external/externalize} can only be used after \texttt{\textsc{tcbEXTERNALIZE}}.

\texttt{\texttt{/tcb/external/force remake=}true|false} (default \texttt{true}, initially \texttt{false})

If set to \texttt{true}, the marked snippets are always compiled. If set to \texttt{true}, the marked snippets are compiled only if necessary. The necessity is given, if a compiled pdf file is missing or the md5 checksum of the source snippet has changed.

\texttt{\texttt{/tcb/external/!}} (style)

Shortcut for setting \texttt{/tcb/external/force remake} to \texttt{true}.

\texttt{\texttt{/tcb/external/-}} (style)

Shortcut for setting \texttt{/tcb/external/externalize} to \texttt{false}.
25.2 Marking Externalization Snippets

\begin{tcbexternal}{example_tikzpicture}
\begin{tikzpicture}
\path[fill=yellow!50!white] (0,0) circle (11mm);
\path[fill=white] (0,0) circle (9mm);
\foreach \w/\c in {90/red,210/green,330/blue}
{\path[shading=ball,ball color=\c] (\w:1cm) circle (7mm);}
\end{tikzpicture}
\end{tcbexternal}

If a tcolorbox is externalized, one should use \texttt{/tcb/nobeforeafter} for the box. Indention and distances to the text before and after have to be given separately outside the \texttt{tcbexternal} environment.

\begin{tcbexternal}[minipage]{example_tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[nobeforeafter,enhanced, fonttitle=\bfseries,title=Externalized Box, colframe=red!50!black,drop fuzzy shadow, interior style={fill overzoom image=goldshade.png}]
This complete tcolorbox is externalized. One cannot use numbered boxes here. Note the \texttt{minipage} option which tells the current line width to the external snippet.
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{tcbexternal}

\begin{center}
\textbf{Externalized Box}
\end{center}

This complete tcolorbox is externalized. One cannot use numbered boxes here. Note the \texttt{minipage} option which tells the current line width to the external snippet.
The interior of the \tcolorbox is externalized. One can use numbered boxes without problems. Note that the text color has to be set for the text manually since it is converted into an image.

\begin{tabularx}{\linewidth}{|l||Y|Y|Y|Y||Y|}
  \hline
  Group & One & Two & Three & Four & Sum \\
  \hline
  Red & 1000.00 & 2000.00 & 3000.00 & 4000.00 & 10000.00 \\
  \hline
  Green & 2000.00 & 3000.00 & 4000.00 & 5000.00 & 14000.00 \\
  \hline
  Blue & 3000.00 & 4000.00 & 5000.00 & 6000.00 & 18000.00 \\
  \hline
  Sum & 6000.00 & 9000.00 & 12000.00 & 15000.00 & 42000.00 \\
  \hline
\end{tabularx}

\begin{tcbexternal}[minipage]{example_tabularx}
\newcolumntype{Y}{>{\raggedleft\arraybackslash}X}
\begin{tabularx}{\linewidth}{|l||Y|Y|Y|Y||Y|}
  \hline
  Group & One & Two & Three & Four & Sum \\
  \hline
  Red & 1000.00 & 2000.00 & 3000.00 & 4000.00 & 10000.00 \\
  \hline
  Green & 2000.00 & 3000.00 & 4000.00 & 5000.00 & 14000.00 \\
  \hline
  Blue & 3000.00 & 4000.00 & 5000.00 & 6000.00 & 18000.00 \\
  \hline
  Sum & 6000.00 & 9000.00 & 12000.00 & 15000.00 & 42000.00 \\
  \hline
\end{tabularx}
\end{tcbexternal}

\begin{tcbexternal}[minipage]{example_tcolorbox2}
\color{white}
\% The interior of the tcolorbox is externalized.
\% One can use numbered boxes without problems.
\% Note that the text color has to be set for the text manually since it is converted into an image.
\end{tcbexternal}
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcbexternal}[minipage]{example_tcolorbox2}
\color{white}
\% The interior of the \tcolorbox is externalized.
\% One can use numbered boxes without problems.
\% Note that the text color has to be set for the text manually since it is converted into an image.
\end{tcbexternal}
\end{tcolorbox}

\texttt{/tcb/external/name=\texttt{name}\texttt{}} (no default, initially \texttt{unnamed})

The \texttt{name} is automatically prefixed with \texttt{/tcb/external/prefix} \texttt{\texttt{P.481}}. In combination, this has to be a unique file name for externalization. Typically, this key is not used directly but is set indirectly as mandatory parameter, see \texttt{tcbexternal} \texttt{P.482}.
This is an externalized version of \texttt{tcolorbox}\textsuperscript{→}\textsuperscript{P.12} created using \texttt{\newtcbexternalizetcolorbox}\textsuperscript{→}\textsuperscript{P.489}:

\begin{extcolorbox}{example_extcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[colframe=blue,colback=blue!5,before skip=6pt]
Inner box.
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{extcolorbox}

Note that you should not redefine \texttt{/tcb/before}\textsuperscript{→}\textsuperscript{P.89} and \texttt{/tcb/after}\textsuperscript{→}\textsuperscript{P.89} inside the \texttt{\{tcolorbox options\}}, since the externalized version would not be identical to the non-externalized otherwise.

\begin{extcolorbox}{minipage}{example_extcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,colframe=red!50!black,colback=yellow!10,
fonttitle=\bfseries,drop fuzzy shadow,
title=My external box ]
This box is completely externalized.
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{extcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[colframe=blue,colback=blue!5,before skip=6pt]
Inner box.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{table}[h]
\centering
\begin{tabular}{|c|c|}
\hline
My external box & This box is completely externalized. \\
\hline
\end{tabular}
\caption{My external box}
\label{tab:my_external_box}
\end{table}

\begin{itemize}
\item Never externalize numbered boxes.
\item Never externalize boxes which contain references to other things, e.g. using \texttt{\ref} or \texttt{\cite}.
\item Never externalize breakable boxes.
\end{itemize}
This is an externalized version of \texttt{tikzpicture} created using \texttt{\newtcbexternalizeenvironment}.  
\begin{center} 
\begin{extikzpicture}[] 
\preamble{\usepackage{pgfplots}}, \% add package for external graph 
input source on error=false, \% do not load source on error 
\end{preamble} 
\example_pgfplots{\begin{axis}[3d box=background,grid=major, xlabel=$x$, ylabel=$y$, zlabel=$z$, view/h=40, mesh/interior colormap name=hot, colormap/blackwhite, z buffer=sort,domain=0:90,y domain=0:60, zmin=0,zmax=2,z post scale=1.2, ] 
\addplot3[surf,mesh/interior colormap name=blackwhite, colormap/hot,] ( {cos(x)},{sin(x)}, {2*sin(y)} ); \addplot3[surf] ( {2*cos(x)*cos(y)},{2*sin(x)*cos(y)}, {2*sin(y)} ); 
\end{axis} 
\end{axis} 
\end{extikzpicture} 
\end{center}
The text content of a `tcblisting` is externalized with the given \(\textit{name}\). Note that the listing part is not externalized.

\begin{tcblisting}{externalize listing,\[\text{bicolor, colback=yellow!10, colframe=yellow!50!black,}
\text{colbacklower=white, center lower}\]
\begin{tikzpicture}
\path[fill=yellow!50!white] (0,0) circle (11mm);
\path[fill=white] (0,0) circle (9mm);
\foreach \w/\c in {90/red,210/green,330/blue}
{\path[shading=ball, ball color=\c] (\w:1cm) circle (7mm);}
\end{tikzpicture}
\end{tcblisting}

\begin{tikzpicture}
\path[fill=yellow!50!white] (0,0) circle (11mm);
\path[fill=white] (0,0) circle (9mm);
\foreach \w/\c in {90/red,210/green,330/blue}
{\path[shading=ball, ball color=\c] (\w:1cm) circle (7mm);}
\end{tikzpicture}

Combination of \texttt{/tcb/externalize listing} and \texttt{/tcb/external/force remake}.

The text content of a `dispExample*` is externalized with the given \(\textit{name}\). Note that the listing part is not externalized.

\begin{dispExample*}{sidebyside, externalize example=example_example}
\tikz\path[shading=ball, \[\text{ball color=red}\] circle (7mm);\]
\end{dispExample*}

\begin{tikzpicture}
\path[shading=ball, \[\text{ball color=red}\] circle (7mm);]
\end{tikzpicture}

Combination of \texttt{/tcb/externalize example} and \texttt{/tcb/external/force remake}.
25.3 Customization

\begin{tcbexternal}[minipage,runs=2]{example_raster}
\begin{tcbitemize}[raster equal height, size=small,colframe=red!50!black,colback=red!10!white]
| \item One |
| \item \Huge Two |
| \item Three |
| \item Four |
\end{tcbitemize}
\end{tcbexternal}

One \hspace{2cm} Two

Three \hspace{2cm} Four

\begin{tcbexternal}[input source on error=true|false]{example_raster}
\begin{tcbitemize}[raster equal height, size=small,colframe=red!50!black,colback=red!10!white]
| \item One |
| \item \Huge Two |
| \item Three |
| \item Four |
\end{tcbitemize}
\end{tcbexternal}

If set to true, the source code of the snippet is loaded instead of the failed pdf picture. Typically, this will lead to an error stop at the faulty place of the source and such helps detecting the cause. If the source input compiles without error, the document setup may be incorrect, see Section 25.1 on page 481. Maybe, the external/ subdirectory has to be created manually in this case, see /tcb/external/prefix → P.481.

If the option is set to false, the compilation stops immediately on an error. The log file of the external snippet has to be consulted for error messages in this case.
\texttt{/tcb/external/preclass} = \langle code \rangle  \quad \text{(no default, initially unset)}

The given \langle code \rangle is added before the snippet document. Typically, this means before \texttt{\documentclass}. This is not used for compilation of the main document.

\texttt{/tcb/external/PassOptionsToPackage} = \langle \{options\} \{\{package\} \} \rangle  \quad \text{(no default, initially unset)}

The given \langle options \rangle are passed to the given \langle package \rangle for the snippet document. This is a shortcut for using \texttt{/tcb/external/preclass} with \texttt{\PassOptionsToPackage}. This not used for compilation of the main document.

\texttt{/tcb/external/PassOptionsToClass} = \langle \{options\} \{\{class\} \} \rangle  \quad \text{(no default, initially unset)}

The given \langle options \rangle are passed to the given \langle class \rangle for the snippet document. This is a shortcut for using \texttt{/tcb/external/preclass} with \texttt{\PassOptionsToClass}. This not used for compilation of the main document.

\texttt{/tcb/external/clear preclass}  \quad \text{(no value)}

Removes all additional \texttt{/tcb/external/preclass} settings.

\texttt{/tcb/external/preamble} = \langle code \rangle  \quad \text{(no default, initially unset)}

The given \langle code \rangle is added to the preamble of the snippet document. This is not used for compilation of the main document.

\texttt{/tcb/external/preamble tcbset} = \langle options \rangle  \quad \text{(no default, initially unset)}

The given \langle options \rangle are added as parameter for \texttt{\tcbset}\textsuperscript{P.13} to the preamble of the snippet document. This are not used for compilation of the main document.

\texttt{/tcb/external/clear preamble}  \quad \text{(no value)}

Removes all additional \texttt{/tcb/external/preamble} settings.

\texttt{\tcbifexternal}\{\langle true \rangle \}{\langle false \rangle}

Expands to \langle true \rangle, if executed during snippet compilation, and to \langle false \rangle, if executed during main document compilation. This can be used before \texttt{\tcbEXTERNALIZE}\textsuperscript{P.481} to give different setting to snippet and main document.

\begin{verbatim}
\tcbifexternal{
  \usepackage{onlyforexternal}
}\
\usepackage{onlyformain}
\end{verbatim}
\newtcbexternalizeenvironment{⟨newenv⟩}{⟨env⟩}{⟨options⟩}{⟨begin⟩}{⟨end⟩}

Creates a new environment ⟨newenv⟩ which is based on tcbexternal → P.482. This environment takes at least one optional parameter and one mandatory parameter. These two parameters are passed to tcbexternal → P.482. Further, the given ⟨options⟩ are always added to the option list of tcbexternal → P.482.

The environment content is externalized and the external snippet is surrounded by an environment ⟨env⟩. All further parameters of ⟨newenv⟩ are given to ⟨env⟩ as parameters. The included image is prepended by ⟨begin⟩ and appended by ⟨end⟩.

\begin{extabular}{example_tabular}{|l|p{6cm}|r|}
\hline
A & B & C \\
\hline
a & This table is externalized as snippet. Obviously, this only makes sense for highly complex tables. & b \\
\hline
\end{extabular}

\renewtcbexternalizeenvironment{⟨newenv⟩}{⟨env⟩}{⟨options⟩}{⟨begin end options⟩}

Identical to \newtcbexternalizeenvironment, but the environment ⟨newenv⟩ is created by \renewenvironment instead of \newenvironment.

\newtcbexternalizetcolorbox{⟨newenv⟩}{⟨env⟩}{⟨options⟩}{⟨begin end options⟩}

Creates a new environment ⟨newenv⟩ which is based on tcbexternal → P.482. This environment takes at least one optional parameter and one mandatory parameter. These two parameters are passed to tcbexternal → P.482. Further, the given ⟨options⟩ are always added to the option list of tcbexternal → P.482.

The environment content is externalized and the external snippet is surrounded by an environment ⟨env⟩. All further parameters of ⟨newenv⟩ are given to ⟨env⟩ as parameters. In contrast to \newtcbexternalizeenvironment, the environment ⟨env⟩ is intended to be based on tcolorbox → P.12 or tcblisting → P.330.

The ⟨begin end options⟩ are options for settings the space before and after the included image using /tcb/before → P.89, /tcb/before skip → P.91, /tcb/after → P.89, or /tcb/after skip → P.91.

Use the exact identical values for /tcb/before → P.89 and /tcb/after → P.89 inside ⟨begin end options⟩ as they where used for definition of ⟨env⟩! Otherwise, externalized and non-externalized version will have different spacings.

\begin{extcolorbox}{example_tabular}{⟨newenv⟩}{⟨env⟩}{⟨options⟩}{⟨begin end options⟩}

extcolorbox → P.484 is an example application for \newtcbexternalizetcolorbox.
\newtcblisting{myownlisting}[2]\[
  \text{enhanced, colback=red!5!white, colframe=red!75!black, fonttitle=\bfseries,}
  \text{colbacktitle=red!50!yellow, before skip=6pt, after skip=6pt,}
  \text{title=(#2), #1}
\]

\newtcbexternalizetcolorbox{exmyownlisting}{myownlisting}\
{minipage, environment with percent=false}\
{before skip=6pt, after skip=6pt}\ same values as for mylisting

\begin{exmyownlisting}{example_mylisting}\%
  \text{My externalized example box}
\%
\text{This is my \LaTeX\ box.}
\end{exmyownlisting}

\renewtcbexternalizetcolorbox{(newenv)}{(env)}{(options)}{(begin end options)}

Identical to \renewtcbexternalizetcolorbox \textit{\textsuperscript{P.489}}, but the environment \textit{(newenv)} is created by \renewenvironment instead of \renewenvironment.

\tcbiffileprocess{(condition)}{(source)}{(md5-file)}{(target)}{(true)}{(false)}

This is a low-level macro which is internally used. The MD5 digest of a \textit{(source)} file is compared with a stored MD5 digest from an auxiliary \textit{(md5-file)}. If they are not equal, the auxiliary \textit{(md5-file)} is updated to store the current MD5 digest. Further,

- if \textit{(condition)} equals 0, \textit{(true)} is executed.
- if \textit{(condition)} equals 1:
  - If the current and stored MD5 digests were different, \textit{(true)} is executed.
  - Otherwise, if the \textit{(target)} file is not existing, \textit{(true)} is executed.
  - Otherwise, if the \textit{(target)} file is older than the \textit{(md5-file)}, \textit{(true)} is executed.
  - Otherwise, \textit{(false)} is executed.
- if \textit{(condition)} equals 2, \textit{(false)} is executed.

The intended processing purpose of the \textit{(true)} code is to produce a \textit{(target)} file from the given \textit{(source)} file.
25.4 Troubleshooting and FAQ

- I use the default settings, but the external subdirectory is not created.
  Depending on operating system and compiler, an external subdirectory is automatically created or not. If not, create such a directory manually or add the following to your document:

\ExplSyntaxOn
\sys_shell_now:n { mkdir~external }
\ExplSyntaxOff

or

\ExplSyntaxOn
\sys_shell_now:n { mkdir~-p~external }
\ExplSyntaxOff

If the combination of /tcb/external/prefix(P.481) and chosen snippet name points to another subdirectory than external, this has to be adapted.

- I use the minted package and I get a cache directory for every externalized snippet.
  To avoid this problem, there are several ways.
  - If you do not need minted inside the snippet code, you may use \usepackage{minted} after \tcbEXTERNALIZE(P.481) or use \tcbifexternal(P.488) to switch minted off for the external code. If minted is already included by another package, add the following to your preamble:

\tcbset{external/PassOptionsToPackage={draft}{minted}}

- If minted is needed for the snippet code, caching can be switched off by adding the following to your preamble:

\tcbset{external/PassOptionsToPackage={cache=false}{minted}}

Alternatively, the cachedir option of minted may be used to redirect the cache.
This library has the single purpose to support \LaTeX{} package documentations like this one. Actually, the visual nature follows the approach from Till Tantau’s \texttt{pgf} [23] documentation. Typically, this library is assumed to be used in conjunction with the class \texttt{ltexdoc} or alike. Denis Bitouzé, Muzimuzhi, and many others provided very valuable input for this library.

The library is loaded by a package option or inside the preamble by:

\begin{quote}
\verb|\tcbuselibrary{documentation}|\end{quote}

This also loads the library \texttt{skins}, see Section 10 on page 171, the library \texttt{raster}, see Section 16 on page 307, the library \texttt{listings}, see Section 17 on page 329, and a bunch of packages, namely \texttt{makeidx}, \texttt{marginnote}, \texttt{refcount}, and \texttt{hyperref}. The packages \texttt{pifont} and \texttt{marvosym} should be installed for some symbols, but need not to be loaded.

\begin{itemize}
  \item The package \texttt{makeidx} is loaded only, if \texttt{printindex} is \textit{not} already defined. Therefore, one can include an alternative to \texttt{makeidx} like \texttt{imakeidx} \textit{before} the library \texttt{documentation} is used.
  \item The package \texttt{marginnote} is loaded only, if \texttt{marginnote} is \textit{not} already defined.
  \item In contrast to other \texttt{tcolorbox} options, the option settings for \texttt{documentation} are typically not getting reset by \texttt{/tcb/reset} $\rightarrow$ P.122, i.e. they keep their values for embedded boxes.
  \item In combination with DocStrip, \texttt{/tcb/verbatim ignore percent} $\rightarrow$ P.148 may be helpful.
\end{itemize}

For UTF-8 support load (ignore this when using Xe\LaTeX{}):

\begin{quote}
\verb|\tcbuselibrary{listingsutf8,documentation}|\end{quote}

For \texttt{minted} [13] support, load:

\begin{quote}
\verb|\tcbuselibrary{documentation,minted}|
\verb|\tcbset{listing engine=minted}|\end{quote}

\section{Macros of the Library}

Documents a \LaTeX{} macro with given \texttt{(name)} where \texttt{(name)} is written without backslash. The given \texttt{(options)} are set with \texttt{/tcbset} $\rightarrow$ P.13. This macro takes mandatory or optional \texttt{(parameters)}. It is automatically indexed and can be referenced with \texttt{/refCom} $\rightarrow$ P.503{\texttt{(name)}}.
\begin{docCommand}\foomakedocSubKey{\marg{name}\marg{key path}}\end{docCommand}

Creates a new environment \texttt{\meta{name}} based on \texttt{\refEnv{docKey}} for the documentation of keys with the given \texttt{\marg{key path}}.

\begin{docCommand}\foomakedocSubKey{⟨name⟩}{⟨key path⟩}\end{docCommand}

Creates a new environment \texttt{⟨name⟩} based on \texttt{docKey} \textsuperscript{P. 496} for the documentation of keys with the given \texttt{⟨key path⟩}.

\begin{docCommand}[\textcolor{blue}{doc no index, color definition=blue}]{section}\%\end{docCommand}

\section*{(title)}

Starts a section. The star variant is unnumbered.

\begin{docCommand*}\[\langle options\rangle\]{⟨name⟩}{⟨parameters⟩}\end{docCommand*}

Identical to \texttt{docCommand} \textsuperscript{P. 492}, but without index entry.

\begin{docCommands}\[\langle options\rangle\]{\langle variant1⟩,\langle variant2⟩,\ldots}\end{docCommands}

Documents several (similar) \LaTeX{} macro variants simultaneously. The given \texttt{⟨options⟩} are set with \texttt{\tcbset} \textsuperscript{P. 13} and are valid for all variants and the documentation text. Every variant is described by an option set \texttt{⟨variant1⟩}, \texttt{⟨variant2⟩}, and so on. The most crucial options are /\texttt{tcb/doc name} \textsuperscript{P. 506} and /\texttt{tcb/doc parameter} \textsuperscript{P. 506}.

\begin{docCommands}\doc no index, \% no index entries for this example\[\]
\begin{itemize}
  \item doc name = newtheorem
  \item \{ doc parameter = \marg{envname} \},
  \item doc parameter = \marg{envname}\oarg{numbered within} ,
  \item doc parameter = \oarg{numbered like}\marg{envname} 
\end{itemize}
\end{docCommands}

\newtheorem*{(envname)}{(enname)}
\newtheorem{(envname)}{(numbered within)}
\newtheorem{(numbered like)}{(enname)}

\begin{example}
\end{example}
Documents a \LaTeX environment with given \langle name \rangle. The given \langle options \rangle are set with \texttt{\textbackslash tcbset}^{\textsuperscript{P.13}}. This environment takes mandatory or optional \langle parameters \rangle. It is automatically indexed and can be referenced with \texttt{\textbackslash refEnv}^{\textsuperscript{P.503}}\langle name \rangle.

\begin{docEnvironment}{foocolorbox}\oarg{options}
This is the main environment to create an accentuated colored text box with rounded corners and, optionally, two parts.
\end{docEnvironment}

\begin{foocolorbox}\langle options \rangle
\langle environment description \rangle
\end{foocolorbox}
This is the main environment to create an accentuated colored text box with rounded corners and, optionally, two parts.

\begin{docEnvironment}\%
[doclang/environment content=My content text]\%
\langle name \rangle\langle parameters \rangle
\end{docEnvironment}
This is the main environment to create an accentuated colored text box with rounded corners and, optionally, two parts.

\begin{foocolorbox*}\langle options \rangle
\langle My content text \rangle
\end{foocolorbox*}
This is the main environment to create an accentuated colored text box with rounded corners and, optionally, two parts.

\begin{docEnvironment*}\langle options \rangle\langle name \rangle\langle parameters \rangle
\end{docEnvironment*}
Identical to \texttt{docEnvironment}, but without index entry.
Documents several (similar) \LaTeX{} environment variants simultaneously. The given \textit{options} are set with \texttt{\textbackslash tcbset} \footnote{P. 13} and are valid for all variants and the documentation text. Every variant is described by an option set \textit{<variant1>}, \textit{<variant2>}, and so on. The most crucial options are \texttt{/tcb/doc name} \footnote{P. 506} and \texttt{/tcb/doc parameter} \footnote{P. 506}.

\begin{docEnvironments}
\begin{example}
doc no index, % no index entries for this example
doc parameter = \texttt{\oarg{options}\marg{title}},
doclang/environment content = box content,
\end{example}
\end{docEnvironments}

\begin{redbox}{\begin{example}\texttt{(options)\{{\textit{title}}\}}\end{example}}\end{redbox}
\begin{greenbox}{\begin{example}\texttt{(options)\{{\textit{title}}\}}\end{example}}\end{greenbox}
\begin{bluebox}{\begin{example}\texttt{(options)\{{\textit{title}}\}}\end{example}}\end{bluebox}
\begin{custombox}{\begin{example}\texttt{(options)\{{\textit{color}}\}\{\textit{title}\}}\end{example}}\end{custombox}

\begin{example}
(a red colored box)
\end{example}
\begin{example}
(a green colored box)
\end{example}
\begin{example}
(a blue colored box)
\end{example}
\begin{example}
(a colored box)
\end{example}
\begin{docKey}\[(key\ path)\] \[(options)\] \{(name)\} \{(parameters)\} \{(description)\}
\end{docKey}

Documents a key with given \{(name)\} and an optional \{(key\ path)\}. The given \{(options)\} are set with \texttt{\tcbbset} \textsuperscript{\ref{TcbSet}}. This key takes mandatory or optional \{(parameters)\} as value with a short \{(description)\}. It is automatically indexed and can be referenced with \texttt{\refKey} \textsuperscript{\ref{RefKey}} \{(name)\}.

\begin{docKey}\ hallucination\end{docKey}

Documents a key with given \{(name)\} and an optional \{(key\ path)\}. The given \{(options)\} are set with \texttt{\tcbbset} \textsuperscript{\ref{TcbSet}}. This key takes mandatory or optional \{(parameters)\} as value with a short \{(description)\}. It is automatically indexed and can be referenced with \texttt{\refKey} \textsuperscript{\ref{RefKey}} \{(name)\}.

\begin{docKey*}\end{docKey*}

Identical to \texttt{docKey}, but without index entry.

\begin{docKeys}\[(options)\] \{(variant1)\}, \{(variant2)\}, \ldots\}
\end{docKeys}

Documents several (similar) key variants simultaneously. The given \{(options)\} are set with \texttt{\tcbbset} \textsuperscript{\ref{TcbSet}} and are valid for all variants and the documentation text. Every variant is described by an option set \{(variant1)\}, \{(variant2)\}, and so on. The most crucial options are \texttt{/tcb/doc keypath} \textsuperscript{\ref{TcbDocPath}}, \texttt{/tcb/doc name} \textsuperscript{\ref{TcbDocName}}, \texttt{/tcb/doc parameter} \textsuperscript{\ref{TcbDocParameter}}, and \texttt{/tcb/doc description} \textsuperscript{\ref{TcbDocDescription}}.

\begin{docKeys}[doc no index, \% no index entries for this example]
\{doc keypath = mykeyroot, doc parameter = {\texttt{=/meta\{length\}}, \}
{doc name = width, doc description = initially \texttt{10cm}, \}
{doc name = height, doc description = initially \texttt{7cm}, \}
\}

\end{docKeys}

/mykeyroot/width\{(length)\} \tcp{initially 10cm}
/mykeyroot/height\{(length)\} \tcp{initially 7cm}
\begin{docPathOperation}\[\langle\text{options}\rangle\]{\langle\text{name}\rangle}\{\langle\text{parameters}\rangle\}

\{\text{operation description}\}
\end{docPathOperation}

Documents a TikZ path operation with given \textit{\langle name\rangle}. The given \textit{\langle options\rangle} are set with \texttt{\tcbset}\textsuperscript{\textit{\textsuperscript{P.13}}}\. This TikZ path operation takes mandatory or optional \textit{\langle parameters\rangle}. It is automatically indexed and can be referenced with \texttt{\refPathOperation}\textsuperscript{\textit{\textsuperscript{P.504}}}\{\textit{\langle name\rangle}\}.

\begin{docPathOperation}\{\texttt{fooop}\}\\{\langle\text{name}\rangle\}\langle\text{parameters}\rangle\}

\{\textit{command description}\}
\end{docPathOperation}

\begin{docPathOperations}\[\langle\text{options}\rangle\]{\langle\text{name}\rangle}\{\langle\text{parameters}\rangle\}

\{\text{command description}\}
\end{docPathOperations}

Documents several (similar) TikZ path operation variants simultaneously. The given \textit{\langle options\rangle} are set with \texttt{\tcbset}\textsuperscript{\textit{\textsuperscript{P.13}}} and are valid for all variants and the documentation text. Every variant is described by an option set \textit{\langle variant1\rangle}, \textit{\langle variant2\rangle}, and so on. The most crucial options are \texttt{/tcb/doc name}\textsuperscript{\textit{\textsuperscript{P.506}}} and \texttt{/tcb/doc parameter}\textsuperscript{\textit{\textsuperscript{P.506}}}.

\begin{docPathOperations}\{}\{\langle\text{corner or cycle}\rangle,\langle\text{options}\rangle,\langle\text{options}\rangle,\}

\{\textit{example}\}
\end{docPathOperations}

\\begin{docPathOperations}\{}

\{\\text\{doc no index, % no index entries for this example\}\}

\{\}

\{\}

\{\}

\{\}

\{\}

\{\}

\{\}

\{\}

\{\}

\{\}

\{\}

\{\}

\{\}

\{\}

\{\}

\{\}

\{\}

\{\}

\{\}

\{\}

\{\}

\{\}

\{\}

\{\}

\{\}

\{\}

\{\}

\{\}

\{\}

\{\}

\{\}

\{\}

\{\}

\}
\texttt{\textbackslash docValue}\{\langle options\rangle\}\{\langle name\rangle\}

Documents a value with given \texttt{\langle name\rangle}. Typically, this is a value for a key. The given \texttt{\langle options\rangle} are set with \texttt{\textbackslash tcbset}\textsuperscript{\textasciitilde P.13}. This value is automatically indexed for \texttt{\textbackslash docValue} and has no index entry for \texttt{\textbackslash docValue*}.

A feasible value for \texttt{\textbackslash refKey\{/foo/footitle\}} is \texttt{\textbackslash docValue*\{foovalue\}}.

\texttt{\textbackslash docAuxCommand}\{\langle options\rangle\}\{\langle name\rangle\}

Documents an auxiliary or minor \LaTeX{} macro with given \texttt{\langle name\rangle} where \texttt{\langle name\rangle} is written without backslash. The given \texttt{\langle options\rangle} are set with \texttt{\textbackslash tcbset}\textsuperscript{\textasciitilde P.13}. This macro is automatically indexed for \texttt{\textbackslash docAuxCommand} and has no index entry for \texttt{\textbackslash docAuxCommand*}.

The macro \texttt{\textbackslash docAuxCommand\{fooaux\}} holds some interesting data.

The macro \texttt{\textbackslash fooaux} holds some interesting data.

\texttt{\textbackslash docAuxEnvironment}\{\langle options\rangle\}\{\langle name\rangle\}

Documents an auxiliary or minor \LaTeX{} environment with given \texttt{\langle name\rangle}. The given \texttt{\langle options\rangle} are set with \texttt{\textbackslash tcbset}\textsuperscript{\textasciitilde P.13}. This macro is automatically indexed for \texttt{\textbackslash docAuxEnvironment} and has no index entry for \texttt{\textbackslash docAuxEnvironment*}.

The environment \texttt{\textbackslash docAuxEnvironment\{fooauxenv\}} holds some interesting data.

The environment \texttt{\textbackslash fooauxenv} holds some interesting data.

\texttt{\textbackslash docAuxKey}\{\langle key path\rangle\}[\langle options\rangle]\{\langle name\rangle\}

Documents an auxiliary key with given \texttt{\langle name\rangle} and an optional \texttt{\langle key path\rangle}. The given \texttt{\langle options\rangle} are set with \texttt{\textbackslash tcbset}\textsuperscript{\textasciitilde P.13}. It is automatically indexed for \texttt{\textbackslash docAuxKey} and has no index entry for \texttt{\textbackslash docAuxKey*}.

The key \texttt{\textbackslash docAuxKey[foo]\{fooaux\}} holds some interesting data.

The key \texttt{\textbackslash /foo/fooaux} holds some interesting data.

\texttt{\textbackslash docCounter}\{\langle options\rangle\}\{\langle name\rangle\}

Documents a counter with given \texttt{\langle name\rangle}. The given \texttt{\langle options\rangle} are set with \texttt{\textbackslash tcbset}\textsuperscript{\textasciitilde P.13}. The counter is automatically indexed for \texttt{\textbackslash docCounter} and has no index entry for \texttt{\textbackslash docCounter*}.

The counter \texttt{\textbackslash docCounter\{foocounter\}} can be used for computation.

The counter \texttt{\textbackslash foocounter} can be used for computation.
Documents a length with given \langle name \rangle. The given \langle options \rangle are set with \texttt{tcbset} \textsuperscript{P.13}. The length is automatically indexed for \docLength and has no index entry for \docLength*.

The length \docLength\{foolength\} can be used for computation.

The length \foolength can be used for computation.

Documents a color with given \langle name \rangle. The given \langle options \rangle are set with \texttt{tcbset} \textsuperscript{P.13}. The color is automatically indexed for \docColor and has no index entry for \docColor*.

The color \docColor\{foocolor\} is available.

The color foocolor is available.

\texttt{cs\{\langle name \rangle\}}

Macro from \texttt{ltxdoc} \textsuperscript{[3]} to typeset a command word \langle name \rangle where the backslash is prefixed. The library overwrites the original macro.

This is a \texttt{cs\{foocommand\}}.

This is a \texttt{foocommand}.

\texttt{meta\{\langle text \rangle\}}

Macro from \texttt{doc} \textsuperscript{[8]} to typeset a meta \langle text \rangle. The library overwrites the original macro.

This is a \texttt{meta\{text\}}.

This is a \langle text \rangle.

\texttt{marg\{\langle text \rangle\}}

Macro from \texttt{ltxdoc} \textsuperscript{[3]} to typeset a \langle text \rangle with curly brackets as a mandatory argument. The library overwrites the original macro.

This is a mandatory \texttt{marg\{argument\}}.

This is a mandatory \langle argument \rangle.

\texttt{oarg\{\langle text \rangle\}}

Macro from \texttt{ltxdoc} \textsuperscript{[3]} to typeset a \langle text \rangle with square brackets as an optional argument. The library overwrites the original macro.

This is an optional \texttt{oarg\{argument\}}.

This is an optional \langle argument \rangle.
\sarg
Macro to typeset \* as an optional star.

This is an optional \sarg.

This is an optional \*.

\brackets{⟨text⟩}
Sets the given ⟨text⟩ with curly brackets.

Here we use \brackets{some text}.

Here we use {some text}.

\begin{dispExample}
⟨environment content⟩
\end{dispExample}
Creates a colored box based on a tcolorbox\(^\text{P.12}\). It displays the environment content as source code in the upper part and as compiled text in the lower part of the box. The appearance is controlled by /tcb/documentation listing style\(^\text{P.515}\) and the style /tcb/docexample\(^\text{P.515}\). It may be changed by redefining this style.

\begin{dispExample}
This is a \LaTeX\ example.
\end{dispExample}

This is a \LaTeX\ example.

This is a \LaTeX\ example.

\begin{dispExample*}{⟨options⟩}
⟨environment content⟩
\end{dispExample*}
The starred version of dispExample takes tcolorbox\(^\text{P.12}\) ⟨options⟩ as parameter. These ⟨options⟩ are executed after /tcb/docexample\(^\text{P.515}\).

\begin{dispExample*}{sidebyside}
This is a \LaTeX\ example.
\end{dispExample*}

This is a \LaTeX\ example.

This is a \LaTeX\ example.
\begin{dispListing}
\begin{environment content}\end{environment content}
\end{dispListing}

Creates a colored box based on a \texttt{tcolorbox} \textsuperscript{P.12}. It displays the environment content as source code. The appearance is controlled by \texttt{/tcb/documentation listing style} \textsuperscript{P.515} and the style \texttt{/tcb/docexample} \textsuperscript{P.515}. It may be changed by redefining this style.

\begin{dispListing}
This is a \LaTeX\ example.
\end{dispListing}

\begin{dispListing*}{(options)}
\begin{environment content}\end{environment content}
\end{dispListing*}

The starred version of \texttt{dispListing} takes \texttt{tcolorbox} \textsuperscript{P.12} \langle \texttt{options} \rangle as parameter. These \langle \texttt{options} \rangle are executed after \texttt{/tcb/docexample} \textsuperscript{P.515}.

\begin{dispListing*}{title=My listing}
This is a \LaTeX\ example.
\end{dispListing*}

\begin{absquote}
\begin{environment content}\end{environment content}
\end{absquote}

Used to typeset an abstract as quoted and small text.

\begin{absquote}
\texttt{tcolorbox} provides an environment for colored and framed text boxes with a heading line. Optionally, such a box can be split in an upper and a lower part.
\end{absquote}

\texttt{tcolorbox} provides an environment for colored and framed text boxes with a heading line. Optionally, such a box can be split in an upper and a lower part.
\tcbmakedocSubKey{⟨options⟩}{⟨name⟩}{⟨key path⟩}

Creates a new environment ⟨name⟩ based on docKey \textsuperscript{P.496} for the documentation of keys with the given ⟨key path⟩ as root. The new environment ⟨name⟩ takes the same parameters as docKey \textsuperscript{P.496} itself. The given ⟨options⟩ are prepended to options of the ⟨name⟩ environment. A second starred environment ⟨name⟩ is also created, which is identical to ⟨name⟩ but without index entry.

\begin{docFooKey}{foodummy}{=\meta{nothing}}{no default, initially empty}
Some key.
\end{docFooKey}

\begin{docFooKey*}{foo another dummy}{=\meta{nothing}}{no default, initially empty}
Some key (not indexed).
\end{docFooKey*}

\tcbmakedocSubKeys{⟨options⟩}{⟨name⟩}{⟨key path⟩}

Creates a new environment ⟨name⟩ based on docKeys \textsuperscript{P.496} for the documentation of keys with the given ⟨key path⟩ as root. The new environment ⟨name⟩ takes the same parameters as docKeys \textsuperscript{P.496} itself. The given ⟨options⟩ are prepended to options of the ⟨name⟩ environment (see /tcb/index key formatter \textsuperscript{P.507} for an example).

\begin{docFooKeys}
\{doc parameter = {\meta{nothing}},
  doc description = {no default, initially empty},
\}
\{doc name = foodummy 2,
\},
\{doc name = foo another dummy 2,
  doc no index,
\}
Some description.
\end{docFooKeys}
References a documented \LaTeX\ macro with given \langle name \rangle where \langle name \rangle is written without backslash. The page reference is suppressed if it links to the same page.

\begin{quote}
We have created \refCom\{foomakedocSubKey\} as an example.
\end{quote}

\begin{quote}
We have created \foomakedocSubKey \textsuperscript{P. 493} as an example.
\end{quote}

References a documented \LaTeX\ macro with given \langle name \rangle where \langle name \rangle is written without backslash. There is no page reference.

\begin{quote}
We have created \refCom\{foomakedocSubKey\} as an example.
\end{quote}

\begin{quote}
We have created \foomakedocSubKey as an example.
\end{quote}

References a documented \LaTeX\ environment with given \langle name \rangle. The page reference is suppressed if it links to the same page.

\begin{quote}
We have created \refEnv\{foocolorbox\} as an example.
\end{quote}

\begin{quote}
We have created foocolorbox \textsuperscript{P. 494} as an example.
\end{quote}

References a documented \LaTeX\ environment with given \langle name \rangle. There is no page reference.

\begin{quote}
We have created \refEnv\{foocolorbox\} as an example.
\end{quote}

\begin{quote}
We have created foocolorbox as an example.
\end{quote}

References a documented key with given \langle name \rangle where \langle name \rangle is the full path name of the key. The page reference is suppressed if it links to the same page.

\begin{quote}
We have created \refKey\{/foo/footitle\} as an example.
\end{quote}

\begin{quote}
We have created /foo/footitle \textsuperscript{P. 496} as an example.
\end{quote}

References a documented key with given \langle name \rangle where \langle name \rangle is the full path name of the key. There is no page reference.

\begin{quote}
We have created \refKey\{/foo/footitle\} as an example.
\end{quote}

\begin{quote}
We have created /foo/footitle as an example.
\end{quote}
\refPathOperation{\langle name\rangle}

References a documented TikZ path operation with given \langle name\rangle. The page reference is suppressed if it links to the same page.

We have created \refPathOperation{fooop} as an example.

We have created fooop^{P.497} as an example.

\refPathOperation*{\langle name\rangle}

References a documented TikZ path operation with given \langle name\rangle. There is no page reference.

We have created \refPathOperation*{fooop} as an example.

We have created fooop as an example.

\refAux{\langle name\rangle}

References some auxiliary environment, key, value, or color. The \langle name\rangle is colored according to /tcb/color hyperlink^{P.517}, if hyperref colorlinks are set, but there is no real link.

Some pages back, one can see \refAux{/foo/footitle} as an example.

Some pages back, one can see /foo/footitle as an example.

\refAuxcs{\langle name\rangle}

References some auxiliary macro \langle name\rangle where \langle name\rangle is written without backslash. The \langle name\rangle is colored according to /tcb/color hyperlink^{P.517}, if hyperref colorlinks are set, but there is no real link.

Some pages back, one can see \refAuxcs{fooaux} as an example.

Some pages back, one can see fooaux as an example.

\colDef{\langle text\rangle}

Sets \langle text\rangle with the command color, see /tcb/color command^{P.517}.

This is my \colDef{text}.

This is my text.

\colOpt{\langle text\rangle}

Sets \langle text\rangle with the option color, see /tcb/color option^{P.517}.

This is my \colOpt{text}.

This is my text.
\colFade{\textit{text}}

Sets \textit{text} with the fade color, see /tcb/color fade$^{\text{P.517}}$.

This is my \colFade{text}.

This is my text.

\tcbdocmarginnote[(options)]{\textit{text}}

Creates a \texttt{tcolorbox} note with the given \textit{text} inside the margin using the \texttt{marginnote} package. The style of the \texttt{tcolorbox} is predefined and can be altered by /tcb/doc marginnote$^{\text{P.509}}$ and the given \textit{\texttt{options}}.

Some text \tcbdocmarginnote{Note A} which is commented by a note inside the margin. Alternatively to \tcbdocmarginnote, you can always use \marginnote with a \texttt{tcolorbox} directly.

This is further text.

\tcbdocmarginnote[colframe=blue!50!white,colback=blue!5!white]{Note B} with another note.

Some text which is commented by a note inside the margin. Alternatively to \tcbdocmarginnote, you can always use \marginnote with a \texttt{tcolorbox} directly.

This is further text with another note.

\tcbdocnew{\textit{date}}

Auxiliary macro which typesets the /tcb/doclang/new$^{\text{P.518}}$ text with the given \textit{\texttt{date}}. It may be redefined for customization.

\tcbdocnew{1981-10-29}.


% Next one is displayed in the margin:
\tcbdocmarginnote{\tcbdocnew{1978-02-09}}

\tcbdocupdated{\textit{date}}

Auxiliary macro which typesets the /tcb/doclang/updated$^{\text{P.518}}$ text with the given \textit{\texttt{date}}. It may be redefined for customization.

\tcbdocupdated{2014-09-19}.

26.2 Entry Content Option Keys

\begin{docCommands}{
  doc no index, \% no index entries for this example
  doc name = bfseries,
} {}
Font setting to bold face.
\end{docCommands}

\textbf{⟨text⟩}
Sets ⟨text⟩ in bold face.

\begin{docKeys}{
  doc no index, \% no index entries for this example
  doc keypath = tikz,
  doc name = fill,
  doc parameter = \colOpt{=\meta{color}},
  doc description = default is scope's color setting,
} {}
This option causes the path to be filled.
\end{docKeys}

/tcb/doc name=(name) (no default, initially empty)
Sets the ⟨name⟩ of the entry to document, i.e. the ⟨name⟩ of the command, environment, key, etc. For docCommand \textsuperscript{P.492}, docEnvironment \textsuperscript{P.494}, etc. the ⟨name⟩ is set by a mandatory parameter, but can also be set by /tcb/doc name. /tcb/doc name also sets ⟨name⟩ to /tcb/doc label \textsuperscript{P.508}, /tcb/doc index \textsuperscript{P.508}, and /tcb/doc sort index \textsuperscript{P.508}.

\begin{docCommands}{
  doc no index, \% no index entries for this example
  doc name = textbf,
  doc parameter = \marg{text},
} {}
This option causes the path to be filled.

\begin{docKeys}{
  doc no index, \% no index entries for this example
  doc keypath = tikz,
  doc name = fill,
  doc parameter = \colOpt{=\meta{color}},
  doc description = default is scope's color setting,
} {}
This option causes the path to be filled.

\begin{docCommands}{
  doc no index, \% no index entries for this example
  doc name = textbf,
  doc parameter = \marg{text},
} {}
Sets \meta{text} in bold face.

\textbf{(text)}
Sets ⟨text⟩ in bold face.

\begin{docCommands}{
  doc no index, \% no index entries for this example
  doc name = bfseries,
} {}
Font setting to bold face.

\textbf{
\begin{docKeys}{
  doc no index, \% no index entries for this example
  doc keypath = tikz,
  doc name = fill,
  doc parameter = \colOpt{=\meta{color}},
  doc description = default is scope's color setting,
} {}
This option causes the path to be filled.
\end{docKeys}

/tcb/doc parameter=(parameters) (no default, initially empty)
Sets the ⟨parameters⟩ of the entry to document, i.e. the ⟨parameters⟩ of the command, environment, key, etc. For docCommand \textsuperscript{P.492}, docEnvironment \textsuperscript{P.494}, etc. the ⟨parameters⟩ is set by a mandatory option, but can also be set by /tcb/doc parameter.

\begin{docCommands}{
  doc no index, \% no index entries for this example
  doc name = textbf,
  doc parameter = \marg{text},
} {}
Sets \meta{text} in bold face.

\textbf{(text)}
Sets ⟨text⟩ in bold face.

\begin{docCommands}{
  doc no index, \% no index entries for this example
  doc name = bfseries,
} {}
Font setting to bold face.

\textbf{
\begin{docKeys}{
  doc no index, \% no index entries for this example
  doc keypath = tikz,
  doc name = fill,
  doc parameter = \colOpt{=\meta{color}},
  doc description = default is scope's color setting,
} {}
This option causes the path to be filled.
\end{docKeys}

/tcb/doc keypath=(key path) (no default, initially empty)
Sets the ⟨key path⟩ of the key to document. For docKey \textsuperscript{P.496} and docKey* \textsuperscript{P.496} the ⟨key path⟩ is set by a specialized option, but can also be set by /tcb/doc keypath.

\begin{docKeys}{
  doc no index, \% no index entries for this example
  doc keypath = tikz,
  doc name = fill,
  doc parameter = \colOpt{=\meta{color}},
  doc description = default is scope's color setting,
} {}
This option causes the path to be filled.
\end{docKeys}

/tcb/doc parameter=(parameters) (no default, initially empty)
Sets the ⟨parameters⟩ of the entry to document, i.e. the ⟨parameters⟩ of the command, environment, key, etc. For docCommand \textsuperscript{P.492}, docEnvironment \textsuperscript{P.494}, etc. the ⟨parameters⟩ is set by a mandatory option, but can also be set by /tcb/doc parameter.
Sets the \( \langle \text{key prefix} \rangle \) (root path) of the key to document. This prefix is prepended to \text{/tcb/doc keypath} \text{P.506}, if \text{/tcb/doc keypath} \text{P.506} is not empty. The default / setting is intended for \text{pgfkeys}. For \text{l3keys}, setting \text{/tcb/doc key prefix} to be empty is more appropriate, since their path starts with a module name without /.

\begin{docKeys}
[doc no index, % no index entries for this example
doc key prefix = ,
doc keypath = tcobox,% module name
doc name = my\_l3\_key,
doc parameter = \{=\text{\textbackslash meta}\{some value\}\},
doc description = example,]
\}
Documentation of a key using \text{l3keys}.
\end{docKeys}

\begin{ttbox}
\begin{verbatim}
tcobox/my\_l3\_key=\langle\text{some value}\rangle
\end{verbatim}
Documentation of a key using \text{l3keys}.
\end{ttbox}

Sets \( \langle \text{macro} \rangle \) as formatter for the text given by \text{/tcb/doclang/key} \text{P.518} or \text{/tcb/doclang/keys} \text{P.518} inside the index. The \( \langle \text{macro} \rangle \) has to take one mandatory argument (the language text). The intended purpose is to differentiate between different sorts of keys, if necessary, e.g. between \text{pgfkeys} and \text{l3keys}. If these options are used without value, the formatters are reset to their standard behavior.

\% See index of this documentation to recognize the effect
\newcommand{\myFormatPgfkeysIndex}[1]{#1 (\textsf{pgfkeys})}
\newcommand{\myFormatExplkeysIndex}[1]{#1 (\textsf{l3keys})}

\begin{verbatim}
\tcbmakedocSubKey[
  index key formatter=\myFormatPgfkeysIndex,
  index keys formatter=\myFormatPgfkeysIndex
]{docFooPgfkey}{foopgf}
\end{verbatim}

\begin{verbatim}
\tcbmakedocSubKey[
  doc key prefix=,
  index key formatter=\myFormatExplkeysIndex,
  index keys formatter=\myFormatExplkeysIndex
]{docFooExplkey}{fooexpl}
\end{verbatim}

\begin{verbatim}
\begin{docFooPgfkey}{foo pgf}{=\text{\textbackslash meta}\{name\}}{no default, initially empty}
\end{docFooPgfkey}

\begin{docFooExplkey}{foo expl}{=\text{\textbackslash meta}\{name\}}{no default, initially empty}
\end{docFooExplkey}
\end{verbatim}

\begin{verbatim}
/foopgf/foo pgf=\langle\text{name}\rangle
content
\end{verbatim}

\begin{verbatim}
/foosexpl/foo expl=\langle\text{name}\rangle
content
\end{verbatim}
Sets a (short!) additional \textit{description} for \texttt{docCommand} \textsuperscript{P.492}, \texttt{docEnvironment} \textsuperscript{P.494}, or \texttt{docPathOperation} \textsuperscript{P.497}. Such a description is mandatory for \texttt{docKey} \textsuperscript{P.496}.

\begin{docCommand*}[doc description=my description]{myCommandF}{\marg{argument}}
This is the documentation of \texttt{myCommandF} which takes one \texttt{meta}{argument}. \texttt{myCommandF} does some funny things with its \texttt{meta}{argument}.
\end{docCommand*}

This is the documentation of \texttt{myCommandF} which takes one \texttt{meta}{argument}. \texttt{myCommandF} does some funny things with its \texttt{meta}{argument}.

\textbf{Note that the description \textit{text} may overlap with the text on the left hand side if too long. Linebreaks can be used inside the \textit{text}.}

\texttt{myCommandF}{\langle argument \rangle}(my description)

This is the documentation of \texttt{myCommandF} which takes one \texttt{meta}{argument}. \texttt{myCommandF} does some funny things with its \texttt{meta}{argument}.

\textbf{N 2019-09-18} \texttt{/tcb/doc label=(text)} (no default, initially unset)

If used inside the option list of \texttt{docCommand} \textsuperscript{P.492}, \texttt{docEnvironment} \textsuperscript{P.494}, \texttt{docKey} \textsuperscript{P.496}, etc, then \textit{text} is used for labeling instead of the name of the definition.

\begin{docPathOperation*}[doc label=pathline]{-{}-}{\meta{coordinate or cycle}}
This is the documentation of \texttt{pathline}.
\end{docPathOperation*}

\texttt{path \ldots {--}(coordinate or cycle) \ldots;}

This is the documentation of {--}.

\textbf{N 2020-01-07} \texttt{/tcb/doc index=(text)} (no default, initially unset)

If used inside the option list of \texttt{docCommand} \textsuperscript{P.492}, \texttt{docEnvironment} \textsuperscript{P.494}, \texttt{docKey} \textsuperscript{P.496}, etc, then \textit{text} is used for the index instead of the name of the definition.

\begin{docPathOperation}{doc index=foo path (horizontal then vertical), doc label=pathline2}{-\textbar}{\meta{coordinate or cycle}}
This is the documentation of \texttt{pathline2}.
\end{docPathOperation}

\texttt{path \ldots {-|}(coordinate or cycle) \ldots;}

This is the documentation of {-|}.

\textbf{N 2020-04-23} \texttt{/tcb/doc sort index=(text)} (no default, initially unset)

If used inside the option list of \texttt{docCommand} \textsuperscript{P.492}, \texttt{docEnvironment} \textsuperscript{P.494}, \texttt{docKey} \textsuperscript{P.496}, etc, then \textit{text} is used as sort key for the index instead of the name of the definition.

\begin{docCommands}
\begin{tabular}{r}
\texttt{doc name = l_tcobox_example_tl,} \\
\texttt{doc sort index = example_tl, } \%
\end{tabular}
\end{docCommands}
/tcb/doc into index=true|false (default true, initially true)
If set to false, no index entries are written for the main documentation environments. The same effect is achieved by using e.g. \docCommand*{P.493} instead of \docCommand*{P.492}.

N 2020-04-22 /tcb/doc no index (style, initially unset)
If set, no index entries are written for the main documentation environments. This is a shortcut for using /tcb/doc into index=false.

N 2014-09-19 /tcb/doc marginnote=⟨options⟩ (no default, initially empty)
Sets style ⟨options⟩ for the displayed box of the \tcbdocmarginnote \textsuperscript{P.505} command.

\tcbset{doc marginnote={colframe=blue!50!white,colback=blue!5!white}}%
This is some text \tcbdocmarginnote{Note A}
which is commented by a note inside the margin.

Note A
This is some text which is commented by a note inside the margin.

N 2014-09-19 /tcb/doc new=⟨date⟩ (style, no default)
Adds a marginnote with a “New: ⟨date⟩” message at the beginning of the upper box part. The intended use is inside the option list of \docCommand*{P.492}, \docEnvironment*{P.494}, etc.

\begin{docCommand}{doc new=2000-01-01}{foosomething}{\marg\text{⟨text⟩}}
Some command for something.
\end{docCommand}
New: 2000-01-01
\foosomething\{⟨text⟩
Some command for something.

N 2014-09-19 /tcb/doc updated=⟨date⟩ (style, no default)
Adds a marginnote with a “Updated: ⟨date⟩” message at the beginning of the upper box part.

N 2014-09-19 /tcb/doc new and updated={⟨new date⟩}{⟨update date⟩} (style, no default)
Adds a marginnote with “New: ⟨new date⟩” and “Updated: ⟨update date⟩” messages at the beginning of the upper box part. See /tcb/doc new.
26.3 Entry Customization Option Keys

/tcb/doc left=(length)  (no default, initially 2em)
Sets the left hand offset of the documentation texts from `docCommand` \( \rightarrow \) P.492,
docEnvironment \( \rightarrow \) P.494, docKey \( \rightarrow \) P.496, etc, to \( \langle \text{length} \rangle \).

```
\begin{docCommand*}[doc left=2cm,doc left indent=-2cm]{myCommandA}{\marg{argument}}
  This is the documentation of `\refCom{myCommandA}` which takes one `\meta{argument}`.
  `\refCom{myCommandA}` does some funny things with its `\meta{argument}`.
\end{docCommand*}
```

`\myCommandA{\langle\text{argument}\rangle}`
This is the documentation of `\myCommandA` which takes one `\langle\text{argument}\rangle`. `\myCommandA` does some funny things with its `\langle\text{argument}\rangle`.

/tcb/doc right=(length)  (no default, initially 0em)
Sets the right hand offset of the documentation texts from `docCommand` \( \rightarrow \) P.492,
docEnvironment \( \rightarrow \) P.494, docKey \( \rightarrow \) P.496, etc, to \( \langle \text{length} \rangle \).

```
\begin{docCommand*}[doc right=2cm]{myCommandB}{\marg{argument}}
  This is the documentation of `\refCom{myCommandB}` which takes one `\meta{argument}`.
  `\refCom{myCommandB}` does some funny things with its `\meta{argument}`.
\end{docCommand*}
```

`\myCommandB{\langle\text{argument}\rangle}`
This is the documentation of `\myCommandB` which takes one `\langle\text{argument}\rangle`. `\myCommandB` does some funny things with its `\langle\text{argument}\rangle`.

/tcb/doc left indent=(length)  (no default, initially -2em)
Sets the left hand indent of documentation heads from `docCommand` \( \rightarrow \) P.492,
docEnvironment \( \rightarrow \) P.494, docKey \( \rightarrow \) P.496, etc, to \( \langle \text{length} \rangle \).

```
\begin{docCommand*}[doc left indent=2cm]{myCommandC}{\marg{argument}}
  This is the documentation of `\refCom{myCommandC}` which takes one `\meta{argument}`.
  `\refCom{myCommandC}` does some funny things with its `\meta{argument}`.
\end{docCommand*}
```

`\myCommandC{\langle\text{argument}\rangle}`
This is the documentation of `\myCommandC` which takes one `\langle\text{argument}\rangle`. `\myCommandC` does some funny things with its `\langle\text{argument}\rangle`.

/tcb/doc right indent=(length)  (no default, initially 0pt)
Sets the right hand indent of documentation heads from `docCommand` \( \rightarrow \) P.492,
docEnvironment \( \rightarrow \) P.494, docKey \( \rightarrow \) P.496, etc, to \( \langle \text{length} \rangle \).

```
\begin{docCommand*}[doc right indent=-10mm,doc right=10mm, doc description=test value]{myCommandD}{\marg{argument}}
  This is the documentation of `\refCom{myCommandD}` which takes one `\meta{argument}`.
  `\refCom{myCommandD}` does some funny things with its `\meta{argument}`.
\end{docCommand*}
```

`\myCommandD{\langle\text{argument}\rangle}`
(test value)
This is the documentation of `\myCommandD` which takes one `\langle\text{argument}\rangle`. `\myCommandD` does some funny things with its `\langle\text{argument}\rangle`.
The head lines of the main documentation environments `docCommand`\textsuperscript{P.492}, `docEnvironment`\textsuperscript{P.494}, `docKey`\textsuperscript{P.496}, etc, are \texttt{tcolorbox}es inside a \texttt{tcbraster}\textsuperscript{P.309}. Options to the surrounding \texttt{tcbrasters} and the embedded \texttt{tcolorbox}es can be given using the following keys.

\begin{quote}
\texttt{\textasciitilde{cbset}\{doc raster command\{\texttt{raster before skip=7mm, raster after skip=0mm}\}}
\end{quote}

\begin{quote}
\texttt{\textbackslash{begin}\{docCommand\}\{\texttt{myCommandI}\}\{\texttt{\marg\{argument\}}\}}
This is the documentation of \texttt{\refCom\{myCommandI\}} which takes one \texttt{\meta\{argument\}}. \texttt{\refCom\{myCommandI\}} does some funny things with its \texttt{\meta\{argument\}}.
\texttt{\textbackslash{end}\{docCommand\*\}}
\end{quote}

\begin{quote}
\texttt{\textbackslash{myCommandI}\{\texttt{\{argument\}}}\}
This is the documentation of \texttt{\myCommandI\{\texttt{\{argument\}}} which takes one \texttt{\{argument\}}. \texttt{\myCommandI\{\texttt{\{argument\}}} does some funny things with its \texttt{\{argument\}}.
\end{quote}

\begin{quote}
\texttt{\textbackslash{begin}\{docCommand*\}\{\texttt{myCommandE}\}\{\texttt{\marg\{argument\}}\}}
This is the documentation of \texttt{\refCom\{myCommandE\}} which takes one \texttt{\meta\{argument\}}. \texttt{\refCom\{myCommandE\}} does some funny things with its \texttt{\meta\{argument\}}.
\texttt{\textbackslash{end}\{docCommand\}*
\end{quote}

\begin{quote}
\texttt{\textbackslash{myCommandE}\{\texttt{\{argument\}}}\}
This is the documentation of \texttt{\myCommandE\{\texttt{\{argument\}}} which takes one \texttt{\{argument\}}. \texttt{\myCommandE\{\texttt{\{argument\}}} does some funny things with its \texttt{\{argument\}}.
/tcb/doc head environment=\langle options \rangle (no default, initially empty)
Sets \langle options \rangle for the head line of \texttt{docEnvironment\textsuperscript{P.494}, docEnvironment*\textsuperscript{P.494}, and docEnvironments\textsuperscript{P.495}.}

\begin{docEnvironment*}{myEnvironment}{\marg\langle argument \rangle}
This is the documentation of \texttt{\refEnv{myEnvironment}} which takes one \meta\langle argument \rangle.
\end{docEnvironment*}

\begin{myEnvironment}{\langle argument \rangle}
\langle environment content \rangle
\end{myEnvironment}
This is the documentation of \texttt{myEnvironment} which takes one \langle argument \rangle.

/tcb/doc head key=\langle options \rangle (no default, initially empty)
Sets \langle options \rangle for the head line of \texttt{docKey\textsuperscript{P.496}, docKey*\textsuperscript{P.496}, and docKeys\textsuperscript{P.496}}.

\begin{docKey}\[foo\] {myKey}{}{no value}
This is the documentation of \texttt{\refKey{/foo/myKey}}.
\end{docKey}

/foo/myKey (no value)
This is the documentation of \texttt{/foo/myKey}.

/tcb/doc head path=\langle options \rangle (no default, initially empty)
Sets \langle options \rangle for the head line of \texttt{docPathOperation\textsuperscript{P.497}, docPathOperation*\textsuperscript{P.497}, and docPathOperations\textsuperscript{P.497}}.

\begin{docPathOperation*}{-{}-}{\meta\langle coordinate or cycle \rangle}
This is the documentation of \texttt{\refPathOperation{-{}-}}.
\end{docPathOperation*}
\path ... --\langle coordinate or cycle \rangle ...;
This is the documentation of --.

/tcb/doc head=\langle options \rangle (no default, initially empty)
Shortcut for setting the same \langle options \rangle for \texttt{/tcb/doc head command\textsuperscript{P.511, /tcb/doc head environment, /tcb/doc head key, and /tcb/doc head path}.}
The description texts of the main documentation environments `docCommand` \(\rightarrow\) P.492, `docEnvironment` \(\rightarrow\) P.494, `docKey` \(\rightarrow\) P.496, etc, are set in a compact form without indentation and `parskip=0pt`. This settings can overruled by using the following keys to insert code before (or after) the description texts.

\begin{docCommand*}{myCommandG}{\marg{argument}}
This is the documentation of `\refCom{myCommandG}` which takes one `\meta{argument}`. `\refCom{myCommandG}` does some funny things with its `\meta{argument}`.
\end{docCommand*}

\begin{docCommand*}{myCommandH}{\marg{argument}}
This is the documentation of `\refCom{myCommandH}` which takes one `\meta{argument}`. `\refCom{myCommandH}` does some funny things with its `\meta{argument}`.
\end{docCommand*}

\begin{docCommand}{\myCommandG}{\langle argument \rangle}
This is the documentation of `\myCommandG` which takes one `\langle argument \rangle`. `\myCommandG` does some funny things with its `\langle argument \rangle`.
\end{docCommand}

\begin{docCommand}{\myCommandH}{\langle argument \rangle}
This is the documentation of `\myCommandH` which takes one `\langle argument \rangle`. `\myCommandH` does some funny things with its `\langle argument \rangle`.
\end{docCommand}

\begin{docCommand*}{myCommandG}{\langle argument \rangle}
This is the documentation of `\myCommandG` which takes one `\langle argument \rangle`. `\myCommandG` does some funny things with its `\langle argument \rangle`. ♢
\end{docCommand*}

"N 2015-10-09 /tcb/before doc body command=⟨code⟩ (no default, initially empty)" Executes `⟨code⟩` before the description texts of `docCommand` \(\rightarrow\) P.492 and `docCommand*` \(\rightarrow\) P.493.

\begin{docCommand}{\myCommandG}{\langle argument \rangle}
This is the documentation of `\myCommandG` which takes one `\langle argument \rangle`. `\myCommandG` does some funny things with its `\langle argument \rangle`.
\end{docCommand}

"N 2015-10-09 /tcb/after doc body command=⟨code⟩ (no default, initially empty)" Executes `⟨code⟩` after the description texts of `docCommand` \(\rightarrow\) P.492 and `docCommand*` \(\rightarrow\) P.493.

\begin{docCommand}{\myCommandH}{\langle argument \rangle}
This is the documentation of `\myCommandH` which takes one `\langle argument \rangle`. `\myCommandH` does some funny things with its `\langle argument \rangle`.
\end{docCommand}

"N 2015-10-09 /tcb/before doc body environment=⟨code⟩ (no default, initially empty)" Executes `⟨code⟩` before the description texts of `docEnvironment` \(\rightarrow\) P.494 and `docEnvironment*` \(\rightarrow\) P.494.

"N 2015-10-09 /tcb/after doc body environment=⟨code⟩ (no default, initially empty)" Executes `⟨code⟩` after the description texts of `docEnvironment` \(\rightarrow\) P.494 and `docEnvironment*` \(\rightarrow\) P.494.

"N 2015-10-09 /tcb/before doc body key=⟨code⟩ (no default, initially empty)" Executes `⟨code⟩` before the description texts of `docKey` \(\rightarrow\) P.496 and `docKey*` \(\rightarrow\) P.496.

"N 2015-10-09 /tcb/after doc body key=⟨code⟩ (no default, initially empty)" Executes `⟨code⟩` after the description texts of `docKey` \(\rightarrow\) P.496 and `docKey*` \(\rightarrow\) P.496.
Executes \(\langle code\rangle\) before the description texts of \(\text{docPathOperation}\rightarrow^{P.497}\) and \(\text{docPathOperation}\ast\rightarrow^{P.497}\).

Executes \(\langle code\rangle\) after the description texts of \(\text{docPathOperation}\rightarrow^{P.497}\) and \(\text{docPathOperation}\ast\rightarrow^{P.497}\).

Shortcut for setting the same \(\langle options\rangle\) for /tcb/before doc body command \(\rightarrow^{P.513}\), /tcb/before doc body environment \(\rightarrow^{P.513}\), /tcb/before doc body key \(\rightarrow^{P.513}\), and /tcb/before doc body path.

Shortcut for setting the same \(\langle options\rangle\) for /tcb/after doc body command \(\rightarrow^{P.513}\), /tcb/after doc body environment \(\rightarrow^{P.513}\), /tcb/after doc body key \(\rightarrow^{P.513}\), and /tcb/after doc body path.
26.4 General Customization Option Keys

/tcb/docexample (style, no value)

Sets the style for dispExample → P.500 and dispListing → P.501 with the colors ExampleBack and ExampleFrame. To change the appearance of the examples, this style can be redefined.

% Predefined style:
\tcbset{
  docexample/.style={colframe=ExampleFrame,colback=ExampleBack, before skip=\medskipamount,after skip=\medskipamount, fontlower=\footnotesize}
}

/tcb/documentation listing options={key list} (no default, initially \texttt{style=tcbdocumentation})

Sets the options from the package listings [6]. They are used inside dispExample → P.500 and dispListing → P.501 to typeset the listings. Note that this is not identical to the key /tcb/listing options → P.339 which is used for “normal” listings. Used for /tcb/listing engine → P.344= listings only.

/tcb/documentation listing style={listing style} (no default, initially \texttt{tcbdocumentation})

Abbreviation for documentation listing options={style=...}. This key sets a \texttt{(style)} for the listings package, see [6]. Note that this is not identical to the key /tcb/listing style → P.339 which is used for “normal” listings. Used for /tcb/listing engine → P.344= listings only.

/tcb/documentation minted options={key list} (no default, initially \texttt{tabsize=2,fontsize=\small})

Sets the options from the package minted [13] which are used during typesetting of the listing, if used. Note that this is not identical to the key /tcb/minted options → P.342 which is used for “normal” listings. Used for /tcb/listing engine → P.344= minted only.

/tcb/documentation minted style={key list} (no default, initially unset)

Sets a \texttt{(style)} known to Pygments [15] for the package minted [13], if used. Note that this is not identical to the key /tcb/minted style → P.343 which is used for “normal” listings. Used for /tcb/listing engine → P.344= minted only.

/tcb/documentation minted language={programming language} (no default, initially \texttt{latex})

Sets a \texttt{(programming language)} known to Pygments [15] for the package minted [13], if used. Note that this is not identical to the key /tcb/minted language → P.344 which is used for “normal” listings. Used for /tcb/listing engine → P.344= minted only.

The following two keys are deprecated and without function (v3.50 and above). Use /tcb/before → P.89 and /tcb/after → P.89 with appropriate values instead. Also see /tcb/docexample.

/tcb/before example={macros} (no default, initially empty)

Sets the \texttt{(macros)} which are executed before dispExample → P.500 and dispListing → P.501 additional to /tcb/before → P.89.

/tcb/after example={macros} (no default, initially empty)

Sets the \texttt{(macros)} which are executed after dispExample → P.500 and dispListing → P.501 additional to /tcb/after → P.89.
Keyword used in \texttt{docEnvironment} \texttt{-P.494}, \texttt{docCommand} \texttt{-P.492}, etc. are printed boldface (or not). Since the typewriter font is used, the effect may be invisible with Computer Modern fonts or similar which do not have a bold variant. Note that references to keywords are not printed boldface at all.

\begin{tcblisting}
\LARGE\docAuxCommand{fooaux}, \refCom{\tcbset}
\tcbset{keywords bold=false}
\docAuxCommand{fooaux}, \refCom{\tcbset} \rightarrow \texttt{P.13}
\end{tcblisting}

Replaces the internally used \texttt{\index} macro by the given \texttt{⟨macro⟩}. The \texttt{⟨macro⟩} has to take one mandatory argument like \texttt{\index}. This option is mutually exclusive with \texttt{/tcb/index command name}.

\begin{tcblisting}
\tcbset{index command=\myindexcommand}
\end{tcblisting}

Replaces the internally used \texttt{\index} macro by \texttt{\index[⟨name⟩]}, i.e. \texttt{\index} is replaced by \texttt{\index[⟨name⟩]{...}}. This option is intended to be used with \texttt{imakeidx} and is mutually exclusive with \texttt{/tcb/index command}.

\begin{tcblisting}
\tcbset{index command name=mydoc}
\end{tcblisting}

Determines the basic \texttt{⟨format⟩} of the generated index. Feasible values are:

- \texttt{pgfsection}: The index is formatted like in the \texttt{pgf} documentation (as a section).
- \texttt{pgfchapter}: The index is formatted like in the \texttt{pgf} documentation (as a chapter).
- \texttt{pgf}: Alias for \texttt{pgfsection}.
- \texttt{doc}: The index is assumed to be formatted by \texttt{doc} or \texttt{ltxdoc}. The usage of \texttt{makeindex} with \texttt{-s gind.ist} is assumed. The package \texttt{hydndoc} has to be loaded \texttt{before tcolorbox}. Only a limited set of customizations will work! This option cannot be unset when used!
- \texttt{off}: The index is not formatted by \texttt{tcolorbox}. Use this, if the index is formatted by other package like \texttt{imakeidx}.

\begin{tcblisting}
\tcbset{index actual=⟨character⟩}
\tcbset{index quote=⟨character⟩}
\tcbset{index level=⟨character⟩}
\end{tcblisting}

Sets the character for “actual” in automatic indexing.

\begin{tcblisting}
\tcbset{index actual=⟨character⟩}
\tcbset{index quote=⟨character⟩}
\tcbset{index level=⟨character⟩}
\end{tcblisting}

Sets the character for “quote” in automatic indexing.

\begin{tcblisting}
\tcbset{index actual=⟨character⟩}
\tcbset{index quote=⟨character⟩}
\tcbset{index level=⟨character⟩}
\end{tcblisting}

Sets the character for “level” in automatic indexing.

\begin{tcblisting}
\tcbset{index actual=⟨character⟩,index quote=⟨character⟩,index level=⟨character⟩}
\end{tcblisting}
/tcb/index annotate=true|false  
If set to true, the index entries are annotated with short descriptions given by /tcb/doclang/environment \textsuperscript{p.518}, /tcb/doclang/key \textsuperscript{p.518}, and others.

/tcb/index colorize=true|false  
If set to true, the index entries colorized according to the color settings given by /tcb/color environment, /tcb/color key, and others.

/tcb/index gather colors=true|false  
If set to true, an additional index grouping is created where entries are gathered, e.g. /tcb/index gather counters creates an index entry ‘Colors’, see /tcb/doclang/colors \textsuperscript{p.518}, which gets all colors as sub entries.

Switches all index gather options from above to true (all) or false (none).

/tcb/color command=(color)  
Sets the highlight color used by macro definitions.

/tcb/color environment=(color)  
Sets the highlight color used by environment definitions.

/tcb/color key=(color)  
Sets the highlight color used by key definitions.

/tcb/color path=(color)  
Sets the highlight color used by Ti\kZ path operation definitions.

/tcb/color value=(color)  
Sets the highlight color used by value definitions.

/tcb/color counter=(color)  
Sets the highlight color used by counter definitions.

/tcb/color length=(color)  
Sets the highlight color used by length definitions.

/tcb/color color=(color)  
Sets the highlight color used by color definitions.

/tcb/color definition=(color)  
Sets the highlight color for /tcb/color command, /tcb/color environment, /tcb/color key, /tcb/color path, /tcb/color value, /tcb/color counter, /tcb/color length, and /tcb/color color.

/tcb/color option=(color)  
Sets the color used for optional arguments.

/tcb/color fade=(color)  
Sets the color used for faded text like \path in \texttt{docPathOperation} \textsuperscript{p.497}.

/tcb/color hyperlink=(color)  
Sets the color for all hyper-links, i.e. all internal and external links.
26.5 Language Option Keys

The following keys are provided for language specific settings. The English language is predefined.

/tcb/english language  (style, no value)

Sets all language specific settings to English.

/tcb/doclang/color=(text)  (no default, initially color)

Text used in the index for colors.

/tcb/doclang/color=(text)  (no default, initially Colors)

Heading text in the index for colors.

/tcb/doclang/command=(text)  (no default, initially Commands)

Heading text in the index for commands.

/tcb/doclang/counter=(text)  (no default, initially counter)

Text used in the index for counters.

/tcb/doclang/counters=(text)  (no default, initially Counters)

Heading text in the index for counters.

/tcb/doclang/environment=(text)  (no default, initially environment)

Text used in the index for environments.

/tcb/doclang/environments=(text)  (no default, initially Environments)

Heading text in the index for environments.

/tcb/doclang/environment content=(text)  (no default, initially environment content)

Text used in docEnvironment \( \rightarrow \) P. 494.

/tcb/doclang/index=(text)  (no default, initially Index)

Heading text for the index.

/tcb/doclang/key=(text)  (no default, initially key)

Text used in the index for keys.

/tcb/doclang/keys=(text)  (no default, initially Keys)

Heading text used in the index for keys.

/tcb/doclang/length=(text)  (no default, initially length)

Text used in the index for lengths.

/tcb/doclang/lengths=(text)  (no default, initially Lengths)

Heading text in the index for lengths.

/tcb/doclang/new=(text)  (no default, initially New)

Announcement text for new content.

/tcb/doclang/path=(text)  (no default, initially path operation)

Text used in the index for path operations.

/tcb/doclang/paths=(text)  (no default, initially Path operations)

Heading text in the index for path operations.

/tcb/doclang/pageshort=(text)  (no default, initially P.)

Short text for page references.

/tcb/doclang/updated=(text)  (no default, initially Updated)

Announcement text for updated content.
26.6  Predefined Colors of the Library

The following colors are predefined. They are used as default colors in some library commands.

Option , Definition , ExampleFrame , ExampleBack , Hyperlink , Fade .

Text used in the index for values.

Heading text in the index for values.
A  Picture Credits

The following pictures were used inside this documentation.

**Basilica_5.png**

![Basilica_5.png](http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Basilica_5.png)

Photograph taken by Thomas F. Sturm.

**lichtspiel.jpg**

![lichtspiel.jpg](http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:lichtspiel.jpg)

**crinklepaper.png**

![crinklepaper.png](http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:crinklepaper.png)

Created with GIMP.  
[http://www.gimp.org](http://www.gimp.org)

**pink_marble.png**

![pink_marble.png](http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:crinklepaper.png)

Created with GIMP.  
[http://www.gimp.org](http://www.gimp.org)

**blueshade.png**

![blueshade.png](http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:crinklepaper.png)

Created with GIMP.  
[http://www.gimp.org](http://www.gimp.org)

**goldshade.png**

![goldshade.png](http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:crinklepaper.png)

Created with GIMP.  
[http://www.gimp.org](http://www.gimp.org)
References


https://www.unibw.de/bw/professuren/thomas-sturm.

https://www.unibw.de/bw/professuren/thomas-sturm.


Index

- key, 481
foo path (horizontal then vertical) path operation, 508
! key, 481

0 value, 170
1 value, 170
2 value, 170

above key, 447
absquote environment, 501
add to height key, 61
add to list key, 136
add to natural height key, 61
add to width key, 40
adjust text key, 23
adjusted title key, 23
adjusted title after break key, 404
after key, 89
after app key, 470
after doc body key, 514
after doc body command key, 513
after doc body environment key, 513
after doc body key key, 513
after doc body path key, 514
after example key, 515
after float key, 88
after float app key, 470
after float pre key, 470
after lower key, 74
after lower app key, 468
after lower pre key, 468
after lower* key, 74
after pre key, 470
after skip key, 91
after skip balanced key, 90
after title key, 70
after title app key, 467
after title pre key, 467
after title* key, 70
after upper key, 72
after upper app key, 467
after upper pre key, 467
after upper* key, 72
alert key, 290
all key, 10
all value, 54, 55, 318, 406, 409
ams align key, 389
ams align lower key, 389
ams align upper key, 389
ams align* key, 389
ams align* lower key, 389
ams align* upper key, 389
ams equation key, 388
ams equation lower key, 388
ams equation upper key, 388
ams equation* key, 388
ams equation* lower key, 388
ams equation* upper key, 388
ams gather key, 390
ams gather lower key, 390
ams gather upper key, 390
ams gather* key, 390
ams gather* lower key, 390
ams gather* upper key, 390
ams nodisplayskip key, 391
ams nodisplayskip lower key, 391
ams nodisplayskip upper key, 391
arc key, 42
arc is angular key, 44
arc is curved key, 44
areasize value, 463
areasize* value, 463
as-is value, 285
at key, 448
at begin tikz key, 216
at begin tikz reset key, 216
at end tikz key, 216
at end tikz reset key, 216
attach boxed title to bottom key, 180
attach boxed title to bottom center key, 179
attach boxed title to bottom left key, 179
attach boxed title to bottom right key, 179
attach boxed title to bottom text left key, 179
attach boxed title to bottom text right key, 179
attach boxed title to bottom* key, 180
attach boxed title to top key, 180
attach boxed title to top center key, 178
attach boxed title to top left key, 178
attach boxed title to top right key, 178
attach boxed title to top text left key, 178
attach boxed title to top text right key, 178
attach boxed title to top* key, 180
attach title key, 25
attach title to upper key, 25
auto value, 112, 384
auto counter key, 127
auto limited value, 112
auto outer arc key, 44
autoparskip key, 93
base value, 94
base color key, 298
baseline key, 94
baselineskip value, 406
beamer key, 260

523
collower key, 34
colon value, 132
colon hang value, 132
\colOpt, 504
color key, 518
color color key, 517
color command key, 517
color counter key, 517
color definition key, 517
color environment key, 517
color fade key, 517
color from key, 298
color hyperlink key, 517
color key key, 517
color length key, 517
color option key, 517
color path key, 517
color value key, 517
Colors
Definition, 519
ExampleBack, 519
ExampleFrame, 519
Fade, 519
foocolor, 499
Hyperlink, 519
Option, 519
tcbcolback, 168
tcbcolbacklower, 168
tcbcolbacktitle, 168
tcbcolframe, 168
tcbcollower, 168
tcbcoltitle, 168
tcbcolupper, 168
colors key, 518
colspacing key, 441
coltext key, 34
coltitle key, 34
column key, 445
column* key, 445
columns key, 441
colupper* key, 34
Commands
\boxarrayclear, 429
\boxarraygetbox, 433
\boxarraygetdepth, 434
\boxarraygetheight, 434
\boxarraygetsize, 431
\boxarraygettotalheight, 435
\boxarraygetwidth, 434
\boxarrayreset, 428
\brackets, 500
\colDef, 504
\colFade, 505
\colOpt, 504
\consumeboxarray, 432
\consumetcboxarray, 432
\cs, 499
\DeclareTCBInputListing, 338
\DeclareTCBListing, 335
\Declar
every box on layer n key, 106
every float key, 88
every listing line key, 340
every listing line* key, 340
ExampleBack color, 519
ExampleFrame color, 519
extcolorbox environment, 484
extend freelance key, 280
extend freelancefirst key, 280
extend freelancemiddle key, 280
external key, 10, 121
externalize key, 481
externalize example key, 486
externalize example! key, 486
externalize listing key, 486
externalize listing! key, 486
extikzpicture environment, 485
every listing line* key, 340
extra key, 410
extra broken key, 410
extra broken pre key, 478
extra first key, 410
extra first and middle key, 411
extra first and middle pre key, 478
extra first pre key, 478
extra last key, 410
extra last pre key, 478
extra middle key, 410
extra middle and last key, 410
extra middle and last pre key, 478
extra middle pre key, 478
extra pre key, 478
extra title after break key, 411
extra unbroken key, 410
extra unbroken and first key, 410
extra unbroken and first pre key, 478
extra unbroken and last key, 410
extra unbroken and last pre key, 478
extra unbroken pre key, 478
extrude bottom by key, 104
extrude by key, 104
extrude left by key, 103
extrude right by key, 103
extrude top by key, 104

Fade color, 519
false value, 89, 95, 319, 403
fbox value, 50
figures value, 131
fill downwards key, 101
final value, 465
finish key, 221
finish broken key, 222
finish broken pre key, 476
finish fading vignette key, 305
finish first key, 222
finish first and middle key, 222
finish first and middle pre key, 476
finish first pre key, 476
finish last key, 222
finish last pre key, 476
finish middle key, 222
finish middle and last key, 222
finish middle and last pre key, 476
finish middle pre key, 476
finish pre key, 476
finish raised fading vignette key, 304
finish unbroken key, 222
finish unbroken and first key, 222
finish unbroken and first pre key, 476
finish unbroken and last key, 222
finish unbroken and last pre key, 476
finish unbroken pre key, 476
finish vignette key, 304
first value, 189–191, 409
first and middle value, 189, 409
fit key, 457
fit algorithm key, 463
fit basedim key, 458
fit fontsize macros key, 459
fit height from key, 462
fit height plus key, 460
fit maxfondiff key, 465
fit maxfondiffgap key, 465
fit maxstep key, 465
fit maxwidthdiff key, 465
fit maxwidthdiffgap key, 465
fit skip key, 458
fit to key, 458
fit to height key, 458
fit warning key, 465
fit width from key, 461
fit width plus key, 460
fitbox value, 108
fitting key, 9
fixed height key, 446
flip title key, 180
float key, 87
float* key, 87
floatplacement key, 87
flush center value, 36, 38, 39
flush left key, 99
flush left value, 36, 38, 39
flush right key, 99
flush right value, 36, 38, 39
flushleft lower key, 38
flushleft title key, 39
flushleft upper key, 38
IfEmptyF key, 123
IfEmptyT key, 123
IfEmptyTF key, 123
IfNoValueF key, 124
IfNoValueT key, 124
IfNoValueTF key, 124
IfValueF key, 124
IfValueT key, 124
IfValueTF key, 124
Ignore nobreak key, 95
Ignored value, 29, 30
Image comment key, 345
\imagename, 282
\imagepage, 283
Index key, 116, 518
Index actual key, 516
Index annotate key, 517
Index colorize key, 517
Index command key, 516
Index command name key, 516
Index default settings key, 516
Index format key, 516
Index gather all key, 517
Index gather colors key, 517
Index gather commands key, 517
Index gather counters key, 517
Index gather environments key, 517
Index gather keys key, 517
Index gather lengths key, 517
Index gather none key, 517
Index gather paths key, 517
Index gather values key, 517
Index german settings key, 516
Index key formatter key, 507
Index keys formatter key, 507
Index level key, 516
Index quote key, 516
Index* key, 116
Inherit height key, 63
Input source on error key, 487
Inside node key, 295
Interior code key, 161
Interior code app key, 477
Interior code pre key, 477
Interior empty key, 161
Interior engine key, 158
Interior hidden key, 173
Interior style key, 172
Interior style image key, 173
Interior style tile key, 173
Interior titled code key, 160
Interior titled code app key, 476
Interior titled code pre key, 477
Interior titled empty key, 160
Interior titled engine key, 157
Invisible* key, 27
Invisible value, 24, 27, 29
Justify value, 36

531
keywords bold, 516
label, 113
label is label, 113
label is zlabel, 113
label separator, 382
label type, 114
left, 45
left skip, 92
left*, 45
lefthand ratio, 141
lefthand width, 140
leftlower, 46
leftmargin* skip, 92
leftmargin, 41
lefttitle, 46
leftupper, 46
lifted shadow, 214
lines before break, 404
list entry, 136
list text, 136
listing above comment, 352
listing above text, 351
listing above* comment, 352
listing above* text, 351
listing and comment, 348
listing and text, 344
listing engine, 344
listing file, 344
listing inputencoding, 340
listing only, 344
listing options, 339
listing options app, 478
listing options pre, 478
listing outside comment, 351
listing outside text, 349
listing remove caption, 340
listing side comment, 350
listing side text, 349
listing style, 339
listing utf8, 341
lower separated, 31
lowerbox, 29
marker, 241
math, 388
math lower, 388
math upper, 388
middle, 49
minimum for current equal height group, 68
minimum for equal height group, 68
minipage, 108
minipage boxed title, 187
minipage boxed title*, 187
minted language, 342
minted options, 342
minted options app, 478
minted options pre, 478
minted style, 343
move upwards*, 101
nameref, 115
natural height, 59
nirvana, 126
no borderline, 203
no boxed title style, 186
no extras, 410
no extras first, 410
no extras last, 410
no extras middle, 410
no extras title after break, 411
no extras unbroken, 410
no finish, 222
no finish first, 222
no finish last, 222
no finish middle, 222
no finish unbroken, 222
no label type, 114
no listing options, 339
no overlay, 83
no process, 357
no recording, 150
no shadow, 206
no underlay, 219
no underlay boxed title, 220
no underlay first, 220
no underlay last, 220
no underlay middle, 220
no underlay unbroken, 220
no watermark, 191
nobeforeafter, 89
nofloat, 87
nopar, 93
nophantom, 113
notitle, 23
notitle after break, 404
octogon arc, 43
on line, 111
only, 288
opacityback, 57
opacitybacklower, 247
opacitybacktitle, 57
opacityfill, 57
opacityframe, 57
opacitylower, 58
opacitytext, 58
opacitytitle, 58
opacityupper, 58
outer arc, 44
overlaplower, 248
overlay, 82
overlay app, 471
overlay broken, 83
overlay broken app, 472
overlay broken pre, 472
overlay first, 83
overlay first and middle, 83
overlay first and middle app, 472
overlay first and middle pre, 472
| shield externalize, 121 |
| short title, 115 |
| show bounding box, 203 |
| shrink break goal, 406 |
| shrink tight, 103 |
| sidebyside, 137 |
| sidebyside adapt, 144 |
| sidebyside align, 138 |
| sidebyside gap, 140 |
| sidebyside switch, 146 |
| size, 50 |
| skin, 156 |
| skin first, 156 |
| skin first is subskin of, 163 |
| skin last, 156 |
| skin last is subskin of, 163 |
| skin middle, 156 |
| skin middle is subskin of, 163 |
| smart shadow arc, 214 |
| space, 64 |
| space to, 65 |
| space to both, 65 |
| space to lower, 64 |
| space to upper, 64 |
| spartan, 277 |
| split, 66 |
| spread, 102 |
| spread downwards, 102 |
| spread inwards, 101 |
| spread outwards, 101 |
| spread sideways, 102 |
| spread upwards, 102 |
| spread upwards*, 102 |
| square, 64 |
| squeezed title, 24 |
| squeezed title*, 24 |
| standard, 231 |
| standard jigsaw, 232 |
| step, 114 |
| step and label, 114 |
| store to box array, 429 |
| subtitle style, 26 |
| tabulars, 76 |
| tabulars*, 76 |
| tabularx, 77 |
| tabularx*, 77 |
| tcbimage comment, 346 |
| tbox raise, 111 |
| tbox raise base, 111 |
| tbox width, 112 |
| tempfile, 110 |
| terminator sign, 381 |
| terminator sign colon, 382 |
| terminator sign dash, 382 |
| terminator sign none, 382 |
| text above listing, 352 |
| text above listing, 352 |
| text and listing, 344 |
| text fill, 75 |
| text height, 60 |
| text only, 345 |
| text outside listing, 350 |
| text side listing, 349 |
| text width, 40 |
| theorem, 386 |
| theorem full label supplement, 383 |
| theorem hanging indent, 384 |
| theorem label supplement, 383 |
| theorem name, 385 |
| theorem name and number, 385 |
| theorem number, 385 |
| theorem number and name, 385 |
| theorem style, 392 |
| tikz, 216 |
| tikz lower, 78 |
| tikz reset, 216 |
| tikz upper, 78 |
| tikznode, 79 |
| tikznode boxed title, 188 |
| tikznode lower, 79 |
| tikznode upper, 79 |
| tile, 256 |
| title, 23 |
| title after break, 404 |
| title code, 162 |
| title code app, 477 |
| title code pre, 477 |
| title empty, 162 |
| title engine, 158 |
| title filled, 33 |
| title hidden, 175 |
| title style, 174 |
| title style image, 175 |
| title style tile, 175 |
| titlebox, 24 |
| titlerule style, 176 |
| toggle enlargement, 100 |
| toggle left and right, 52 |
| top, 48 |
| toprule, 41 |
| toprule at break, 408 |
| topsep at break, 408 |
| toptitle, 48 |
| unbreakable, 404 |
| underlay, 219 |
| underlay boxed title, 220 |
| underlay boxed title pre, 475 |
| underlay broken, 220 |
| underlay broken pre, 475 |
| underlay first, 220 |
| underlay first and middle, 220 |
| underlay first and middle pre, 475 |
| underlay first pre, 475 |
| underlay last, 220 |
| underlay last pre, 475 |
| underlay middle, 220 |
| underlay middle and last, 220 |
many, 10
minted, 9
most, 10
poster, 9
raster, 9
skins, 9
theorems, 9
vignette, 9
xparse, 10
/auto counter, 127
blend into, 131
Crefname, 130
crefname, 130
list inside, 134
list type, 134
no counter, 128
number format, 129
number freestyle, 129
number within, 129
reset counter on overlays, 128
use counter, 128
use counter from, 128
use counter*, 128
colspacing, 441
columns, 441
height, 441
prefix, 441
rows, 441
row spacing, 441
showframe, 441
spacing, 441
width, 441
/above, 447
at, 448
below, 447
between, 448
column, 445
column*, 445
fixed height, 446
name, 445
row, 446
rowspan, 446
sequence, 449
span, 446
xshift, 450
yshift, 451
/boxes, 443
coverage, 442
fontsize, 443
no coverage, 442
poster, 441
base color, 298
color from, 298
draw method, 299
east size, 296
east style, 297
fade in, 300
fade out, 300
horizontal size, 297
inside node, 295
lower left corner, 295
lowered color, 298
north size, 296
north style, 297
outside node, 296
over node, 296
over node offset, 296
raised color, 298
scope, 298
semi fade in, 300
semi fade out, 300
size, 297
south size, 296
south style, 297
upper right corner, 295
vertical size, 297
west size, 296
west style, 298
xmax, 295
xmin, 295
ymax, 295
ymin, 295
tcb fill frame, 177
tcb fill interior, 177
tcb fill title, 177
keys key, 518
Keys (l3keys)
/fooexpl/
foo expl, 507
Keys (pgfkeys)
/fooopgf/
foo pgf, 507
keywords bold key, 516
label key, 113
label is label key, 113
label is zlabel key, 113
label separator key, 382
label type key, 114
landscape value, 285
landscape* value, 285
last value, 189–191, 409
left key, 45
left value, 36, 144, 317
left skip key, 92
left* key, 45
lefthand ratio key, 141
lefthand width key, 140
leftlower key, 46
leftright skip key, 92
leftrule key, 41
lefttitle key, 46
leftupper key, 46
no underlay key, 219
no underlay boxed title key, 220
no underlay first key, 220
no underlay last key, 220
no underlay middle key, 220
no underlay unbroken key, 220
no watermark key, 191
nobeforeafter key, 89
nofloat key, 87
none value, 52, 100, 144, 318, 406, 409	noparskip key, 93
nophantom key, 113
normal value, 50, 182
north fading, 299
north value, 54, 55
north size key, 296
north style key, 297
northeast value, 54, 55
northwest value, 54, 55
notitle key, 23
notitle after break key, 404
number format key, 129
number freestyle key, 129
number within key, 129
\oarg, 499
octagon arc key, 43
off value, 465, 516
on value, 465
on line key, 111
only key, 288
opacityback key, 57
opacitybacktitle key, 247
opacitybacktitle key, 57
opacityfill key, 57
opacityframe key, 57
opacitylower key, 58
opacitytext key, 58
opacitytitle key, 58
opacityupper key, 58
Option color, 519
outer arc key, 44
outside node key, 296
over node key, 296
over node offset key, 296
overlaplower key, 248
overlay key, 82
overlay app key, 471
overlay broken key, 83
overlay broken app key, 472
overlay broken pre key, 472
overlay first key, 83
overlay first and middle key, 83
overlay first and middle app key, 472
overlay first and middle pre key, 472
overlay first app key, 471
overlay first pre key, 471
overlay last key, 83
overlay last app key, 472
overlay last pre key, 472
overlay middle key, 83
overlay middle and last key, 83
overlay middle and last app key, 472
overlay middle and last pre key, 472
overlay middle app key, 472
overlay middle pre key, 472
overlay pre key, 471
overlay unbroken key, 83
overlay unbroken and first key, 83
overlay unbroken and first app key, 472
overlay unbroken and first pre key, 472
overlay unbroken and last key, 83
overlay unbroken and last app key, 472
overlay unbroken and last pre key, 472
overlay unbroken app key, 471
overlay unbroken pre key, 471
oversize key, 51
pad after break key, 408
pad at break key, 408
pad at break* key, 408
pad before break key, 408
pad before break* key, 408
pageshort key, 518
parbox key, 109
parfillskip restore key, 95
parskip key, 93
PassOptionsToClass key, 488
PassOptionsToPackage key, 488
path key, 518
path value, 157, 158
Path operations
   foo path (horizontal then vertical), 508
   fooop, 497
pathfirst value, 157, 158
pathfirstjigsaw value, 157
pathjigsaw value, 157
pathlast value, 157, 158
pathlastjigsaw value, 157
pathmiddle value, 157, 158
pathmiddlejigsaw value, 157
paths key, 518
pdf comment key, 347
pdf extension key, 348
\pdfpages, 284
pgf value, 516
pgfchapter value, 516
pgfsection value, 516
phantom key, 113
phantomlabel key, 113
placeholder key, 450
plain key, 487
plain value, 392
plain apart value, 393
portrait value, 285
portrait* value, 285
poster key, 9, 441
\posterbox, 444
posterboxenv environment, 444
preamble key, 488
preamble tcbset key, 488
preclass key, 488
prefix key, 441, 481
process code key, 357
\ProvideTCBInputListing, 338
\ProvideTCBListing, 335
\ProvideTCBBox, 20
\ProvideTCBoxFit, 455
\ProvideTCColorBox, 17
\ProvideTotalTCBox, 22
\ProvideTotalTCBoxFit, 456
\ProvideTotalTCColorBox, 18

raised color key, 298
raster key, 9
raster after skip key, 315
raster before skip key, 315
raster column n key, 319
raster column skip key, 316
raster columns key, 313
raster equal height key, 318
raster equal height group key, 318
raster equal skip key, 315
raster even column key, 319
raster even number key, 320
raster even row key, 320
raster every box key, 319
raster force size key, 319
raster halign key, 317
raster height key, 315
raster left skip key, 316
raster multicolumn key, 321
raster multirow key, 322
raster number n key, 320
raster odd column key, 319
raster odd number key, 320
raster odd row key, 319
raster reset key, 319
raster right skip key, 316
raster row m key, 320
raster row m column n key, 320
raster row skip key, 316
raster rows key, 313
raster valign key, 317
raster width key, 313
raster width center key, 314
raster width flush left key, 314
raster width flush right key, 314
record key, 150
redirectlowerto key, 30
\refAux, 504
\refAuxcs, 504
\refCom, 503
\refCom*, 503
\refEnv, 503
\refEnv*, 503
\refKey, 503
\refKey*, 503
\refPathOperation, 504
\refPathOperation*, 504
remake key, 121
remember key, 217
remember as key, 218
\renewtcbexternalizeenvironment, 489
\renewtcbexternalizetcolorbox, 490
\RenewTCBInputListing, 338
\renewtcbinputlisting, 337
\RenewTCBListing, 335
\renewtcblisting, 334
\RenewTCBox, 20
\renewtcbox, 20
\RenewTCBoxFit, 455
\renewtcboxfit, 454
\RenewTcbTheorem, 376
\renewtcbtheorem, 376
\RenewTCColorBox, 17
\renewtcolorbox, 15
\RenewTotalTCBox, 22
\RenewTotalTCBoxFit, 456
\RenewTotalTCColorBox, 18
reset key, 122
reset and store to box array key, 431
reset box array key, 428
reset counter on overlays key, 128
right key, 46
right value, 36, 144, 317
right skip key, 92
right* key, 47
righthand ratio key, 141
righthand width key, 140
righthower key, 48
rightrule key, 41
righttitle key, 47
righthupper key, 47
rotate key, 217
rounded corners key, 55
row key, 446
rows key, 441
rows value, 318
rowspacing key, 441
rowspan key, 446
run arara key, 359
run biber key, 359
run bibtex key, 359
run dvips key, 359
run latex key, 359
run ps2pdf key, 359
run system command key, 357
run xelatex key, 359
runner key, 481
runs key, 487
safety key, 487
sarg, 500
savedelimiter key, 32
savelowerto key, 30
saveto key, 28
scale key, 217
scale value, 39
scale* value, 39
scope key, 298
segmentation at break key, 409
segmentation code key, 161
segmentation code app key, 477
segmentation code pre key, 477
segmentation empty key, 161
segmentation engine key, 158
segmentation hidden key, 174
segmentation style key, 174
semi east fading, 299
semi fade in key, 300
semi fade out key, 300
semi north fading, 299
semi south fading, 299
semi west fading, 299
separator sign key, 379
separator sign colon key, 379
separator sign dash key, 379
separator sign none key, 379
sequence key, 449
shadow key, 212
sharp corners key, 54
sharpish corners key, 55
shield externalize key, 121
short title key, 115
show bounding box key, 203
showframe key, 441
shrink break goal key, 406
shrink tight key, 103
sidebyside key, 137
sidebyside adapt key, 144
sidebyside align key, 138
sidebyside gap key, 140
sidebyside switch key, 146
size key, 50, 297
skin key, 156
skin first key, 156
skin first is subskin of key, 163
skin last key, 156
skin last is subskin of key, 163
skin middle key, 156
skin middle is subskin of key, 163
\skinExampleSet, 230

Skins
  beamer, 260
  beamerfirst, 262
  beamerlast, 263
  beamermiddle, 262
  bicolor, 245
  bicolor jigsaw, 252
  bicolorfirst, 249
  bicolorfirst jigsaw, 253
  bicolorlast, 251
  bicolorlast jigsaw, 255
bicolormiddle, 250
bicolormiddle jigsaw, 254
draft, 278
empty, 267
emptyfirst, 270
emptylast, 272
emptymiddle, 271
enhanced, 233
enhanced jigsaw, 239
enhancedfirst, 237
enhancedfirst jigsaw, 240
enhancedlast, 238
enhancedlast jigsaw, 244
enhancedmiddle, 237
enhancedmiddle jigsaw, 241
freelance, 280
freelancefirst, 280
freelancelast, 280
freelancemiddle, 280
spartan, 277
standard, 231
standard jigsaw, 232
tile, 256
tilefirst, 257
tilelast, 259
tilemiddle, 258
widget, 264
widgetfirst, 265
widgetlast, 266
widgetmiddle, 265

skins key, 9
small value, 50
smart shadow arc key, 214
south fading, 299
south value, 54, 55
south size key, 296
south style key, 297
southeast value, 54, 55
southwest value, 54, 55
space key, 64
space to key, 65
space to both key, 65
space to lower key, 64
space to upper key, 64
spacing key, 441
span key, 446
spartan key, 277
spartan Skin, 277
spartan value, 157, 158
split key, 66
spread key, 102
spread downwards key, 102
spread inwards key, 101
spread outwards key, 101
spread sidewards key, 102
spread upwards key, 102
spread upwards* key, 102
square key, 64
squeeze value, 463

544
unlimited, 402, 403
uphill, 54, 55
visible, 24, 27, 29
west, 54, 55
values key, 519
varwidth boxed title key, 188
varwidth boxed title* key, 188
varwidth upper key, 79
verbatim key, 111
verbatim ignore indentation at end key, 149
verbatim ignore percent key, 148
vertical size key, 297
vfill before first key, 409
vignette key, 9
visible key, 27
visible value, 24, 27, 29
void key, 126

watermark color key, 194
watermark graphics key, 190
watermark graphics app key, 474
watermark graphics app on key, 474
watermark graphics on key, 190
watermark graphics pre key, 474
watermark graphics pre on key, 474
watermark opacity key, 192
watermark overzoom key, 193
watermark shrink key, 193
watermark stretch key, 194
watermark text key, 189
watermark text app key, 473
watermark text app on key, 473
watermark text on key, 189
watermark text pre key, 473
watermark text pre on key, 473
watermark tikz key, 191
watermark tikz app key, 474
watermark tikz app on key, 474
watermark tikz on key, 191
watermark tikz pre key, 474
watermark tikz pre on key, 474
watermark zoom key, 192

west fading, 299
west value, 54, 55
west size key, 296
west style key, 298
widget key, 264
widget Skin, 264
widgetfirst Skin, 265
widgetlast Skin, 266
widgetmiddle Skin, 265
width key, 40, 441

xmax key, 295
xmin key, 295
xparse key, 10
xshift key, 181, 450

ymax key, 295
ymin key, 295